

### وزارة التعليم العالي والبحث العلمي الجامعة التقنية الشمالية المعهد التقني كركوك



### الحقيبة التعليمية

القسم العلمي: تقنيات الالكترونية واتصالات

اسم المقرر: اللغة الانكليزية

المرحلة / المستوى: الاولى / الاول

الفصل الدراسي: الاول

السنة الدراسية: 2025/2024





بة	م المقرر: اللغة الانكليز	اسد
ونية واتصالات	سم: تقتيات الإلكت	الق
	عهد: كركوا	الم
	رحلة / المستوى الاولى / الاو	المر
	صل الدراسي:	القد
عملي	د الساعات الاسبوعية: نظري ا	12
	د الوحدات الدراسية: 2	120
	Ntu103 :	الرا
ي عملي كلهما	ع المادة نظري نظر	نو
نعم	يتوفر نظير للمقرر في الاقسام الاخرى	هل
ä	م <b>المقرر النظير</b> اللغة الانكليز	اسد
المعهد لكونها متطلب الجامعي	عم الاقساء	الق
	ر المقرر النظير Ntu103	رمز
ي المادة	معلومات تدريس	
نصرت	م مدرس (مدرسي) المقرر: د علي نجدت	اسد
	ب العلمي: استاذ مساعد	اللة
	ة الحصول على اللقب	سن
	هادة: دكتوراه	الش
	ة الحصول على الشهادة	سن
	د سنوات الخبرة (تدريس) 10	12



### الوصف العام للمقرر

يتناول هذا المقرر اساسيات اللغة الانكليزية من ناحية قواعد اللغة و ادوات السؤال و ادوات الزمن وكيفية الجمع في اللغة الانكليزية

#### الاهداف العامة

حدد الأهداف الرئيسية للمقرر: ماذا يجب أن يتعلم الطلاب ويحققوا بنهاية المقرر؟ استخدم عبارات مثل "سيتعلم الطلاب" أو "سيتمكن الطلاب من". (ارجو الاطلاع على الدليل المرفق)

- معرفة الازمنة في اللغة الانكليزية
- معرفة ادوات السؤال في اللغة الانكليزية
- معرفة ادوات الزمن في اللغة الانكليزية
  - معرفة الجمع في اللغة الانكليزية

#### الأهداف الخاصة

- استخدام صيغ الازمنة بشكل صحيح اثناء التكلم باللغة الانكليزية
- استخدام ادوات السؤال بشكل صحيح اثناء التكلم باللغة الانكليزية
- استخدام ادوات الزمن بشكل صحيح اثناء التكلم باللغة الانكليزية
  - اجراء الجمع ومفرد بشكل صحيح اثناء التكلم باللغة الانكليزية

### الأهداف السلوكية او نواتج التعلم

- تمييز بين الازمنة في اللغة الانكليزية
- تمييز بين ادوات السؤال في اللغة الانكليزية
- تمييز بين ادوات الزمن في اللغة الانكليزية

### المتطلبات السابقة

• يكون للطالب معرفة بأساسيات اللغة الانكليزية .



	السلوكية او مخرجات التعليم الأساسية	الأهداف
آلية التقييم	تفصيل الهدف السلوكي او مخرج التعليم	ت
اسئلة شفهية وامتحانات يومية و واجبات	اكتساب المعلومات عن الازمنة و ادوات السؤال و ادوات الزمن في اللغة الانكليزية	1



### أساليب التدريس (حدد مجموعة متنوعة من أساليب التدريس لتناسب احتياجات الطلاب ومحتوى المقرر)

(55 55 5	
مبررات الاختيار	الاسلوب او الطريقة
تفيد في طرح المقدمة لموضوع رياضي يراد	1. طريقة المحاضرة
تدريسة وفي نهاية الدرس نعمل ملخص لما تم	
تدریسه "	
ينمى عند الطالب مهارات التفكير العلمي	2. طريقة الأكتشاف
تساهم هذه الطريقة على إظهار الدور الأيجابي	3. طريقة المناقشة
للمتعلم, وعدم اقتصاره على التلقي, بل تجعل "	
منه مساهما في عملية التعليم	
۱ " " " " ا	

الفصل الاول من المحتوى العلمي							
							عنوان الفصل
طرق القياس	التقنيات	طريقة التدريس		العنوان الفرعي	العملي	النظري	التوزيع الزمني
امتحانات	شرح، أسئلة وأجوبة, مناقشة	محاضرة	ب التعلم، محتوى	مقدمة عن المقرر، أهداف	-	2	
اليومية و				المقرر			الأسبوع الأول
الفصلية و							الاسبوع الاون
الواجبات							
	شرح، أسئلة وأجوبة, مناقشة	محاضرة	العناوين الفرعية		-	2	الأسبوع الأول
	شرح، أسئلة وأجوبة مناقشة	محاضرة	الماضي	الازمنة	-	2	
	شرح، أسئلة وأجوبة, مناقشة	محاضرة	المضارع	الازمنة	-	2	الأسبوع الثاني
	شرح، أسئلة وأجوبة, مناقشة	محاضرة	المستقبل		-	2	
	شرح، أسئلة وأجوبة, مناقشة	محاضرة	what				الاسبوع
	شرح، أسئلة وأجوبة, مناقشة	محاضرة	where	ادوات السؤال			
	شرح، أسئلة وأجوبة, مناقشة	محاضرة	when				
	شرح، أسئلة وأجوبة, مناقشة	محاضرة	since				
	شرح، أسئلة وأجوبة, مناقشة	محاضرة	for	ادوات الزمن			
	_						

## المحتوى العلمي

### خارطة القياس المعتمدة

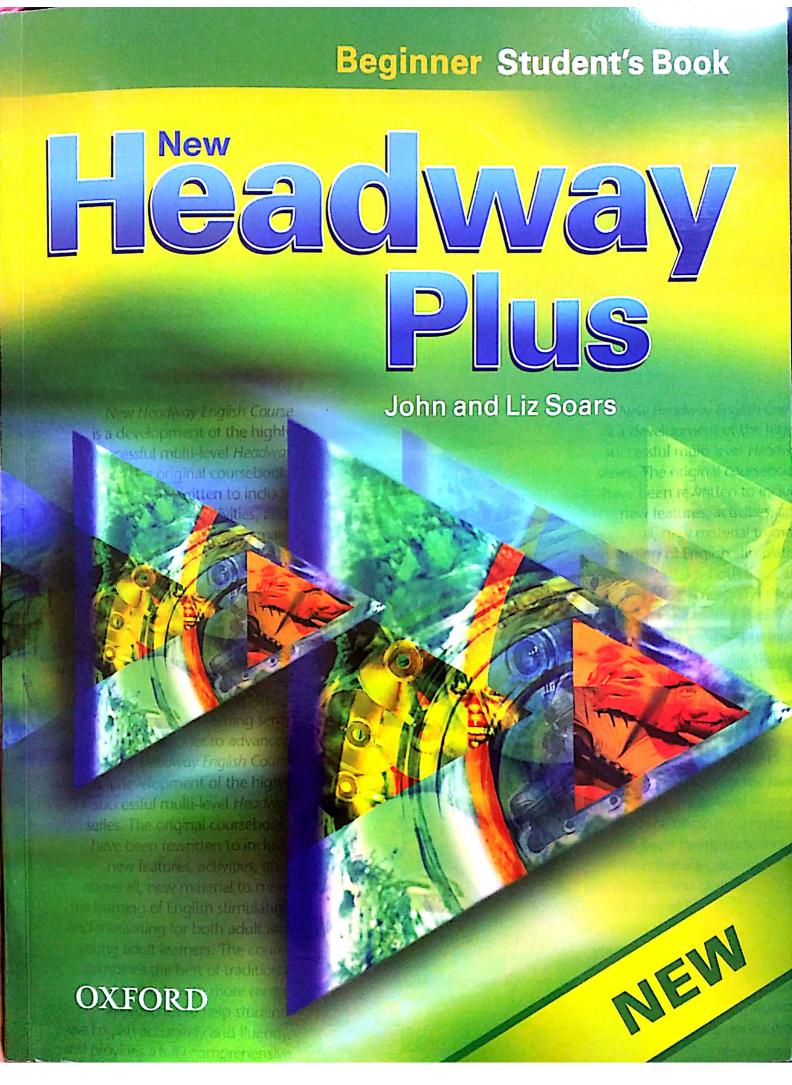
				ž	الأهداف السلوكيا			
عدد الفقرات	التقييم	التحليل	التطبيق	الفهم	المعرفة	الأهمية النسبية	عناوين الفصول	المحتوى التعليمي
					النسبة			
						%50	الازمنة	الفصل الاول
						%20	ادوات السؤال	الفصل الثاني
						%15	ادوات الزمن	الفصل الثالث
						%15	المفرد والجمع	الفصل الرابع
						%100		المجموع

### المحتويات (لكل فصل في المقرر)

1	رقم المحاضرة:
الازمنة في اللغة الانكليزية	عنوان المحاضرة:
ا.م.د علي نجدت نصرت	اســم المدرس:
المرحلة الاولى	الفئة المستهدفة:
تعريف الازمنة بشكل مفصل في اللغة الانكليزية	الهدف العام من المحاضرة:
يميز الطالب بين الازمنة	الأهداف السلوكية او مخرجات التعلم:
	استراتيجيات التيسير المستخدمة
القدرة على استخدام الصحيح للأزمنة في اللغة الانكليزية اثناء التكلم	المهارات المكتسبة
اسئلة شفهية و امتحانات يومية و فصلية و واجبات	طرق القياس المعتمدة

- 4 الاسئلة القبلية
- 5- المحتوى العلمي
  - محتويات الفصل
- 6- الااسئلة البعدية
  - في نهاية الحقيبة
- المصادر الاساسية:
- New Headway Beginner Student's Book Liz and John Soars .
  - المصادر المقترحة:
    - •
  - روابط مقترحة ذات صلة:





### **CONTENTS**

`	CONTENTS	
	JNIT	GRAMMAR
•	1 Hello!	am/are/is, my/your I'm Pablo. My name's Judy. What's your name? p6 This is This is Ben. Nice to meet you. p7
2	Your world p12	he/she/they, his/her  He's from the United States.  Her name's Karima. p13  They're on holiday. p16  Questions  What's his name?  Where's she from? p13
<b>3</b>	All about you	am/are/is  We're all students. p20 Negatives She isn't a nurse. p18 I'm not from Scotland. p20 They aren't from Ireland. p20 Questions What's his address? How old is he? Is he married? p19 Short answers Yes, he is. / No, he isn't. p20
4	Family and friends	Possessive adjectives my, your, our, their p24 Possessive's Annie's husband Jim's office p24 has/have I have a small hotel. She has a job. We have three sons. p27 Adjective + noun a small hotel a big house a good job p27
5	The way I live	Present Simple I/you/we/they I like ice-cream. I don't like tennis. Do you like football? p33 Where do you work? Do you live in Dundee? p34 In Portugal they speak Portuguese. p36 a and an a waiter, an engineer, an Italian restaurant p34 Adjective + noun a German car Spanish oranges p37
6	Every day p40	Present Simple he/she  He gets up at 6.00.  He has lunch in his office. p42  She lives in a small house. p44  Questions and negatives  What time does he have breakfast?  He doesn't live in London. p43  Adverbs of frequency  He always works late.  He never goes out. p42
7	My favourites	Question words who, where, why, how p48 Pronouns Subject/Object/Possessive I/me/my we/us/our they/them/ their p49 this and that I like this coffee. Who's that? p50

VOCABULARY	SKILLS WORK	EVEDVDAY ENCLISH
POCABOEMI.	JANIELS WORK	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
How are you?  How are you? Fine, thanks.  Very well, thank you. p8  What's this in English?  It's a photograph.  a computer, a camera, a bag p10  Numbers 1–10 and plurals  three houses nine students p11	Speaking Introductions p6-7 Good morning! Practising conversations p9	Good morning! Goodbye! What a lovely day! See you later! A cup of tea, please. Have a nice day. Good night! p9
Countries Portugal, China, Spain p12 Adjectives awful, really good, fantastic, beautiful p16 Nouns centre, hospital, building, park p16	Reading and speaking Where are they from? Two people on holiday in New York p16	Numbers II-30 fifteen twenty-one p17
Jobs a police officer, a nurse p18 Personal information surname, first name, address, phone number, married p19	Reading and listening  Hello! We're on a mountain!  An interview with students on a charity walk p22  Roleplay  Interview on a mountain p22	Social Expressions (1) I'm sorry. That's OK. Excuse me! I don't understand. I don't know. p23
The family mother, son, wife, p25 Describing a friend very beautiful, really funny, a lot of friends, her favourite team p28	Reading and writing  My best friend  A description of a friend p28 Listening  Who are they?  Listen and identify the people p25, p29	The alphabet a, b, c How do you spell? p30 On the phone Good morning. Laxcon International. The Manager, please. Sam Benting speaking. p31 Saying email addresses pam@hotmail.com p31
Sports/Food/Drinks  tennis, swimming burgers, oranges  tea, coffee, juice p32  Adjectives  exciting, delicious, great p33  Verbs  live, work, come, play, speak, want p34  Languages and nationalities  German, Japanese p36	Listening Where is Colin? Who is he with? p35 Listening and speaking At a dinner party Two people meet and talk p38 Roleplay At a dinner party	How much is it?  Numbers 1-100 30, 40, 50 p39 Prices 75p £20 £50 \$100 How much is? p39
The time  It's nine o'clock. It's ten fifteen.  What time is it? p40  Verbs and nouns  have breakfast leave school get home p41  Verbs  cook, listen, play p44  Nouns  eggs, toast, beach p44  Words that go together  get up early, watch TV p46	Speaking Lifestyle questionnaire Do you get up early? Do you go shopping at the weekend? p46	Days of the week  Monday, Tuesday today, tomorrow Prepositions of time on Sunday at nine o'clock in the morning p47
Adjectives lovely, terrible p52 comfortable, friendly p53 Opposite adjectives new/old, big/small p52 Places railway station, chemist p55	Reading and writing  A postcard from San Francisco  A holiday postcard p53  Roleplay  Conversations in town p55	Can I?  Can I have a return ticket?  Can I try on this jumper, please? p54



Where I live

### GRAMMAR

#### There is/are ...

There's an old sofa. Are there any armchairs? There are some books. p57

Prepositions

in, on, under, next to p58

#### was/were born



Times past

When were you born? I was born in 1996. p65 Past Simple – irregular verbs

went, came, saw

She went shopping. p68



10 We had a great time!

Past Simple – regular and irregular

played, got, watched, did p72

Questions

What did you do?

Did you go out? p73

**Negatives** 

They didn't go to work. p73

I went to Rome ten years ago. p78



I can do that!

can/can't

He can speak French. I can't draw.

Can she run fast? p80

I can cook a little bit. I can't cook at all.

really well, fluently p82

Requests and offers

Can you tell me the time? Can I help you? p83



12 Please and thank you

I'd like some chicken.

How much would you like? p88

some and any

I'd like some cheese.

Do you have any Emmental?

I don't have any apple juice. p89

like and would like

I like cola.

I like going to the mall.

I'd like to go out. p91



Here and now

**Present Continuous** 

She's wearing a T-shirt.

What's he doing? p97

Present Simple and Present Continuous He lives in London.

They're staying in a hotel. p98



It's time to go!

**Future plans** 

They're going on holiday.

Which countries are you going to visit?

I'm leaving on Tuesday.

What are you doing this evening? p104

Revision

Question words – when, where, who, how plo6

Tenses - present, past, and future tenses p110

Tapescripts p112

Grammar Reference p123

Word list p130

#### **VOCABULARY EVERYDAY ENGLISH SKILLS WORK** Rooms and furniture Reading and vocabulary Directions living room, bedroom Vancouver - the best city in the world Turn right. cooker, sofa p56 What to do and where to go p60 Go straight on. In and out of town Is there a ... near here? p63 Listening and writing mountain, beach, ferry, fishing, sailing p60 My home town post office, hospital, castle p63 Steve talks about living in Vancouver Write about a town you know p62 When's your birthday? Saying years Listening and speaking 2010, 1996 p64 Magalie Dromard Months People and jobs Magalie talks about her family January, February ... p71 singer, politician, artist p66 Talk about your family p65 Ordinal numbers Irregular verbs first, fifth, tenth ... p71 Reading and speaking had, made, bought p68 It's a Jackson Pollock! Saying dates have, do, go An American woman finds a famous painting the sixth of April p71 have lunch, do homework, go shopping p70 Telling a story from pictures p68 Making conversation - showing interest Weekend activities go to the mall, have a meal, Really? Oh! Good! Mmm! p75 Did you have a good weekend? see your friends p75 A questionnaire, p74 Going sightseeing Time expressions Listening and speaking Can I have a map of the town? at 8 o'clock, on Monday, last night p75 We want to go on a bus tour. Jack and Millie Parker's holiday How much is it to get in? p79 Sports and leisure A couple talk about their holidays p77 tennis, skiing, windsurfing p76 Asking about holidays p77 Speaking and writing play or go? play tennis, go skiing p76 My last holiday What is your favourite kind of holiday? Seasons winter, summer p77 Where did you go on your last holiday? p78 **Everyday problems** Reading and listening Verbs draw, run, drive, use a computer p80 I can't get on the Internet! The Internet What can you do on the Internet? p84 I'm lost! Verb + noun This machine doesn't work! listen to the radio chat to friends p84 Five people talk about what they do on Turn everything off ... p87 the Internet p85 Adjective + noun fast car, busy city, dangerous sport p86 Opposite adjectives dangerous/safe, old/modern, old/young p86 Roleplay Listening Conversations with Adam p89 Making offers to guests bread, milk, fruit, stamps, shampoo, cheese, Would you like a cold drink? What would chicken, conditioner p88 Birthday wishes you like? What people want on their birthday p90 Food Would you like to watch the football? p89 Reading and speaking cereal, salad, pasta, fish p92 You are what you eat Signs all around In a restaurant People from different parts of the world Where can you see these signs? menu, starter, dessert Way in describe what they eat p92 soup, salmon, mixed salad p94 Discussion - what is a good diet? p92 No entry Roleplay Push Ordering a meal Queue here p95 Are you ready to order? p94 What's the matter? Reading and listening This week is different I'm tired/thirsty/bored. blue, red, green p96 Colin, a millionaire, gives money to She has a headache/a cold. Clothes homeless teenagers p100 Why don't you ...? jacket, trousers, shoes and socks p96 Conversations with Colin p101 Opposite verbs That's a good idea. p103

Transport

travel by bus, coach, motorbike, plane p104 Revision

buy/sell/, love/hate, open/close p102

Words that go together

pay bills, menu/waiter p107 Which word is different? train bus <u>bridge</u> p107

Pronunciation

Two and three syllables - married vegetable Words that rhyme - some/come p107

Reading and speaking Life's big events Three people talk about their past, present, and future pl08

A mini autobiography

I was born in ... I grew up in ... I'm studying ... I want to be a ... I'm going to ... p109

Social expressions (2) Good luck in the exam! Don't worry! It doesn't matter! That's so kind of you! Thanks for everything! It was a pleasure. pl11

Pairwork pages p140

Irregular verbs p142

Phonetic symbols p143





### Hello!

am/are/is, my/your • This is ... • How are you? • Good morning! What's this in English? • Numbers 1–10 • Plurals

STARTER

Listen. Say your name.

Hello. I'm Paula.

Hello. I'm Josef.



### WHAT'S YOUR NAME?

am/are/is, my/your

1 The Read and listen.

Hello. I'm Pablo. What's your name?

Ahmed My name's Ahmed. **Pablo** Hello, Ahmed.

Listen and repeat.

#### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

I'm = I am

name's = name is

What's = What is

2 Stand up and practise.

Hello. I'm What's your name?

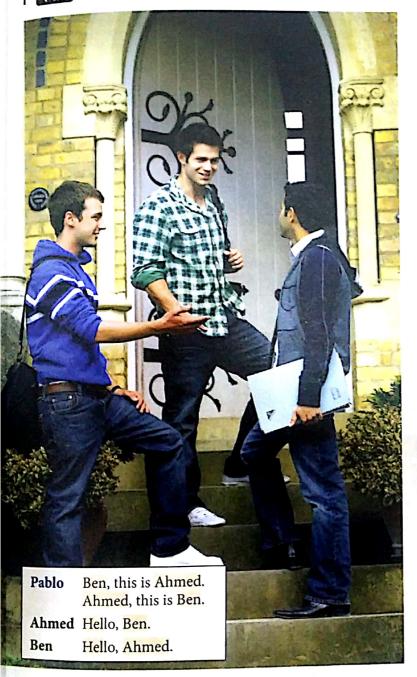
My name's



### INTRODUCTIONS

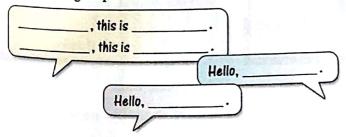
This is ...

1 113 Read and listen.



Listen and repeat.

2 Practise in groups of three.



Nice to meet you

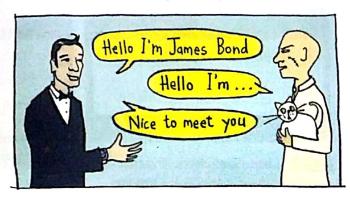


T1.4 Listen and repeat.

- 4 Practise in pairs. Say your first name and surname.
  - A Hello. My name's \_\_\_\_\_
  - B Hello. I'm \_\_\_ Nice to meet you.
  - A And you.
- 5 Listen to the English names.

ď	James Bond	Robert Taylor	Henry Baker	
Q	Susie Walsh	Anita Johnson	Katherine Smith	

Choose a name. Stand up and say hello.



### HOW ARE YOU?

1 T1.6 Read and listen.





Pablo Hi, Ben. How are you?Ben Fine, thanks, Pablo. And you?Pablo I'm OK, thanks.

2 Ben Hello, Ahmed. How are you?
Ahmed Very well, thank you. How are you?
Ben Fine.

T1.6 Listen and repeat.

2 Answer your teacher.

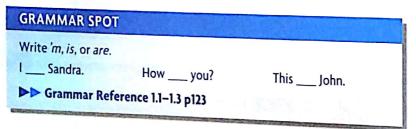
Hi, \_\_\_\_\_. How are you?

Fine, thanks. Fine, t

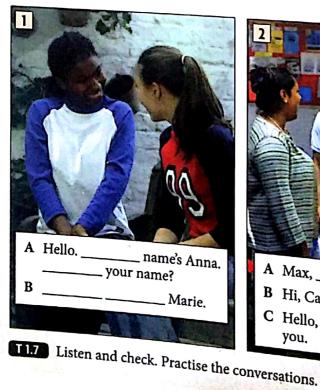
Fine, thanks. And you?

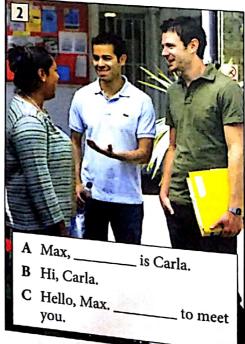
3 Stand up and practise.

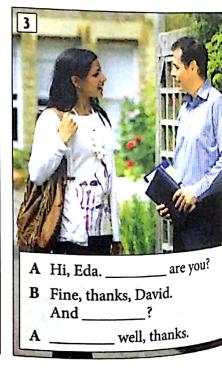
Very well, thank you. OK, thanks.



4 Complete the conversations.







8 Unit 1 • Hello!

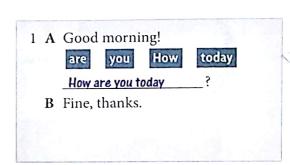
### EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### Good morning!

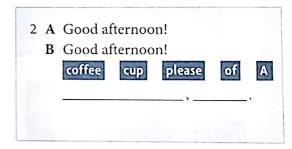
1 Complete the conversations.



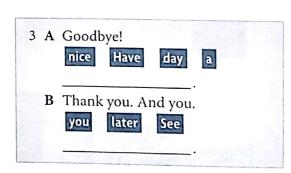
Put the words in the correct order.



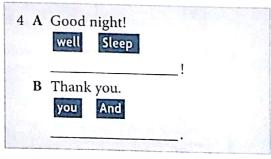












T1.9 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

Unit 1 • Hello!

### VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

What's this in English?

1 Write the words.

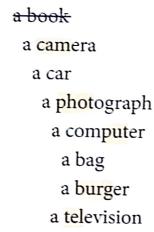








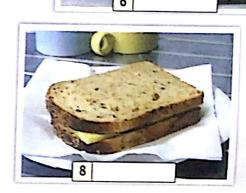




a phone



a <mark>sand</mark>wich a bus a house











- 2 T 1.10 Listen and repeat the words.
- 3 Till Listen and repeat.

What's this in English? It's a photograph.

Work with a partner. Point to a picture. Ask and answer questions.

GRAMMAR SPOT

It's = It is

4 Go to things in the room. Ask your teacher.

What's this in English?

10 Unit 1 · Hello!

### Numbers 1–10 and plurals

- T1.12 Read and listen. Practise the numbers.
- 3 Write the numbers.
- one
- a five books

- two

- three











photographs











- four













5 five

- **6** six
  - seven
- eight
- nine
- 2 Say the numbers round the class.





































- TLB Listen and check.
- 4 Ask and answer questions.

What's in this picture?

Nine photographs.

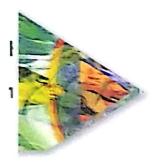
5 T1.14 Listen and repeat.

/s/	/z/	/IZ/
book <sub>e</sub> photograph <sub>s</sub> student <sub>s</sub>	car <sub>s</sub> computer <sub>s</sub> burger <sub>s</sub> camera <sub>s</sub> television <sub>s</sub> bag <sub>s</sub> phone <sub>s</sub>	sandwich <sub>es</sub> hous <sub>es</sub> bus <sub>es</sub>

**GRAMMAR SPOT** Singular Plural one book two books

one bus two buses ►► Grammar Reference 1.4 p123

Unit 1 • Hello!



### Your world

Countries • he/she/they, his/her • Where's he from? fantastic/awful/beautiful • Numbers 11-30

STARTER

Find your country on the map on page 13. Find these countries on the map.

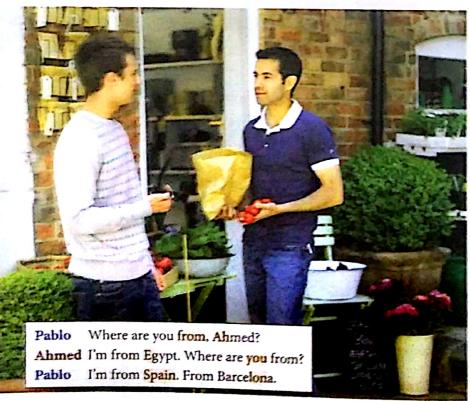
Australia Brazil Egypt China England France Italy Hungary Japan Russia Spain Saudi Arabia

Listen and repeat.

### SHE'S FROM JAPAN

he/she.his/her

1 Read and listen.



122 Listen and repeat.

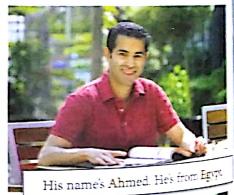
2 Where are you from? Stand up and practise.

Where are you from?

I'm from Italy/Libys ... Where ...?

12 Unit 2 · Your world

3 T23 Read, listen, and repeat.

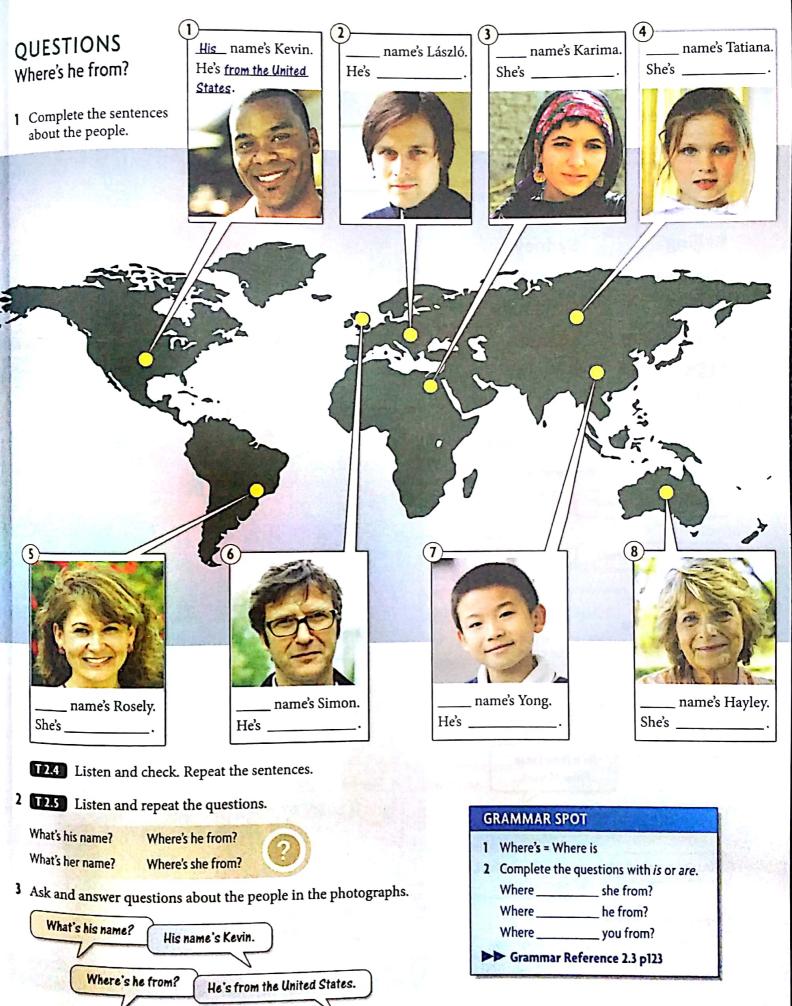




GRAMMAR SPOT

she's = she is

►► Grammar Reference 21-22 pU3



Unit 2 • Your world

#### **PRACTICE**

#### Cities and countries

1 Where are the cities? Ask and answer.



Barcelona São Paulo

Beijing Sydney

Moscow Damascus

Cairo Budapest

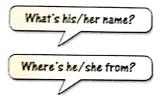
Los Angeles London

T2.6 Listen and check.

2 Work with a partner.

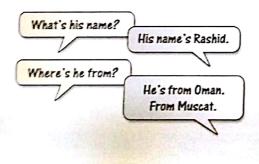
Student A Look at the photos on this page. Student B Look at the photos on p140.

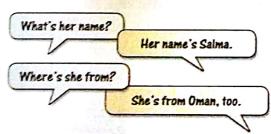
Ask questions and write the answers.



### Talking about you

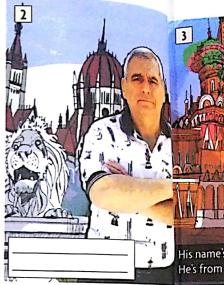
3 Ask about the students in the class.



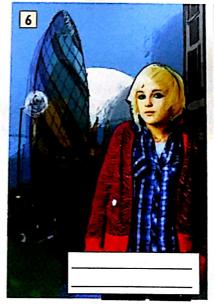


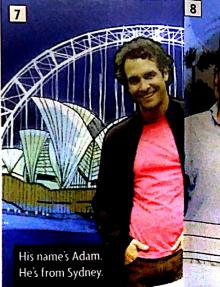


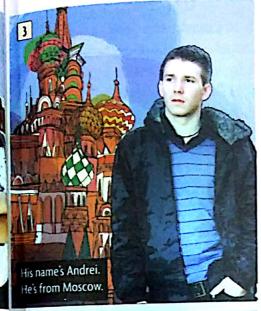


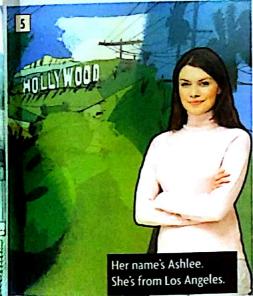


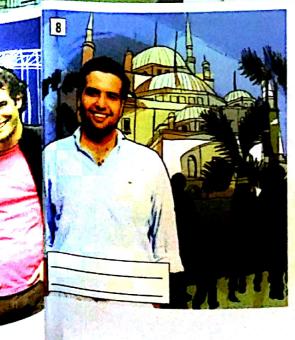












### Questions and answers

4 12.7 Listen and complete the conversation. Practise it.

4	Listen and complete t	the conversation. I ruotion and
	Rosely Hello, I'm Rosely. W	hat's <u>your</u> name?
	Bruno name's Br	
	R Hello, Bruno. Where are	you?
	B from Brazil. W	
	R Oh, I'm from Brazil, too.	from São Paulo.
	B Really? I'm from São Pau	lo, too!
	R Oh, nice to meet you, Bru	ino.
_ 5	T2.8 Listen and write the o	countries.
	1 Claudia: <u>Italy</u> Aken	ni:
	2 Charles: Bud:	
	3 Loretta and Jane:	_
6	Match the questions and answ	vers.
	1 d Where are you from?	a His name's Fadi.
	2 What's her name?	b He's from Amman.
	3 What's his name?	c It's in Canada.
	4 Where's he from?	d I'm from Japan.
	5 What's this in English?	e Fine, thanks.
	6 How are you?	f Her name's Tatiana.
	7 Where's Montreal?	g It's a computer.
	T2.9 Listen and check.	
	Work with a partner. Take tu	rns to cover the questions or
	the answers. Practise them.	
C	heck it	
7	Tick (✓) the correct sentence	
2000	1 My name Ahmed.	4 He's from Libya.
Contraction of the last	My name's Ahmed.	His from Libya.
PENNING PROPERTY	2 What's he's name?	5 Where she from? Where's she from?
Separation of	What's his name? 'What's his name?' 'Ke	
Secretarists.	What's his name: 'Ke	Market Market Control of the Control
-	A CAMPAGE AND A STATE OF THE ST	Unit 2 a Your world

### READING AND SPEAKING Where are they from?

1 T210 Read and listen.



2	Complete the sentences.
	1 Holly is from in Canada.
	<ul><li>2 She's a</li><li>3 Her is in the centre of Montreal.</li></ul>
	4 Claude is from
	<ul><li>5 He's a</li><li>6 His hospital is in the of Montreal</li></ul>
	7 They in New York. 8 They are
3	Write questions with What? and Where? about Claude and Holly. Ask a partner.
	What name? Where from? Where school? Where hospital?
	GRAMMAR SPOT
	Write is or are.
	Shea teacher.
	Hea doctor.
	Theyfrom Canada.
	Grammar Reference 2.4 p123

4 T2.11 Listen to Claude and Holly. Complete the conversations. 1 awful 🙁 weather C Oh, no! Look at the weather! H Ugh! It's \_\_\_\_\_! 2 really good 😊 burger H Wow! Look at my \_\_\_\_\_! It's fantastic! C My burger is \_\_\_\_\_, too! building 3 fantastic 😊 C What's this building ? H It's the Empire State Building! It's \_\_\_\_\_! 4 beautiful 😊 \_\_ at Central Park! C Wow! H It's \_\_\_\_ T 2.11 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

This is a photograph of Claude and Holly Duval

from Montreal, in Canada. They are on holiday

in New York City. Holly is from Canada and

E٧

Nur

1 el

16 Unit 2 · Your world

### EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Numbers 11-30

1 Say the numbers 1–10 round the class.

2 12.12 Listen, read, and repeat.

11 12 13 14 15 eleven twelve thirteen fourteen fifteen

16 17 18 19 20 sixteen seventeen eighteen nineteen twenty

Say the numbers 1-20 round the class.

- 3 Write the numbers your teacher says. Say the numbers your teacher writes.
- 4 Match the numbers.

21twenty-five 22 twenty-seven 23 twenty-one 24 twenty-eight 25 twenty-two 26 twenty-four 27 twenty-nine 28 twenty-three 29 thirty 30 twenty-six

12.13 Listen and repeat. Say the numbers 1-30 round the class.

5 12.14 Listen and tick ( ) the numbers you hear.

1 22 12/ 20 10 2 17 15 16 14 3 21 29 19 9 4 11 7 17 27 5 23 3 13 30

6 Work with a partner.

Student A Write five numbers. Say them to your partner.

Student B Write the numbers you hear. 14 24 ...

7 Look at the pictures. How old is he/she?

I think she's 18 months.

No, I think she's about 2.











T 2.15 Listen and find out.





### All about you

Jobs • am/are/is • Negatives and questions • Personal information • Social expressions

### STARTER

1 Match the jobs and the pictures.

a doctor a nurse a student <del>a teacher</del> a shop assistant a bus driver a businessman a police officer a builder



















T3.1 Listen and repeat.

2 T3.2 Read the questions and answers. Listen and repeat.

What's his job?

He's a teacher.

What's her job?

She's a doctor.



Look at the pictures. Ask and answer questions with a partner.

3 What's your job? Ask and answer.



I'm a student.

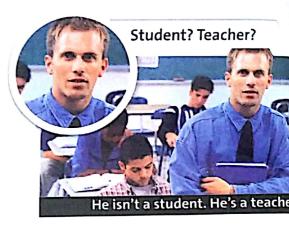
l'm a businessman.

18 Unit 3 • All about you

### HE ISN'T A STUDENT

Negatives - he isn't

1 Look and read.





TB3 Listen and repeat.

2 Look at pictures 1-9 again.
Make more negative and positive sentences.

He/She isn't a ...

He/She's a ...

### GRAMMAR SPOT

He's a teacher.

's = i

She isn't a nurse.

isn't = is not

### PERSONAL INFORMATION

### Questions and answers

1 Look at the photos and read Kiran's profile.



- 2 Complete the questions and answers.
  - l What's his \_surname ? Patel
  - 2 What's his \_\_\_\_\_? Kiran
  - 3 Where's he \_\_\_\_\_? England
  - \_\_\_\_\_. 21.8......
  - 4 What's his \_\_\_\_\_? 29, Victoria Road,

Birmingham

- <sup>5</sup> What's his \_\_\_\_\_? 07700 955031
- 6 How old is he?

He's \_\_\_\_\_.

7 What's \_\_\_\_?

He's \_\_\_\_\_.

8 Is he \_\_\_\_\_?

No, he isn't.

13.4 Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers.

3 T3.5 Read and listen. Then listen and repeat.

Is Kiran from Japan?

X No, he isn't.

Is he from China?

X No, he isn't.

Is he from England?

✓ Yes, he is.

- 4 Ask and answer questions about Kiran.
  - 1 Is he from London? Liverpool? Birmingham?
  - 2 Is he 16? 18? 20?
  - 3 Is he a teacher? a doctor? a student?
  - 4 Is he married?
- 5 Complete the sentences.
  - Kiran <u>isn't</u> from Japan.
     He 's from England.
  - 2 His phone number \_\_\_\_\_ 07700 995031. It \_\_\_\_\_ 07700 955031.
  - 3 He \_\_\_\_\_ 18. He \_\_\_\_\_ 20.
  - 4 He \_\_\_\_ married.

### 5 STUDENTS WALK FOR CHARITY

Negatives - I'm not, they aren't, we aren't

- 1 Look at the pictures. Who are the people?
- 2 Listen and complete the questions.
  - **T3.6** Listen again and check. Practise the conversation.

#### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

1 Negative

I'm not from Scotland. I'm not = I am not
They aren't from Ireland. They aren't = They are not
We aren't worried. We aren't = We are not

2 Short answers

Are you from Scotland? Yes, I am./No, I'm not. Are they from Ireland? Yes, they are./No, they aren't. Are you worried? Yes, we are./No, we aren't.

▶► Grammar Reference 3.1 p124

- 3 Answer the questions.
  - 1 Are Paul and Donny brothers?
  - 2 Are they from Scotland?
  - 3 Are the other boys from Ireland?
  - 4 Is it a difficult walk?
  - 5 Are the boys worried?

T3.7 Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers.

4 Practise the interview in groups of three.

### Talking about you

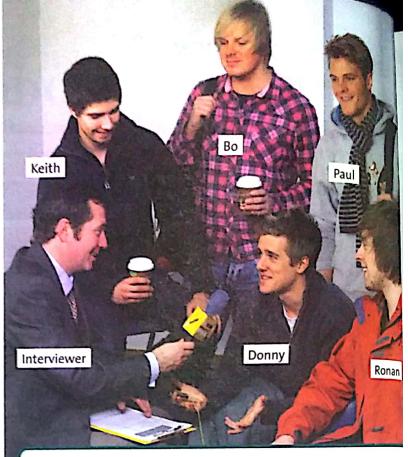
5 Ask and answer the questions about you.

Are you from Scotland?

No, . . .

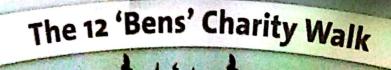
Are you from Ireland?

Are you a student?



I	Hil <u>Are you</u> the boys from the National University?
P+all	Yes, we are.
l	Great! And Donny McNab?
P	No, I'm not. I'm Paul McNab. This is Donny. He's my brother.
1	Ah, yes, sorry. Hi, Donny. You're a student from Scotland, right?
D	Well, yes, I am a student, but I'm not from Scotland.
ĺ	Oh, where from?
P+D	We're from here – Ireland.
i	the other boys from Ireland too?
D	No, they aren't. They're all from different countries.
l	Oh! Interesting! And all students?
D	Yes, they are. We're all
P	Yeah, we're all students at the National University of Ireland, in Galway.
I	Interesting! Now, this walk is difficult. Twelve mountains or 'Bens' in three days! Are you worried?
D	Yes, it's very difficult, but we aren't worried!

OK boys! Nice to meet you. Good luck to you all!



Thank you very much.

### PRACTICE

### Is he a businessman?

- 1 Look at the pictures of Tarek and Grace. Where are they?
- 2 13.8 Listen to the conversations. Complete the chart.

First name	Tarek	Grace
Surname	Elkushli	Chou
Country	Libya	
City/Town		
Phone number		212 638-9475
Age	42	
Job		Shop assistant
Married?		

T3.8 Listen again and check.

- 3 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
  - Is Tarek from Tripoli?
     Yes, he is.
  - Is he a businessman?
  - Is he 42?
  - Is he married?
- Is Grace from Dubai?
- Is she a nurse?
- Is she 33?
- Is she married?
- 4 Talk about Tarek and Grace.

Tarek is from Tripoli. His surname is ...

Grace is from ...

### Talking about you

- 5 Complete the questions.
  - 1 What's your first name?
    2 \_\_\_\_ surname?
  - you from?
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ phone number?
  - 5 How old \_\_\_\_\_\_?
  - ob?
  - 7 \_\_\_\_\_ married?

In groups, ask and answer the questions.

### Writing

6 Write about another student. Read it aloud.

Her name's . . . She's from Jordan. . . Her phone number is . . .

### Check it

- **7** Tick (✓) the correct sentence.
  - 1 She's name's Nora.
    - Her name's Nora.
  - 2 Her job is teacher.
  - ☐ She's a teacher.
  - 3 He's phone number is 796542.
    - ☐ His phone number is 796542.
  - 4 I'm not a doctor.
    - I amn't a doctor.
  - 5 They aren't from Italy.
  - ☐ They're no from Italy.
  - 6 She is no married.
    - She isn't married.

Unit 3 • All about you

Tarek

Grace

### READING AND LISTENING

The charity walk

1 Look at the picture and read. Where are the boys?

### **HELLO! WE'RE ON A MOUNTAIN!**

The boys are all students on a charity walk in Ireland.
They are from different countries. Paul and Donny
McNab are from Ireland, they are brothers. Bo Olsson is
from Sweden. Ronan Wilson is from Australia and Keith
Massey is from England.

Now they are on Benbaun, a mountain in Ireland. They're on the phone to a newspaper journalist.

Journalist Hi, guys, where are you?

Boys Hi, we're on Benbaun. It's beautiful!

Journalist And how are you?

Boys We're all fine! It's fantastic here!

Journalist Are you tired?

Boys No, we aren't. We're very happy and excited.

#### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

We're on a mountain.

we're = we are

We aren't tired.

we aren't = we are not

►► Grammar Reference 3.2 p124

- 2 Answer the questions.
  - 1 Are all the boys students?
- 2 Are they all brothers?
- 3 Are they all from Ireland?
- 4 Where are they now?
- 5 Are they happy?
- 3 Read about the boys again. Correct the information.
  - The boys are on holiday.

They aren't on holiday! They're on a charity walk!

- 2 They're in Scotland.
- 3 Bo is from Australia.
- 4 Keith's from Sweden.
- 5 They're on the phone to a friend.
- 6 They're very tired.

13.9 Listen and check. Practise the answers.

22 Unit 3 • All about you



#### Interview on a mountain

- **4 T3.10** Listen to the complete interview and underline the correct answer.
  - 1 This is/isn't their first walk for charity.
  - 2 The money *is/isn't* for an animal charity.
  - 3 The boys *are/aren't* at the same university.
  - 4 Ronan is 21/22.
  - 5 Bo and Keith are both 18/19.
  - 6 Donny and Paul are/aren't both 20.

#### Roleplay

5 Work in groups. Go to tapescript 3.10 on page 11: Practise the interview.

### EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Social expressions (1)

1 T3.11 Listen and look at the pictures.



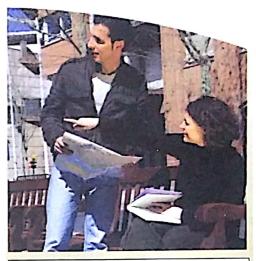
OK	501

- 1 A I'm sorry .
  - B That's \_\_\_\_\_.



**Thanks** please

- 2 C A coffee,
  - D That's £1.20.
  - C \_\_\_\_\_ very much.



over there a lot **Excuse** 

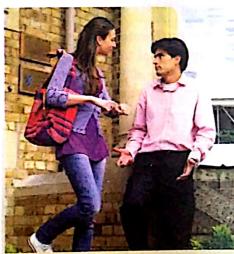
- me! 3 E Where's the station?
  - F It's \_\_\_\_\_.
  - E Thanks \_\_\_\_\_.



kind

very much

- 4 G Thank you \_\_\_\_\_. That's very \_\_\_\_\_\_
  - H That's \_\_\_\_\_.



don't understand

- 5 I Quelle heure est-il?



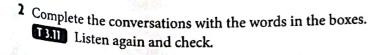
- J I'm \_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_.



don't know

**Excuse** 

- me!
  - Where's the town centre?
  - L I'm sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_.



3 Work with a partner. Learn the conversations. Stand up! Act the conversations.





### Family and friends

our/their • Possessive's • The family • has/have • The alphabet

### STARTER

1 Complete the chart.

1	you	he	she	we	they
mγ				our	their

2 Talk about things in the classroom.

This is my book.

This is our class.

This is her bag.

### MY FAMILY Possessive's

1 T41 Read and listen.

### ANNIE TAYLOR

This is Annie Taylor. She's married, and this is her family. Their house is in London. She's a doctor. Annie's hospital is in the centre of town.

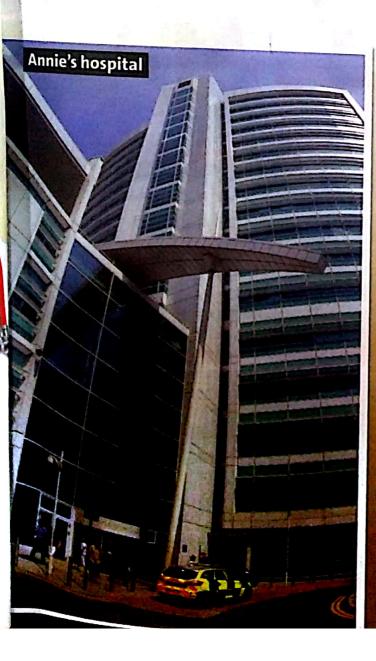


# GRAMMAR SPOT 1 She's married. She's a doctor. 's = is 2 This is her family. This is Annie's family 's = the family of Annie 3 his office her Emma's school ➤ Grammar Reference 4.1-4.3 p124

2 Answer the questions.

1 Is Annie married?	Yes. she is
2 Where's their house?	
3 What's Annie's job?	
4 Where's her hospital?	
5 What's Jim's job?	
6 Are their children both at school?	

T4.2 Listen, check, and practise.

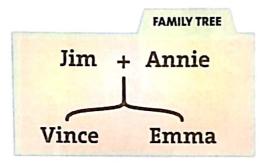


### Who are they?

3 T43 Listen and repeat.

Q	mother	daughter	sister	wife
O	father	son	brother	husband
22	parents	children		

4 Look at the family tree.

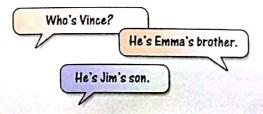


T4.4 Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1 Annie is Jim's wife.......
- 2 Jim is Annie's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Emma is Annie and Jim's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Vince is their \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Annie is Vince's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Jim is Emma's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Emma is Vince's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Vince is Emma's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 Annie and Jim are Emma and Vince's \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 Emma and Vince are Jim and Annie's \_\_\_\_\_.

T4.4 Listen again and check.

Ask and answer questions with a partner.



6 T4.5 Listen to the five people. Who are they?

1 <u>Annie</u> <u></u>	Come on, Emmal Time for school!
2	
3	···

5

Unit 4 • Family and friends

25

### **PRACTICE**

### An American family

1 14.6 Listen to Michela Sacchi from Chicago. Complete the information about her family.

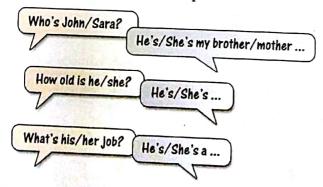
	Name	Age	Job
Michela's brother	Massimo		
Michela's mother			
Michela's father			



- 2 Complete the sentences.
  - 1 Massimo is Michela's brother.
  - 2 Her \_\_\_\_\_ name is Maria.
  - 3 'What's \_\_\_\_\_ job?' 'He's a businessman.'
  - 4 'Where's \_\_\_\_\_ house?' 'It's in Chicago.'
- Write the names of people in your family.

  <u>John/Sara</u>

Ask and answer questions with a partner.



26 Unit 4 • Family and friends

mv	/ ~	/ vour	
111 Y /	our	/ VOIIr	

- **4** Complete the sentences with *my*, *our*, *your*, ...
  - 1 'What's your name?'

'My name's Annie.'

2 'What are \_\_\_\_\_ names?'
'Our names are Emma and Vince.'

3 Jean-Paul and André are students.
\_\_\_\_\_school is in Paris.

4 'My sister's married.'

'What's \_\_\_\_\_ husband's name?'

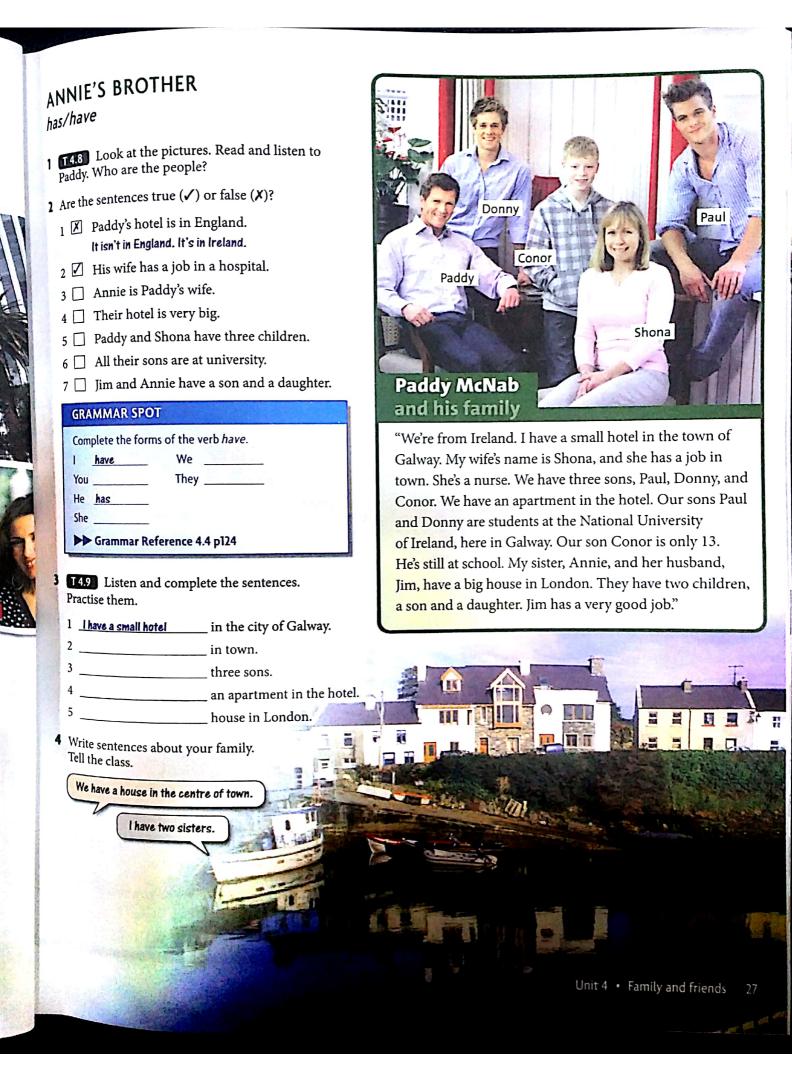
5 'My brother's office is in New York.'
'What's \_\_\_\_\_ job?'

6 We're in \_\_\_\_\_ English class.

7 'Mum and Dad are in Rome.'

'What's the name of \_\_\_\_\_\_ hotel?'

T 4.7 Listen and check.



#### PRACTICE has/have 1 Complete the sentences. Use has or have. 1 I have two brothers and a sister. 2 My parents \_\_\_\_\_ a house in the country. 3 My wife \_\_\_\_\_\_ a Japanese car. 4 My sister and I \_\_\_\_\_ a cat. 5 You \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice family. 6 Our school \_\_\_\_\_\_ fifteen classrooms. 7 We \_\_\_\_\_ English classes in the evening. 2 Talk about your school. It has six classrooms. Our school is fantastic! We have ten students in our class. Questions and answers 3 Match the questions and answers. 1 d How is your daughter? a Smith. b He's a student from Madrid. 2 What's your sister's job? 3 How old are your children? c It's in the centre of town. 4 Who is Pedro? -d- She's very well, thank you. 5 Where's your office? e They're ten and thirteen. 6 What's your surname? f She's a nurse. T410 Listen, check, and practise. Check it 4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence. 1 Maryam's children are married. Maryam is children are married. 2 What's your daughter name? What's your daughter's name? 3 What's he's job? ■ What's his job? 4 They're from Germany. Their from Germany. 5 They're parents have a house in Bonn. Their parents have a house in Bonn. 6 My brother have a good job. My brother has a good job. 7 We have a lovely teacher. We has a lovely teacher. 28 Unit 4 • Family and friends

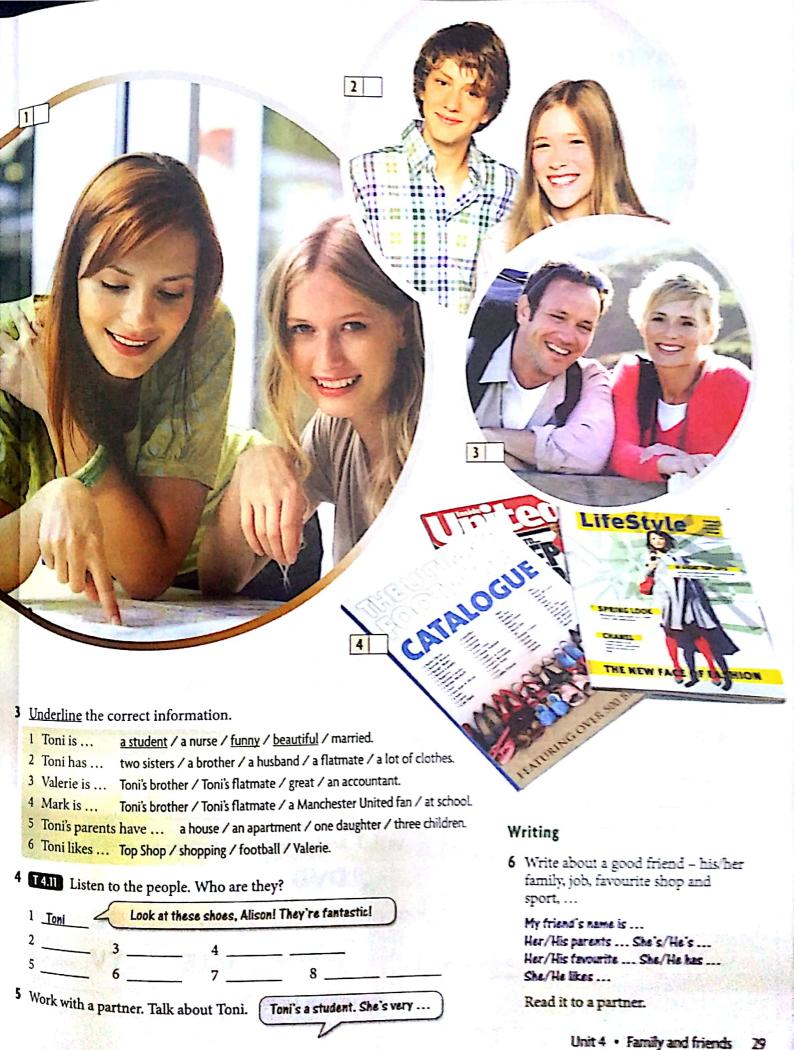
## READING AND WRITING My best friend

- Read about Antonia. Check the new words in your dictionary.
- 2 Match the photos with a part of the text. Who are the people in the photos?

# My friend Antonia

- a My best friend's name is Antonia Toni for short. She's very beautiful, and she's really funny. She's 18, and she's a student at university in London. She has a lot of friends and a great flatmate. Her name is Valerie, she's 19 and she's also at university.
- b Toni is from the north of England. Her parents have a house in a village near Manchester. Her father is an accountant, an her mother has a part-time job in a bank.
- c She has a brother and a sister. Their names are Mark and Alison. Mark is 16 and Alison is 14. They're both at school.
- d Toni has a lot of clothes. Her favourite designer is Anna Sui, and her favourite shor is *Top Shop*. She likes shopping. She and Alison like shopping a lot. She also likes football. She and her brother, Mark, are big Manchester United fans.

When we're together, we have a really good time.



#### **EVERYDAY ENGLISH**

The alphabet



· 200k at the letters of the alphabet	1	Look at the letters of the alphabet
---------------------------------------	---	-------------------------------------

T4.12 Listen. Practise them.

2 T 4.13 Listen and practise the groups of letters.

/eɪ/ ahjk /əʊ/ o /iː/ bcdegptv /uː/ quw /e/ flmnsxz /ɑː/ r

/aɪ/ iy

#### How do you spell . . . ?

3 T4.14 Listen to people spell their first name (Annie) and their surname (Taylor). Write the names.

1 <u>ANNIE</u> <u>TAYLOR</u>
2 \_\_\_\_\_

4 Practise spelling your name with a partner.

How do you spell your first name?

A-N-T-O-N-I-A

How do you spell your surname?

D-O-W-N-I-N-G

**5** Work with a partner. Ask and answer *How do you spell* ... with words from the text about Antonia on p28.

How do you spell 'friend'?

F-R-I-E-N-D

6 Put the letters in the correct order. What's the country?

NEFACR FRANCE
ABYLI
RNLAIED
NAPAJ
LASARUTAI
AYRSI
GANELDN

7 Read the letters aloud. What are they?

DVD UK KSA BBC US PC

UAE

T 4.15 Listen and check.

30 Unit 4 • Family and friends

## 1 14.16 Listen to two phone conversations and look at the business cards.

#### Conversation 1

- A Good morning. Laxcon International.
- H Hello. The Manager, please.
- A Certainly. And your name is?
- H Hamid Al-Habsi.
- A How do you spell your surname?
- H A-L-(-)-H-A-B-S-I.
- A Thank you. I'm connecting you.
- S Hello. Sam Benting speaking.
- H Good morning, Mr Benting. My name's ...

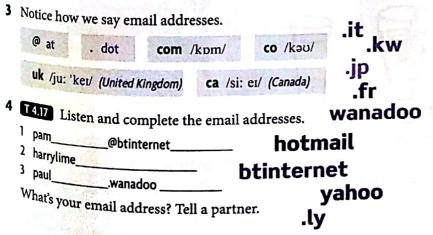
#### Conversation 2

- B Good afternoon. The King School of English.
- M Hello. Can you give me some information about your school, please?
- B Of course. Your name is?
- M Mayumi Morioka.
- B Mayumi ... Sorry, how do you spell your surname?
- M M O R I O K A.
- B Thank you. What's your email address?
- M It's morioka@mmdesign.co.jp.
- B I'll email you some information today.
- M Thank you very much. Goodbye.

#### 2 14.16 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 What company is he/she phoning?
- 2 What does he/she want?
- 3 How do you spell his/her surname?
- 4 What's his/her email address?
- Practise the conversations.

#### Email addresses



## **Premier IT Solutions**

PO Box 1816, Ruwi, Muscat PC 112, Sultanate of Oman

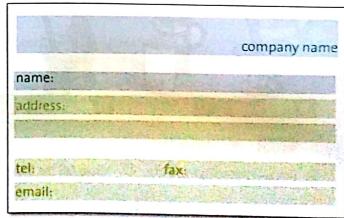
### Hamid Al-Habsi Export Manager

Tel (968) 24512208 Fax (968) 24512209 GSM (968) 96260432



#### Roleplay

Write your business card.Have conversations with a partner.Phone the bank / a hotel / a sports centre ...







# The way I live

Sports/Food/Drinks • Present Simple – I/you/we/they • a/an Languages and nationalities • Numbers and prices

#### STARTER

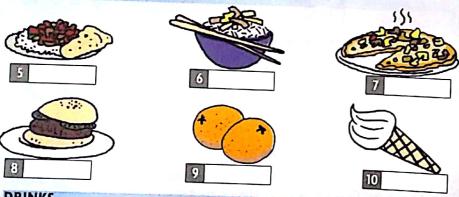
1 Match the words and pictures.

football		b <mark>ur</mark> ger sk	ing	milk	Chinese food	tennis	pizza	oranges
cola	tea	s <mark>wim</mark> ming	3	i <mark>ce</mark> -cream	coffee	Indian food	juice	

#### **SPORTS**



#### FOOD



#### DRINKS



T 5.1 Listen and repeat.

2 Tick (✓) the things you like. ② Cross (✗) the things you don't like. ⊗

32 Unit 5 • The way I live

#### THINGS I LIKE **Present Simple**

1 T5.2 Listen and repeat.





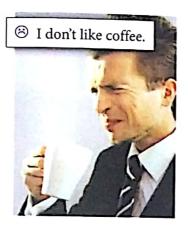
Say three things you like from pictures 1-15.

I like swimming, pizza, and juice.

## Negatives

3 15.3 Listen and repeat.





4 Say three things you don't like from pictures 1-15 on p32.

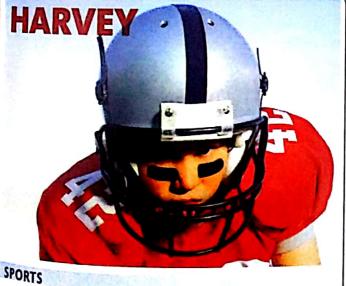
I don't like oranges, coffee, or tea.

#### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

**Positive** I like ice-cream.

Negative I don't like tennis. don't = do not

15.4 Listen to Harvey. Complete his sentences.



I like sports a lot. I like and but I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ and I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ very much.'

## FOOD AND DRINK

I like burgers and \_\_\_\_\_. And I like \_\_\_\_\_ food a lot. But I don't like \_\_\_\_\_\_food and I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ and I love \_\_\_\_\_

#### Questions 1, you, we, they

6 T5.5 Listen and repeat.

Do you like football? Yes, I do.

Do you like tennis?

No, I don't.

7 Work with a partner. Ask and answer about sports, food, and drinks.

Do you like football?

Yes, I do.

Do you like tennis?

No, I don't, but I like swimming.

8 T5.6 Harvey has a twin sister, Eva. Listen to them. What do they like? ( $\checkmark$ ) What don't they like? ( $\checkmark$ ) What do they say? Write the adjectives.



exciting delicious great fantastic awful



#### HARVEY EVA

delicious 1 pizza 2 ice-cream 3 tea 4 skiing 5 football

**9** Talk about Harvey and Eva with a partner. What do they like?

They like pizza and ...

#### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

**Positive** 

I/You/We/They like football.

Question

What do you/they like?

Do you/they like . . .?

Short answers

Yes, I/we/they do.

No, I/we/they don't.

►► Grammar Reference 5.1 p125

#### PRACTICE

#### Reading and speaking

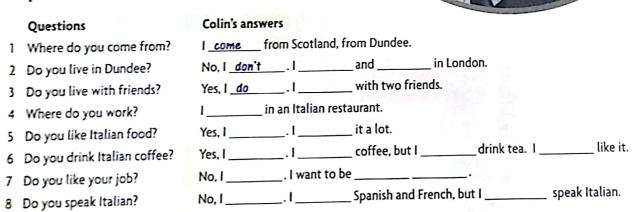
1 Look at the pictures. What's Colin's job?

Read and listen to the text.

#### **COLIN BRODIE FROM DUNDEE**

'Hello! My name's Colin Brodie. I come from Dundee in Scotland, but now I live and work in London. I have a very small flat near the centre. I live there with two friends. I'm a waiter and I'm also a student. I work part-time in an Italian restaurant. I eat Italian food and I drink Italian coffee after dinner. I speak two languages – Spanish and French, but I don't speak Italian. And I don't play sports. I want to be an engineer.'

2 15.8 Listen to the conversation with Colin. Complete his answers.



T5.8 Listen again and check. Practise the questions.

3 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

Give true answers about you.

GRAMMAR S	POT				
a or an?	an engineer	a waiter	an Italian restaura	nt	
Write a or an.	orange	student	English car	computer	
<b>▶</b> Grammar i	Reference 5.2 pl	25			

#### Vocabulary

4 Match a verb in A with a line in

A	В
have	Lebanese food
live	sports
work	in a flat
come	two brothers
eat	in a bank
drink	from Japan
play	to be a millionaire
speak	coffee
want	Arabic

34 Unit 5 • The way I live



#### Listening and speaking

- 5 T 5.9 Listen to three conversations. Where is Colin? Who says these lines?
  - 1 Bye, Colin. See you later.
  - 2 I work late on Fridays.
  - 3 Do you want to order?
  - 4 Do you have a list?
  - 5 I like your food the best.
  - 6 Do you want to speak to your brother?

Look at 15.9 on p114. Practise the conversations in groups of three.

#### Talking about you

6	Work with a partner. Complete the questions,	then	ask
	and answer them about you.		

ı	where you come from?
2	Do you in a house or a flat?
3	Where you work?
4	you like your work?
5	How many languages you

6 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ Lebanese food?

7 What \_\_\_\_\_\_do you play?

8 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_\_ to be a millionaire?

#### Check it

7	Ti-l-	11	4h -		sentence
•	I 1CK	( 🗸 )	the	correct	sentence

Live you in Abu Dhao	1	you in Abu	☐ Live you	ı Dhabi?
----------------------	---	------------	------------	----------

☐ Do you live in Abu Dhabi?

2 Where do you come from?

☐ Where you come from? 3 Do you speak Arabic?

☐ Are you speak Arabic?

4 I don't speak Chinese.

☐ I no speak Chinese.

5 Do you like football?' 'Yes, I like.'

'Do you like football?' 'Yes, I do.'

6 He's a engineer.

He's an engineer.

#### **VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION**

Languages and nationalities

1 Match the countries and nationalities.

Tisten and repeat.

What nationality are the people in the pictures, do you think?

I think they're Italian.

Well, I think they're Omani.

**3** Match the countries and the languages to make true sentences.

In Portugal they speak Portuguese.

P <mark>or</mark> tugal	German
<mark>Can</mark> ada	Italian
France	Japanese
<b>Germ</b> any	Portu <mark>guese</mark>
Italy	Spanish
Ja <mark>pan</mark>	English
<b>Mex</b> ico	<u>Tur</u> kish
<b>L</b> ibya	French
Turkey	Russian
Russia	<b>Ar</b> abic

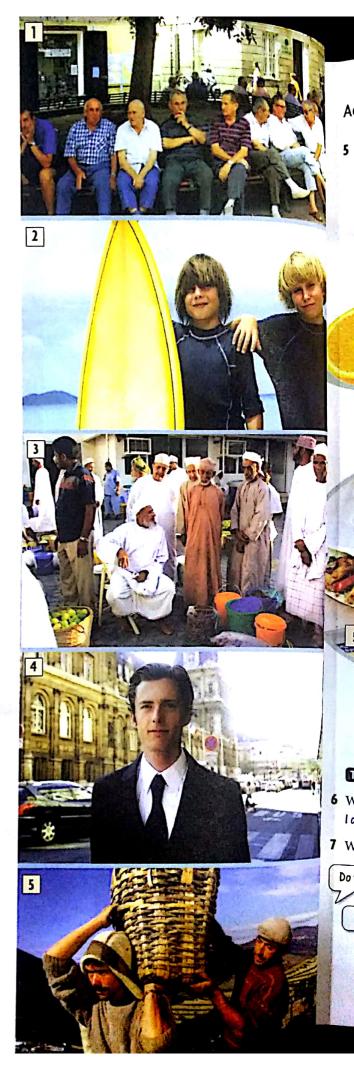
T511 Listen and check.

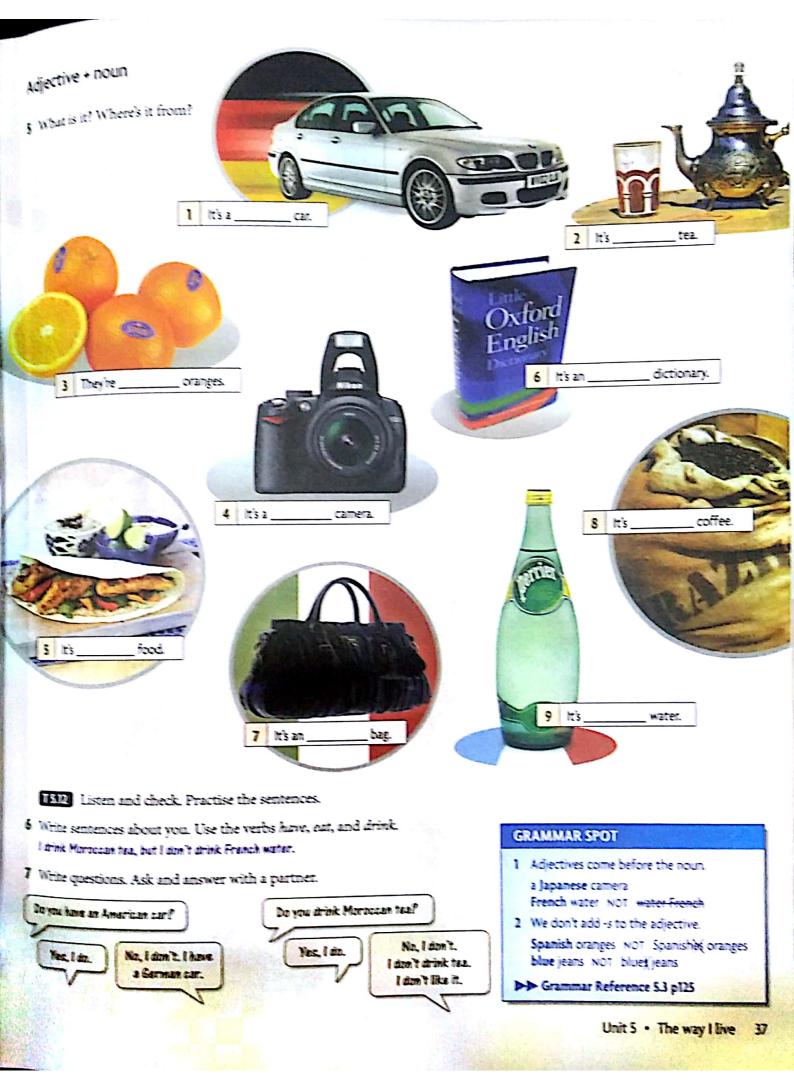
4 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

What language do they speak in Portugal?

Portuguese.

36 Unit 5 • The way I live





#### LISTENING AND SPEAKING

#### At a dinner party

 Flavia and Teresa are at a dinner party in London.

Tisk (✓) what Teresa says.

1	1 1	T		:	I J
1	1 1	- 1	WOLK	m	London.
		-			- CIICIOIII

I don't work in London.

2 I live in London.

I don't live in London.

I'm a doctor.

l'm an engineer.

4 🗌 You speak English very well.

You don't speak English very well.

5 I like Italy.

☐ I love Italy.

6 I know Naples very well.

☐ I don't know Naples.

7 I like Rome very much.

☐ I like Naples very much, too.

8 I speak French and Italian.

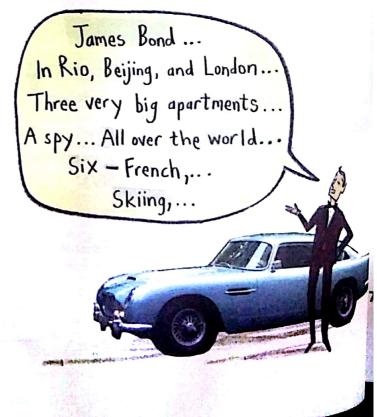
I don't speak Italian.

2 Look at T5.13 on p115. Practise the conversation with a partner.

#### Roleplay

- **3** You are at a dinner party. Work with a partner. What are the questions?
  - Hello! What's . . . ?
  - · Where . . . live?
  - . . . you have a house or a flat?
  - What . . . job?
  - · Where . . . work?
  - How many languages . . . speak?
  - What sports . . . you like?
- 4 Think of a new identity. Make notes to answer the questions in exercise 3.
- 5 Find out about other people at the dinner party.





38 Unit 5 • The way I live

## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

How much is it?

- 1 Count from 1-30 round the class.
- 2 15.14 Listen and repeat.

10 ten 20 twenty 30 thirty 40 forty 50 fifty 60 sixty

70 seventy 80 eighty 90 ninety 100 one hundred

Count to 100 in tens round the class.

3 Work with a partner.

Student A
Write some numbers.
Say them to your partner.

thirty-two...
forty-five...

Student B
Write the numbers you hear.
32 45 ...

4 T5.15 Read and listen to the prices. Practise them.

30p thirty p /pi:/ 50p fifty p 75p seventy-five p £1 one pound £20 twenty pounds

£75 seventy-five pounds £1.60 one pound sixty £3.45 three pounds forty-five £22.80 twenty-two pounds eighty

5 Say the prices.

60p 97p £17 £70 £25 £1.50 £16.80 £40.75 £26.99 \$20 \$50 \$100

T 5.16 Listen and check.

6 15.17 Listen and tick (✓) the prices you hear.



7 Ask and answer questions about the pictures with a partner.

How much is the cheese sandwich?





# **Every day**

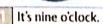
The time • Present Simple – he/she • always/sometimes/never Words that go together . Days of the week



#### STARTER

1 Toll Listen and repeat. Write the times.







It's nine thirty.



It's nine forty-five.



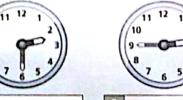
It's ten o'clock.

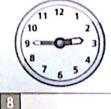


It's ten fifteen.













- 2 T 6.2 Listen to the conversation.
  - A What time is it, please?
  - B It's nine o'clock.
  - A Thank you very much.

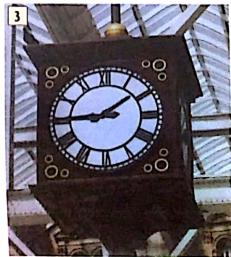
Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the time.













40 Unit 6 • Every day

## WHAT TIME DO YOU GET UP?

<sub>Present</sub> Simple – I/you



- Work with a partner. Talk about your day. lget up at 7.30. I have breakfast at ...
- 16.4 Listen and repeat the questions.

What time do you get up? What time do you have breakfast? Ask and answer questions about your day.

What time do you go to work? I go to work at 8.15.

#### **ELLIOT'S DAY**

Present Simple – he/she always/sometimes/never

- 1 Read about Elliot Maddox and look at the pictures. Are his days busy?
- 2 Read the sentences about his day. Write the times.

1	He gets up at <u>six o' clock</u> and he has
	a shower.
,	Ho has been life as a

2 He has breakfast at \_\_\_\_\_\_.

3 He leaves home at \_\_\_\_\_ and he goes to work by taxi.

4 He has lunch (a cola and a sandwich) in his office at \_\_\_\_\_

5 He always works late. He leaves work at \_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.

6 He sometimes buys a pizza and eats it at home. He gets home at \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

He never goes out in the evening. He works at his computer until \_\_\_\_\_\_.

8 He always goes to bed at \_\_\_\_\_ He watches television in bed.

T 6.5 Listen and check.

G	RAMMAR	SPOI			
1	<u>Underline</u> t	he verbs in senter	nces 1-8.		
	gets up	<u>has</u>			
	What's the I	ast letter?			
	T 6.6 Lis	ten and repeat.			
2	Look at the adverbs.				
	100% —	<u> </u>	- 0%		
	always	sometimes	never		
	Find always,	sometimes, and n	never in 1–8.		
	T 6.7 List	ten and repeat.			

#### **Pronunciation**

3 T 6.8 Listen to the pronunciation of -s at the end of the verbs. Practise the verbs.

►► Grammar Reference 6.1–6.3 p125

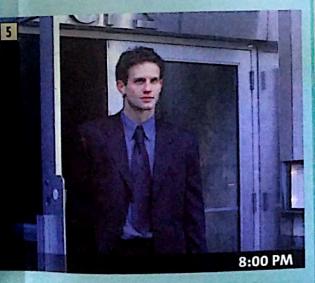
/s/	/z/	l in it is	/IZ/	
gets up works eats	lives has goes	leaves buys does	watches	

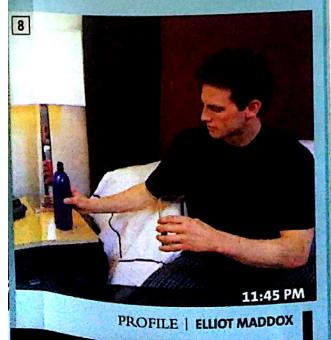
42 Unit 6 • Every day



ELLIOT lives in New York. He's 22, and a computer millionaire. He's the director of netstore24-7.com, a shopping site on the Internet. This is a typical day for him.







#### Questions and negatives

- **4** Read the questions. Complete the answers.
  - 1 What time does he get up? He \_\_\_\_\_ at 6.00.
  - When does he go to bed?
    He \_\_\_\_\_\_ to bed at 11.45.
  - 3 Does he go to work by taxi? \_\_\_\_\_, he does.
  - 4 Does he have lunch in a restaurant? . he doesn't.
  - 5 **Does** he **go out** in the evening? No, he \_\_\_\_\_\_.

T 6.9 Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers.

#### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

Positive He gets up at 6.00.

He has breakfast at 6.45.

Negative He doesn't have lunch.

He doesn't go to bed late. doesn't = does not

Question What time does he have breakfast?

Does he work late? Yes, he does./No, he doesn't.

►► Grammar Reference 6.4 p125

- 5 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Elliot's day.
  - 1 When/leave home?
  - 2 Does/go to work by bus?
  - 3 Where/have lunch?
  - 4 Does/usually work late?
  - 5 Does/eat in a restaurant?
  - 6 What/do in the evening?
  - T 6.10 Listen and check.
- 6 Write negative sentences.
  - 1 live/London He doesn't live in London.
  - 2 drive to work
- 4 have a lot of friends

When does he leave home?

He leaves home at ...

- 3 work in a bank
- 5 go to bed late
- 7 Complete the chart in the Present Simple.

	Positive	Negative	Question
	work		Do I work?
You		-27	Does she work?
He/She	works	don't work	
We			

Unit 6 • Every day

#### **PRACTICE**

#### Lois's day

1 Elliot Maddox has a sister, Lois. Her day is different. Look at the pictures. What does she do?

Read and complete the text with the verb

3

cooks	eats	gets	gets up
goes (x2)	has (x2)	invites	listens to
lives	phones	plays	works

Lois Maddox

The seaside artist fills her day with work, walks, and friends.

e at a
_ir
dio She

Listen and check.







Scanned by CamScanner

Are these sentences about Lois or Elliot? Write He or She.	Talking about you
Are the sea.  1 He 's a millionaire.  2 's an artist.  3 lives by the sea.  4 gets up very early.  Practise the sentences.  5 doesn't eat lunch. 6 doesn't cook. 7 cooks for friends. 8 loves computers.	Work with a partner. Write the names of two people in your family. Ask and answer questions about them.  Who's she?  She's my aunt.
Listen and complete the phone conversation between Lois and her brother Elliot.	Shesmy aum.
Lois Hi, Elliot, how are you?	Who's he?
Elliot I'm fine, thanks. Busy as usual.	Jim He's my dad.
L Oh, you're busy. You and your computers!	He's my uau.
E I know, but I my work.	with the D
L I love my work,, but I relax	<ul><li>Who is?</li><li>How old is?</li></ul>
E Huh! I don't know about that. You paint all day!	<ul><li>What's job?</li><li>Where does live?</li></ul>
L Yes, but I stop in the You stop!	Where does work?
E That's not true. Hey Lois, how's Aunt Nancy?	<ul><li>What time does she/he?</li><li>Does she/he have?</li></ul>
L Aunt Nancy? She's OK. You know, Elliot, Aunt Nancy often	Check it
about you.	7 Complete the questions and answers with
E Really? I like Aunt Nancy.	do, don't, does, or doesn't.
L Well, come and me soon. I want to cook for you and Aunt Nancy.	1 ' you like ice-cream?' 'Yes, I'
E Good idea! What about next? Next Sunday?	2 'she work in London?'
L Yes, great! I invite Aunt Nancy at the weekend.	'Yes, she'
E Great. See you Sunday. Have a good week!	3 'Where he work?' 'In a bank.'
16.12 Listen again and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.	4 ' you go to work by bus?' 'No, I'
legatives and pronunciation	5 ' she go to bed early?' 'No, she'
Correct the sentences about Lois and Elliot.	6 ' they have a pet?'
1 She lives in a flat.	'Yes, they'
She doesn't live in a flat! She lives in a house!	7 'he speak German?'
<sup>2</sup> He gets up at ten o'clock.	'No, he'
3 She's a businesswoman.	8 ' they live in Kuwait?' 'No, they'
4 He goes to work by bus.	
5 She watches television in the evening.	
Practise with a partner.	Unit 6 • Every day 45

#### VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

#### Words that go together

46 Unit 6 • Every day

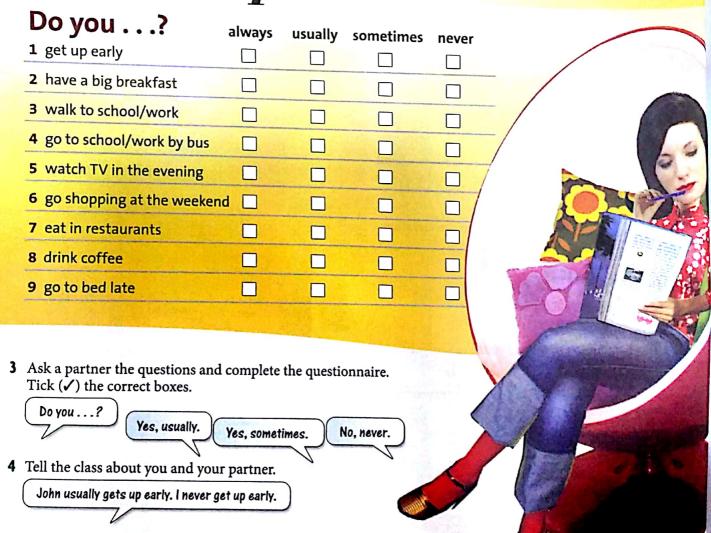
1 Match a verb in A with words in B. T6.14 Listen and check.

A	В
get up	dinner
go	early
listen to	TV
watch	in an office
cook	the radio
work	to bed late

A	В
go drink	in restaurants chess
eat	coffee
have	shopping
play	at home
stay	a shower

2 T6.15 Look at the questionnaire. Listen and repeat the questions.

# lifestyle questionnaire



# EVERYDAY ENGLISH Days of the week

Listen and write the days in the correct order on the calendar.

Wednesday Monday Friday Tuesday
Thursday Sunday Saturday

Listen again and repeat.

- 2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.
  - 1 What day is it today?
  - 2 What day is it tomorrow?
  - 3 What days do you go to school/work?
  - What days are the weekend?
  - 5 What days do you like?
  - 6 What days don't you like?
- 3 Write the correct preposition in the boxes.

#### on in at

- nine o'clock ten thirty twelve fifteen the weekend
  - Sunday
    Monday
    Saturday evening
    Thursday morning
    Friday afternoon
  - the morning the afternoon the evening
- 4 Write the correct preposition. Then ask and answer the questions with your partner.

#### Do you have English lessons ...?

Do you have English lessons at nine o' clock?

Yes, we do.

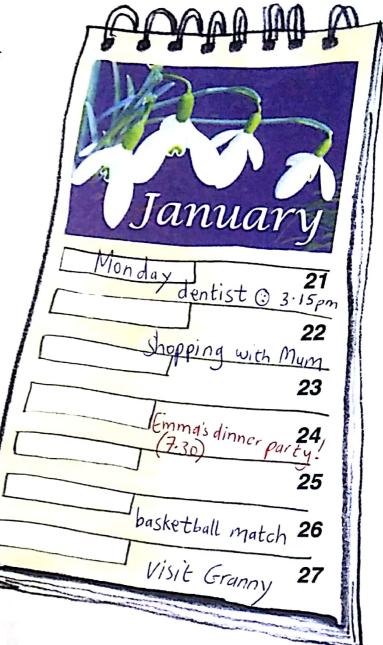
No, we don't.

Sunday
the evening
Monday morning

When do you have English lessons?

5 \_\_\_\_ the weekend

We have English lessons ...



#### Talking about you

**5** Complete the questions. Ask and answer them with your partner.

#### Do you ...?

- have a shower \_\_\_\_\_ the morning/evening
- get up early \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday morning
- go to work/school \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday
- eat in restaurants \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend
- watch TV \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon
- stay at home \_\_\_\_\_ Friday evening

Unit 6 • Every day





# My favourites

Question words • me/him/us/them • this/that Adjectives • Can I ...?



#### STARTER

1 What is your favourite ...?

food drink sport book TV programme day of the week town or city

2 Ask and answer with a partner.

What's your favourite food?

Pizza. I love it.

#### I LOVE IT!

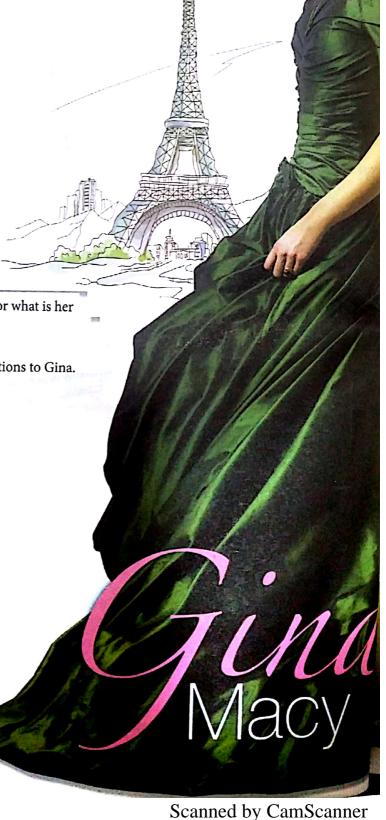
Question words - me/him/us/them

- 1 Who is Gina Macy? Look at the pictures.
- 2 [7.1] Read and listen to Gina's website. Who or what is her favourite ...?
  - city day composer food
- **3** Find the question word that completes the questions to Gina.
  - 1 Where do you live?
  - 2 \_\_\_\_\_ are you married to?
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_ does your husband do?
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ are you in Sydney again?
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_ are the children in the photos?
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_ old are they?
  - 7 \_\_\_\_\_ concerts do you do every year?
  - 8 \_\_\_\_\_ do you work so hard? Because ...
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ do you do in your free time?
- 4 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

Where do you live?

I live in France, in Paris.

T7.2 Listen and compare.



# The famous international violinist answers your questions.

1 GERRY from WELLINGTON, NEW ZEALAND
You're American, but you don't live in the US.
So where do you live?

GNA Hi Gerry! I live in France, in Paris. A lot of my work is here. Paris is my favourite city. I love it here.

2 DENG from SINGAPORE Dear Gina, I know you are married. Who are you married to? What does your husband do?

[I'm married to a Frenchman, Julien Caribe. He's a pianist. He often works with me. I really like working with him. We're very happy.

3 MARION from SYDNEY, AUSTRALIA
Gina, Lalways see you when you play here at the Opera
House. Who is your favourite composer? When are you
in Sydney again?

GINA Thank you Marion. Paganini, the Italian composer, is my favourite. I love playing in Sydney. We're in Sydney next October.

4 JAMIL from BEIRUT, LEBANON

I like your website. Who are the children in the photos?

They are beautiful. How old are they?

GINA The girls are our daughters Sophie (6), and Sacha (4). The baby is our son, Pierre-Louis. He's ten months. I adore them all.

5 ELENA from VERONA, ITALY

You do a lot of concerts. How many concerts do you do every year? You have three children. Why do you work so hard?

GINA Elena, I usually do about six concerts a year. I work hard because I love my work. But I love my family too. We have a nanny for our children. She lives with us.

6 FIONA from OXFORD, ENGLAND

Hi Gina, what's your favourite day of the week? What do you and Julien do in your spare time?

GINA Saturday is my favourite day. We all go to the best pizza restaurant in Paris. Our daughters love pizza; it's their favourite food. It's my favourite food, tool



5	Complete the sentences with the words from
	Gina's website.

1	Paris is <u>my</u> favourite city.  I love <u>It</u> here.
2	He's a pianist. He often works with and I really like working with We're very happy.
3	The girls are daughters and the boy is son. I adore all.
4	We have a nanny for children. She lives with
5	Saturday is favourite day.

6 Correct the information about Gina. Read it aloud.

#### ginamacy.com > Profile

Gina is a journalist. New York is her favourite city. She loves it there. Next October she's in Singapore for a concert. She is married to an American. They have one daughter. Friday is their favourite day.

Listen and check. Read it aloud again.

GRAMMAR SPOT							
1 Match the	questi	on wo	ords wi	th an	answ	er.	
Torrest or the same	Where? When? Who? Why? How many?			Peter. In Syria. On Sunday. Because Ten.			
	,		1.	10,000		172 2187	
Subject		you	he	she	it	we	they
Object me			him			us	them
Possessive	my		his	her	its	our	their
►► Grammar Reference 7.1 – 7.2 p126							

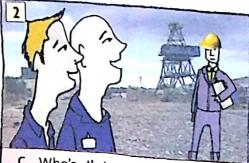
### THIS IS MY FAVOURITE ...

this and that

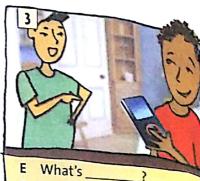
1 Look at the pictures. Complete the conversations with this or that.



- This is my favourite family photo.
- Ah, yes. You all look very happy!



- Who's that
- The guy in the hat? That's the boss!



PRA

1 like 1 C

Wha

2 A

Que

Che

- It's my new MP3 player.
- Wow! It's great!



- G How much is
- H £9.50.
- G I'll have it, please.



- How much is
- It's £500.
- I love it. It's fantastic!





- N The blue one?
- M No, the red one!



- 0 Hike cheese.
- Where's it from?
- France. It's delicious.



- Q is for you.
- R A present? For me? Why?
- Q Because you're my wife!

Grammar Reference 7.3 pl

17.4 Listen and check.

2 Test the other students! Ask them questions about things in your classroom.



PRACTICE	
like them!	
· Complete the sentences with it, you	zus, albaren
1 Do you like ice cream?	No I have
4 Does Mrs Johnson teach you Fr No. she teaches Engl	reach?"  3 Do you like your teacher?"  We like very much."
125 Listen and check.	
What do you like?	
2 Ask and answer questions with a pa	varence. Ask about Do you like (vorball?)
football cats television ice-crean mobile phones Google computer g	om chips horses Ven bloom int
Questions and answers	
Work with a partner. Ask and answe	er the questions
•	do you live in London ? ( like) Because I like it.
	( Jose)
	( adore)
	aria? ( like)
	( hate)
	( hate)
Match the questions and answers.	
1 How do you come to school?	a They start at nine o'clock.
2 What do you have for breakfast?	b In an office in the centre of town.
3 Who's your favourite sports person?	e By bus.
4 Where does your father work?	d Not a lot. About £2.
Why do you want to learn English?	e I don't have a favourite. I like a los
6 How much money do you have on you?	f Three
What time do lessons start at your school	pol? Recause its an international tanguage
8 How many languages does your teacher:	r speak? h Toast and coffee
17.6 Listen and check. Practise the	e questions.
Work with a partner. Ask and answer	the questions about you.
eck it	
Tick (1) the correct sentence.	
1 \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	
What do you do at the weekend	d? 4 1 I don't drink milk. I don't like.
	nd? 🔲 1 don't drink milk. I don't like it.
WIO IS VOUR book Call 12	5 Dur teacher gives us a lot of homework.
Hell Is Deure bank of the	
110W many	
How much money do you have	
mane, do you nave	Unit 7 • My favourites 31

#### VOCABULARY

#### **Adjectives**

- 1 Write the words.
  - 1 This pizza is delicious. (LESICIUDO)
  - 2 Your family is really \_\_\_\_ (C E N I)
  - 3 Our house is \_\_\_\_\_. (V O L E Y L)
  - 4 I'm really \_\_\_\_ today. (A P Y H P)
  - 5 Our English lessons are \_\_\_\_\_. (N T I R S E G N T I E)
  - 6 Paris is a \_\_\_\_\_city (ETFLBAUIU)

expensive/cheap

- 7 Rain again! The weather is \_\_\_\_ (REBTRILE)
- 8 Ugh! This coffee is \_\_\_\_! (F W A U L)
- 2 Match the words and pictures.

new/old





big/small



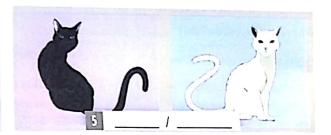
hot/cold



black/white



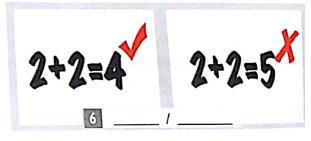




right/wrong







- 3 T7.7 Listen and complete the conversations.
  - 1 A It's so hot today, isn't it?
    - B I know. It's \_\_\_\_\_degrees!
  - 2 C Hey! I like your \_\_\_\_\_shoes!
  - D Thank you! They're really nice, aren't they?
    - C They're \_\_\_\_!
  - 3 E I live in a very \_\_\_\_\_flat.
    - F How many bedrooms do you have?
    - E Only \_\_\_\_!

- 4 G How \_\_\_\_\_\_ is that coat?
  - H £150.
  - G Wow! That's too \_\_\_\_\_ for me.
- 5 I Your name's Peter, isn't it?
  - J Yes, that's \_\_\_\_\_.
  - \_\_\_\_\_to meet you, Peter.

Practise the conversations with a partner.

### READING AND WRITING

A postcard from San Francisco

1 17.8 Look at the postcard. Read and listen.





#### Dear Allen,

We're on holiday in San Francisco this week. Our hotel is very nice – old, but comfortable. The people are very friendly, but it isn't easy to understand them. They speak so fast!

The food is delicious, especially the seafood, and the cafés and restaurants are wonderfull

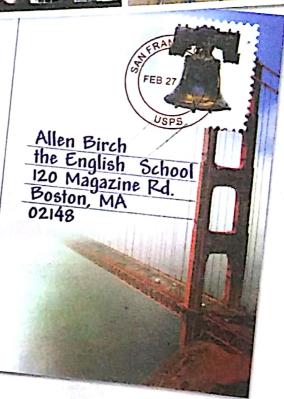
San Francisco is beautiful. It's a big city, with a lot of new the Golden Gate Bridge is amazing!

The weather is awful - rain and fog. It's cold and wet,

See you next week.

From

Ali and Ahmed (your Libyan students!)



- **2** Answer the questions.
  - 1 Who is the postcard from?
  - 2 Where are they?
  - 3 Why are they in San Francisco?
  - 4 Is their holiday good?
  - 5 What isn't so good?
- 3 What adjectives do Ali and Ahmed use?

	Adjectives
their hotel	nice, old, comfortable
the people	A 1 1
the food	
the cafés and restaurants	
San Francisco	- 10 t
the shops	7
the Golden Gate Bridge	1 in
the weather	A STATE OF THE STA

#### Writing

4 Write a postcard to a friend.

Dear ...

We're on holiday in ... and it's very ...

Our hotel is ...

The people are ...

The food is ...

The weather is ..., and ... we go ...

See you soon.

Love ...

## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

There a seemed to \$ (place) and a letter a-e (activity)

#### **MAKES**

- Essenge !
- neithers abolion a de-
- 3 amentice
- ada establis a s
- s acate

#### ACTIVITIES

- a have a coffee
- b buy some aspirin
- c post letters
- catch a train
- e try on a jumper











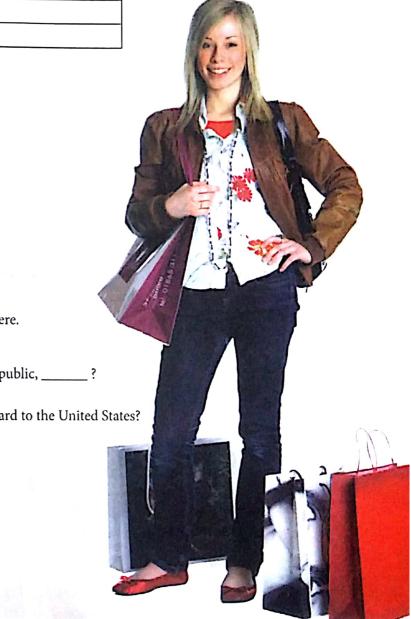
### Iveta in town

Listen to Iveta. She is in different places in town. Where is she in the conversations? What does she want?

Where is she?	What does she want?
1 at the railway station	a return ticket to Oxford
2	
3	
4	
5	

Com	plete the conversations with a partner.
IÑ	A RAILWAY STATION
I	Can I have a return to Oxford, please?
A	Sure.
I	How much?
A	Twenty-two fifty, please.
I	Can Ibycard?
A	No problem. Put your card in the machine. And enter your PIN number, please.
2 IN	A CLOTHES SHOP
I	Hello. Can I this jumper, please?
B	The changing rooms are over there.
3 IN	A POST OFFICE
I	post these letters to the Czech Republic,?
C	Sure. Put them on the scales. That's £1.68.
I	Thank you is a stamp for a postcard to the United
C	two p.
I	Can I have, please?
4 IN	A CAFÉ
D	Yes, please!
I	Can I have, please? With milk.
D	Large or small?
I	To take away.
D	Sure. Anything to eat?
I	No, Just a coffee.
D	Thanks
5 IN	A CHEMIST'S
E	Next, please!
I	Hello. Can I have, please?
E	Twelve or twenty-four?
I	?
E	Do you want a packet of twelve aspirin or twenty-four?
I	Oh, twelve's, thanks.

17.10 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.



#### Roleplay

- 4 Work with a partner. Make more conversations with different information.
  - a return/single ticket to Manchester/Bristol
  - this jacket/this T-shirt
  - this parcel to Italy/this letter to Qatar
  - a cheese and salad sandwich/an ice-cream
  - shampoo/toothpaste





## Where I live

Rooms and furniture • There is/are • Prepositions • Directions

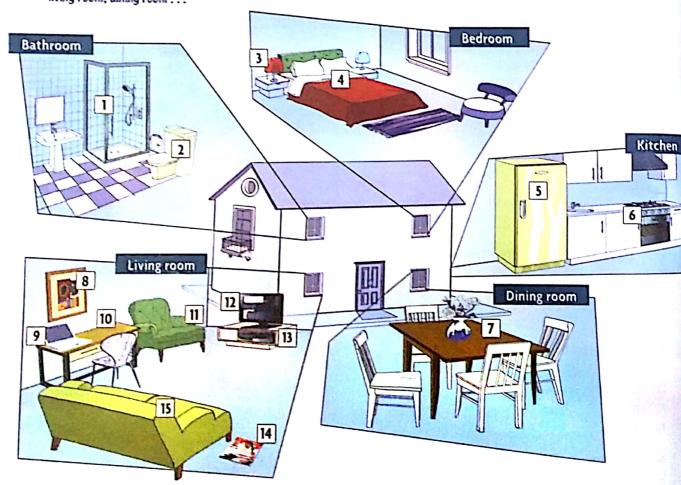
-					
No.					
		ra.	D.	TE	٠
1000	-		400		1

1 Do you live in a house or a flat? Do you have a garden or a balcony? Tell the class.

I live in a flat.

We don't have a garden, but we have a big balcony.

2 TB1 Look at the picture. Listen and repeat the rooms of a house. living room, dining room . . .



- 3 Find the things in the house. Write the numbers.
  - 4 a bed

a cooker

- □aTV
- a shower
- a sofa
- a toilet
- a fridge

a table

- an armchair
- a lamp
- a picture
- a magazine
- a DVD player a laptop
- a desk

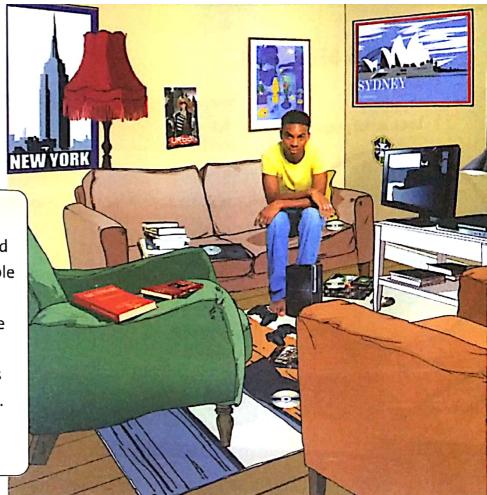
- Tissen and repeat.
- 56 Unit 8 Where I live

## ROBERT'S LIVING ROOM

There is/are ...

Read and listen to Robert describing his living room.
Complete his description.

My living room isn't very big, but I think it's great. There's an old sofa, and there are two armchairs. \_\_\_\_\_\_ 's a table with a TV and a DVD player on it. \_\_\_\_\_ also a PlayStation®. I love all the games. There \_\_\_\_\_ some books, and \_\_\_\_ are a lot of pictures and posters on the walls. \_\_\_\_\_ two lamps. My room's not very tidy but it's really comfortable. 9



2 Talk about Robert's living room.

There's an old sofa.

There are two armchairs.

- a sofa
- a table
- posters

- · armchairs
- books
- a PlayStation®
- · a DVD player
- lamps
- 3 T8.4 Listen and repeat the questions and answers.

Is there a sofa?

✓ Yes, there is.

Is there a desk?

X No. there isn't.

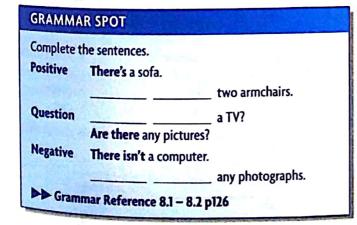
Are there any armchairs?

✓ Yes, there are.

Are there any photographs?

X No, there aren't.

Practise them with a partner.



4 Ask and answer questions about Robert's living room.

Is there a TV?

a TV

photographs

a desk

a telephone

lamps

a DVD player

• a PlayStation®

· a riaystatio

magazines

Are there any photographs?

No, there aren't.

5 Look again at Robert's living room. Is it tidy?

**T8.5** Listen to Robert talking to his mother.

1 What things in his flat does she ask about?

2 What are her questions?

3 When does she want to visit?

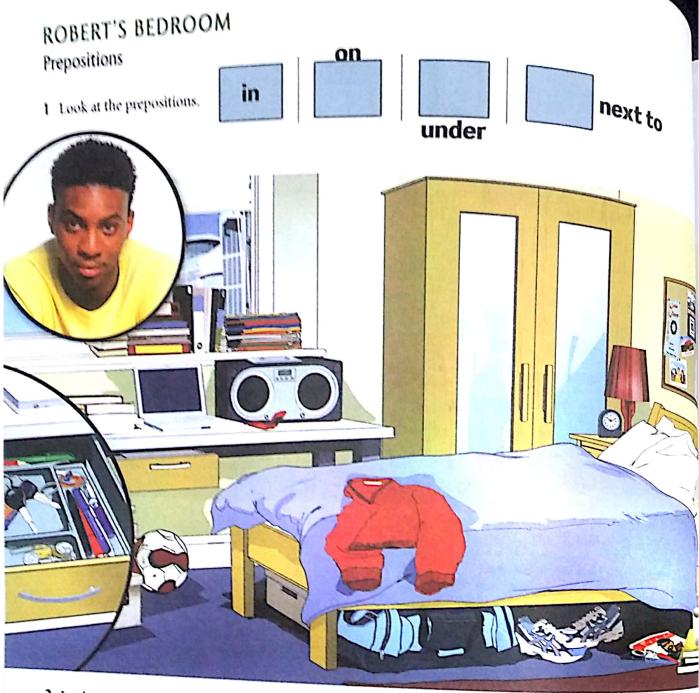


Yes, there is.

Look at **T 8.5** on p117. Practise the conversation with a partner.

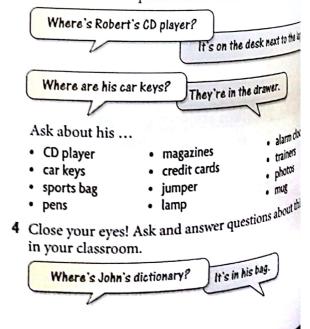
6 Work with a partner. Describe your living room.
In my living room there's a ... There are a lot of ...

Unit 8 • Where I live



- 2 Look at Robert's bedroom. Write a preposition from exercise 1.
  - 1 His laptop is on the desk.
  - 2 The CD player is \_\_\_\_\_ the laptop.
  - 3 There are three books \_\_\_\_\_ the floor \_\_\_ his bed.
  - 4 His car keys are \_\_\_\_\_ the drawer.
  - 5 There's a football \_\_\_\_\_\_ the floor \_\_\_\_\_ the desk.
  - 6 His trainers are \_\_\_\_\_ his bag \_\_\_\_\_ his bed.
  - T8.6 Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

3 Ask and answer questions about Robert's things

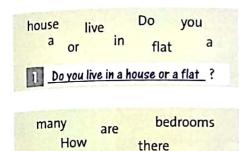


## **PRACTICE**

2

### Questions and answers

 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.



	here	kitchen	in	Is
a	phone	the		
3				_ ?

in Is	living a television room	n the there
4		

DVD player there	a the	under le	
5		?	Feren

there	in	Are	your
bedroom	books	a le	ot of
6			?

Are	the	there
pictures	any	wall
	A STATE OF	NEWS TO PERSON

- 18.7 Listen and check.
- Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions about your home.

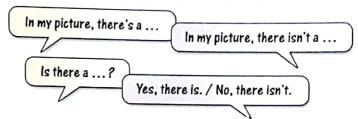
#### Two different rooms

3 Work with a partner.

**Student A** Look at the picture on this page.

**Student B** Look at the picture on p141.

Your pictures are different. Talk about them to find differences.





4 T 8.8 Listen to a description of one of the rooms. Which room is it?

#### Check it

- 5 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.
  - 1 Is a sofa in the living room?
  - Is there a sofa in the living room?
  - 2 There's DVD player on the floor.
    - ☐ There's a DVD player on the floor.
  - 3 Are there a poster on the wall?
    - Are there any posters on the wall?
  - 4 My keys are in the drawer.
  - My keys are on the drawer.
  - 5 The lamp is next to the bed.
  - The lamp is next the bed.

#### READING AND VOCABULARY

Vancouver – the best city in the world

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the map and find Vancouver. Is it near the US?
- **2** Look at the pictures. Find these things.
  - mountains
- a ferry
- a park

- the sea
- a trolley bus
- sailing

- a beach
- a train
- fishing
- **3** Read the text about Vancouver. Write the five paragraph headings in the correct place.

- Where is it?

Where to stay

When to go

What to do

How to travel

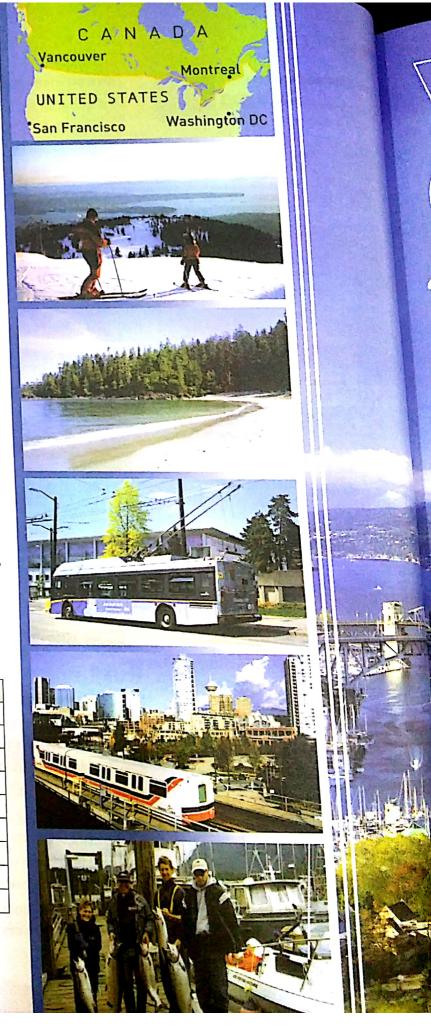
Where to eat

T 8.9 Listen and check.

- 4 Answer the questions.
  - 1 Where is Vancouver?
  - 2 When is a good time to visit?
  - 3 Does it rain a lot? When?
  - 4 What do people do ...?
    - in the mountains
    - on the beach
    - · in Stanley Park
  - 5 What water sports are there?
  - 6 Why are there so many kinds of restaurants?
  - 7 Are *all* the hotels expensive? How much are they?
  - 8 What is a good way to see the city?
- 5 Complete the chart with adjectives from the text.

Adjectives	Nouns
busy, cosmopolitan	city
	mountains
80	beaches
1 (2)	shops and restaurants
79.50	the weather
	seafood
	hotels
	trolley buses
	Sky Train

60 Unit 8 • Where I live



# Vancouver



# Camada

Vancouver is called the

## best city in the world'.

Why? Is it the spectacular mountains
The beautiful beaches?

The excellent shops and restaurants?

It's all of this and more!

#### Where is it?

**Vancouver** is in south-west Canada, next to the Pacific Ocean, 24 miles from the US border.

It is always a good time to visit Vancouver. The weather is never too cold or too hot. It is warm and sunny in summer, but it rains a lot in autumn and winter.

In spring, go skiing in the mountains in the morning and relax on the beach in the afternoon. In summer, go swimming, sailing or fishing, or go walking in North America's biggest park, Stanley Park. There are excellent shops in Yaletown, and there is also theatre of every sort. Vancouver is the 'City of Festivals'.

Vancouver is a cosmopolitan city so there are French, Italian, Japanese, Indian, Thai, and Chinese restaurants. Vancouver's Chinatown is the second biggest in North America, after San Francisco. There is also a lot of delicious, fresh seafood.

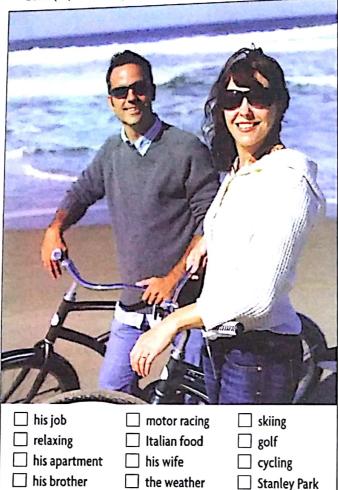
In the busy city centre there are some excellent, expensive hotels. The beautiful Fairmont Hotel is \$400 a night, but next to the sea there are a lot of cheap, comfortable hotels from \$59 a night.

You don't need a car in Vancouver. There are slow, old trolley buses and there is the fast, modern Sky Train. Take the ferry – it is a great way to see the city.

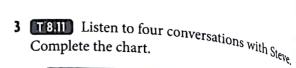
## LISTENING AND WRITING

My home town

1 T8.10 Listen to Steve. He lives in Vancouver. Tick (✓) the things he talks about.



- **2 T8.10** Listen again. Answer the questions.
  - 1 Where does Steve work?
  - 2 Where does he live?
  - 3 Is his apartment big?
  - 4 What is his favourite food?



	What is the conversation about?	Who:
1		Who is Steve talking
2		
3		
4		

Look at **T 8.11** on p117. Practise the conversations with a partner.

- 4 In groups, talk about your home town.
  - Where do you live?
  - · What is there in your town?
  - What do you do there with your friends?
  - Where do you go shopping?
  - How do you travel?
  - Is it a good place to live?

#### Writing

5 Write about a town you know.

Where is it? ... is a town in ...

When to visit The best time to visit is ...

What to do Go ... There are a lot of ...

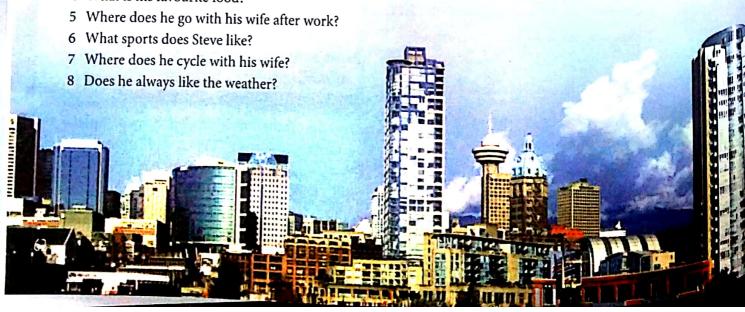
Where to eat There are good restaurants in ...

My favourite restaurant is ...

Where to stay ... is an expensive hotel in ...

... is a cheap hotel near/next to ...

How to travel The best way to see the town is ...



## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

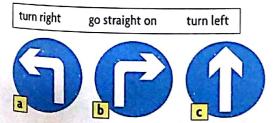
Directions

1 Find the places on the map.

hotel bank chemist's post office hospital castle supermarket park fish and chip shop restaurant Internet café railway station school theatre sports centre car park cinema café



2 What do the signs mean?



- 3 T8.12 Listen to the directions. Start from YOU ARE HERE on the map. Follow the directions. Where are you?
  - 1 Go up North Road. Turn left at the bank into Charles Street. It's on the right next to the theatre.

	at the sports centre
2	Sports centre
3	1 49.72 p
4	Market .
5	1.5960

Look at 18.12 on p118. Practise the directions.

4 Work with a partner. Have similar conversations.

Ask about ...

- a cinema
- a post office
- a hospital
- a supermarket
- a car park
- a café
- 5 With your partner, ask for and give directions to places in your town.

Excuse me! Is there a . . . near here?

Yes. Go down . .



Unit 8 • Where I live 63





## Times past

Saying years • was/were born • Past Simple – irregular verbs • have/do/go
When's your birthday?

#### No.

#### STARTER

1 T9:1 Listen and <u>underline</u> the years you hear. Say them.

**1** 1996 / 1986

2 1916 / 1960

3 2010 / 2002

4 1699 / 1799

**5** 1840 / 1945

6 2005/2015

2 T922 Listen and repeat.

1840 eighteen forty 1996 ninetee

1996 nineteen ninety-six 2005 two thousand and five

2010 two thousand and ten / twenty to

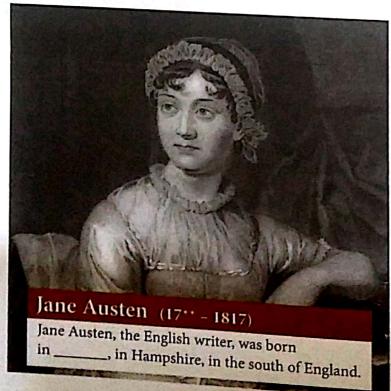
3 What year is it now? What year was it last year? What year is it next year?

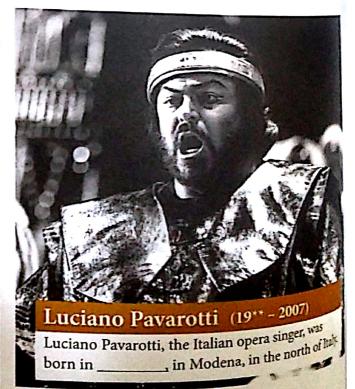
#### WHEN WAS SHE BORN?

was/were born

1 Look at the photos. Do you know the people? When were they born?

193 Listen and write the years.





2 T 9.4 Listen and repeat.

She was a writer. She was born in

He was an opera singer. He was born in

64 Unit 9 • Times past

3 Ask and answer questions with other students.

How old are you?

I'm 18/21 ... I was born in 19 ...

4 1935 Listen to the questions and answers. Practise them.

When were you born? When was he born? When was she born? When were they born?

I was born in 1994. He was born in 1978. She was born in 1991. They were born in 2001.



Complete the ch	art of the verb	to be.
	Present	Past
1	am	
You	are	were
He/She/It	is	
We	are	were
They	are	

5 This is Magalie Dromard. Listen to her talking about her family. Write when the people were born.



Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Magalie's family.

Who's Tristan?

He's Magalie's brother.

When was he born? In 1985. Who are André and Ella?

They're her ...

When were they ...?

**6** Who is your grandmother/grandfather/aunt/uncle ...?

Write the names of some people in your family. Ask and answer questions about them.

Ernest

Mary

- A Who's Ernest?
  B He's my uncle.
- A When was he born?
- B I'm not sure. I think about 1935.
- 7 Tell the class about your partner's family.

Peter's uncle was born in 1956. His father was born in 1962.





#### **PRACTICE**

#### Who were they?

1 Who are the people in the photographs? Match the people 1–8 and the jobs in the box.

singer	writer	politician
musician	artist	racing driver
actor	princess	



- 2 T9.7 Listen and write when they were born.
- 3 **T9.8** Listen to the questions and answers. Practise them.

Who was Shakespeare? He was a writer.
Where was he born? In England.
When was he born? In 1564.

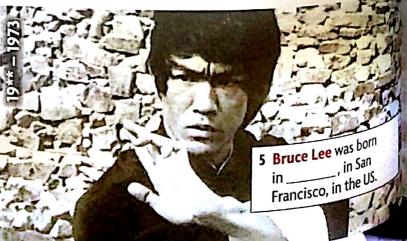
Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions about the other people.

Who was Vincent Van Gogh? He was an . . .

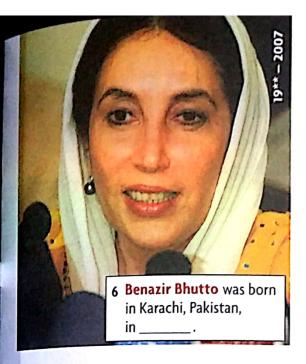


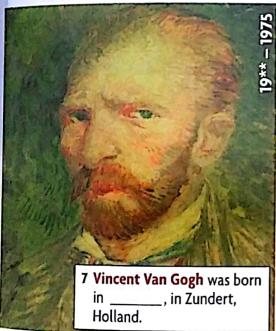


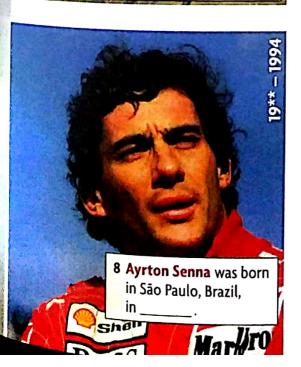




66 Unit 9 • Times past







Negatives and pronunciation 4 199 Listen and repeat.	Pronunciation /waz/ 1 He was an artist
Shakespeare was an artist.  No, he wasn't. He was a writer.	/wpznt/ No, he wasn't. /wa/
<ul><li>Shakespeare and Diana were Irish.</li><li>No, they weren't. They were English.</li><li>Write the correct information.</li></ul>	2 They were Irish. /wa:nt/ No, they weren't.
1 Ayrton Senna was an actor.  No, he wasn't ! He was a 2 Jane Austen was a princess.  No, she! 3 Shakespeare and Jane Austen  No, they! 4 Mozart was a scientist.  No, he! 5 Luciano Pavarotti and Umm  No, they! 6 Benazir Bhutto was a writer.	Kalthoum were politicians.  !  Lise the sentences.
Today is Yesterday was	Monday / Tuesday / Wednesday
Today I'm at school / at home / at work	
Today the weather is hot / cold / wet / lovely / horrible	
Today my parents are Yesterday my parents were	at work / at home
Check it  Complete the sentences with we	

#### Cl

7	С	omplete the sentences with was, wasn't, were, or weren't.
	1	Where was your father born?
	2	When your parents born?
	3	My parents both born in 1961. My father born
		in 1961, and my mother born in 1963.
	4	I on holiday in Syria in 2008.
	5	he at home yesterday?' 'No, he'
	6	'you at work yesterday?' 'Yes, we!
	7	they at school yesterday morning?' 'No, they:

#### READING AND SPEAKING

Past Simple - irregular verbs

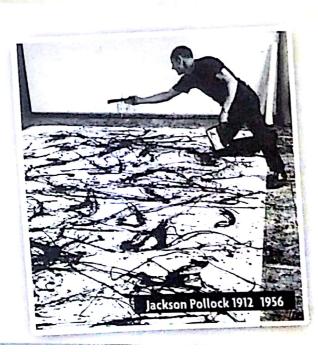
Match the present and the past forms of the verbs.
 Look at the Irregular verbs list on p142.

Present	Past
go	saw
come	went
have	said
be	made
make	came
see	had
buy	found
say	bought /bo:t/
find	was

T9.11 Listen and check. Practise the verbs.

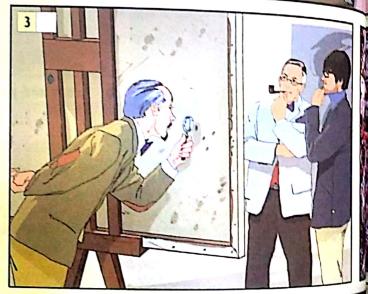
#### ►► Grammar Reference 9.2 p127

- 2 Look at the pictures. They tell a true story. Match the sentences and pictures.
  - a The painting is now for sale in an art gallery Canada.
  - **b** An American lady went shopping and bough painting for \$5 from a charity shop.
  - c A rich businessman was happy to pay \$9 million, but Teri said 'I want \$50 million!'
  - **d** One expert found Pollock's fingerprint on the back of the painting.
  - e A film company made a film about Teri and the painting.
  - f An art teacher said the painting was by the famous artist, Jackson Pollock.



# Jackson







## Pollock!







3 Read and complete the newspaper article with the irregular verbs from exercise 1.

Helen Byers in Los Angeles reports

#### WHO IS **JACKSON POLLOCK?**

Teri Horton, a 60-year-old lady from Los Angeles,  (1) went shopping in San Bernardino, a town in California, USA. She (2) was in a charity shop when she (3) a colourful, modern painting. She (4) it for \$5.
An art teacher saw the painting and (5)i was by the American artist, Jackson Pollock. 'Who is Jackson Pollock?' said Teri. She (6) no idea that he was a very famous modern painter.
Many art experts (7) to her house to see the painting. Some said that it wasn't a 'Pollock', but one expert, Peter Paul Biró, (8) Pollock's fingerprint on the back. Biró said, 'This is a real Pollock painting.'
A rich man was happy to pay \$9 million for it, but Teri said: 'No! I want \$50 million.'
In 2007, a Canadian TV company (9) a film about Teri and the painting. It is now for sale in an art gallery in Toronto. Price: \$50 million!



Teri Horton with Pollock painting

Read the article aloud with a partner.

T 9.12 Listen and check.

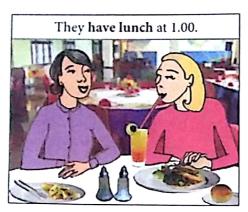
4 Look at the pictures only and tell the story again.

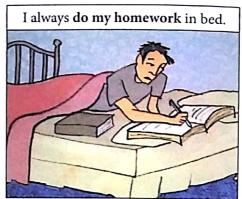
Unit 9 • Times past 69

#### **VOCABULARY**

have, do, go

1 Look at the words that go with have, do, and go.







2 Write the words in the box next to the correct verb, have, do, or go.

shopping a shower for a walk a good time	lunch the housework some exercise breakfast	<del>my homework</del> on holiday home to work
have	_lunch	
do	my homework	
	_shopping	
go		
	State of the state of	

3 Write the past of have, do, and go.

went	had	did
Present		Past
have		
do		
go		

4 Complete the sentences with went, had or did.

1 Yesterday I met my mother at one o' clock and we had lunch in a restaurant.

2 I hate doing housework but last Sunday I\_ because my house was a mess.

3 Yesterday was a lovely day so I \_\_\_\_\_ for a walkin the park.

4 Usually I walk but yesterday I \_\_\_\_\_ to work by but

5 On Saturday night I went to a great restaurant.l\_ a really nice meal.

6 I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of exercise yesterday. I went to the grant to the gran

7 The film wasn't very good so we \_\_\_\_\_home early

T 9.13 Listen and check.

#### Talking about you

5	Complete	the sentences	with	what you did.
---	----------	---------------	------	---------------

1 Yesterday I had a shower at o'clock 2 This morning I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at \_\_\_\_\_o'clock

I had coffee and \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Last Saturday I \_\_\_\_\_ shopping and I bought

4 Last weekend I \_\_\_\_\_ my homework at \_\_\_\_ o' clock on \_\_\_\_\_.

5 Last year I \_\_\_\_\_ on holiday to \_\_

6 Tell a partner what you did.

#### EVERYDAY ENGLISH

#### When's your birthday?

1 These are the months of the year. What is the correct order?

January	- Septemb	per
	_	January-
	– <mark>Ap</mark> ril –	March
	Novem	ber
		<b>August</b>
	_ Octob	er
	_ _ May	<b>Feb</b> ruary
	– Ju	ıly
December	_ June	December

- T9.14 Listen and check. Say the months round the class.
- 2 Which month is your birthday? Tell the class.



How many birthdays are in each month? Which month has the most?

3 T9.15 Listen and repeat the numbers.

thirteenth (13th)	fourteenth (14th)	fifteenth (15th)
tenth (10th)	eleventh (11th)	twelfth (12th)
seventh (7th)	eighth (8th)	ninth (9th)
fourth (4th)	fifth (5th)	sixth (6th)
first (1st)	second (2nd)	third (3rd)

4 Say these numbers.

16th 17th 18th 19th 20th 21st 22nd 23rd 24th 25th 26th 27th 28th 29th 30th 31st

Tig.16 Listen and check.

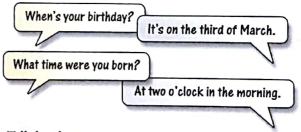
the \_\_\_\_\_ of December

5 T9.17 Listen and write the numbers. Practise them.

the \_\_\_\_\_ of January
the \_\_\_\_ of March
the \_\_\_\_ of April
the \_\_\_ of May
the \_\_\_ of June
the \_\_\_ of August
the \_\_\_ of November

We say:
the tenth of April
We write:
10 April
April 10
10/4/09
Americans write:
4/10/09

**6** When is your birthday? Do you know the time you were born? Ask and answer in groups.



Tell the class.

I was born in 1982 on the twentieth of July at two o'clock in the morning.





## We had a great time

Past Simple – regular and irregular • Questions and negatives • Sport and leisure • Going sightseeing



#### STARTER

- 1 What day is it today? What day was it yesterday?
- 2 Match a sentence with a time expression.

We're at school	yesterday.
I went to the US	now.
I did my homework	in 2009.

3 What is the Past Simple of these irregular verbs?

get	have	go	buy	do	see

#### YESTERDAY WAS SUNDAY

Past Simple - regular and irregular

1 T10.1 Listen to Angie. Tick (✓) the things she did yesterday. What day was it?

#### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

Write the Past Simple of these regular verbs. What are the last two letters?

/t/ cook \_\_\_\_\_ watch \_\_\_\_ /d/ play \_\_\_\_ listen \_\_\_\_

/ɪd/ start \_\_\_\_\_ want \_\_\_\_

Listen and repeat. Careful with the pronunciation of *-ed*.

- 2 The Past Simple is always the same.
  I/you/he/she/it/we/they played
- ►► Grammar Reference 10.1 p127
- 2 Tell the class what she did.

Yesterday she got up late and had ... Then she ...

3 <u>Underline</u> the things in the list that you did last Sunday. Tell a partner.

Last Sunday I got up ... and I went ... I saw ...

72 Unit 10 • We had a great time!

#### Yesterday she ...

- got up late
- had a big breakfast
- □ played tennis□ went shopping
- bought some clothes
- stayed at home went for a walk
- cleaned her flat
- ☐ listened to the radio☐ did some work
- saw some friends
  watched TV
- cooked a meal
  went to bed early



#### Questions and negatives

1 It is Monday morning. Angle and Rose are at work.

110.3 Listen and complete their conversation.



- A Hi, Rose. <u>Did</u> you <u>have</u> a good weekend?
- R Yes, I did, thanks.
- A What \_\_\_\_\_ you do yesterday?
- R Well, I got up early and I \_\_\_\_\_ tennis with some friends.
- A You \_\_\_\_\_ up early on Sunday!
- R Well, yes, it was such a lovely day.
- A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ tennis?
- R In the park. We \_\_\_\_\_ lunch in the café there.
- A Oh, great! \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ out in the evening?
- R No, I didn't. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ a meal for my sister.
- A Mmm! What \_\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?
- R Roast beef. It was delicious! What about you, Angie? Did you have a good weekend?

2 T10.4 Listen and repeat Angie's questions.

Did you have a good weekend? What did you do yesterday? Where did you play tennis? Did you go out in the evening? What did you have?



Work with a partner. Practise the conversation in exercise 1.

- 3 T10.5 Listen to Rose asking Angie about *her* weekend. Complete her questions.
  - 1 What/do on Saturday? What did you do on Saturday?
  - 2 Who/see at the restaurant?
  - 3 ... go out/Sunday?
  - 4 ... do anything/Sunday evening?

Listen again. What did Angie do?

4 T10.6 Listen and repeat. What didn't Angie do?

I didn't go out because I was too tired

I didn't do much on Sunday.

I didn't go to bed late.

Say three things Angie and Rose didn't do.
 Angie: tennis/walk/radio Rose: late/shopping/TV
 Angie didn't play tennis. Rose didn't get up late.

	gia.	-	-	•	•	•	•	200	-		dog	g the s	
ı	~	•	Λ	n	Л	٦	Л	W	П	E	D	6	٧.
ı	J	М	А	II.	Л	Λ	1		W		U	Ľ	AU

1 Questions in the Past Simple use did. Complete the questions.

\_\_\_\_ you **go out**?

Where \_\_\_\_\_ she go?

What \_\_\_\_\_ you **do**?

2 Negatives use didn't. Complete the negatives.

They \_\_\_\_\_ go to work.

We \_\_\_\_\_ watch TV.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 10.2 p127

**6** Work with a partner. Say what you did and didn't do last night.

What did you do last night?

I didn't do much.

I stayed at home.

#### **PRACTICE** Grammar 1 Complete the sentences in the Past Simple. 1 I played (play) tennis on Sunday. 2 Yesterday we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) lunch in the park. 3 She \_\_\_\_\_ (do) her homework on the bus. 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ (not clean) my flat last weekend. 5 'Where \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_ (buy) his new computer?' 'He \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) it on the Internet.' questionnaire Last weekend 6 'What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ (do) last night?' 'I \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) out. I \_\_\_\_ (go) to bed early.' Did you have a good weekend? You Teacher Partner Did you ...? 2 Look at the questionnaire. What activities are in go to the mall the pictures? go shopping 3 Put a tick (✓) next to the things you did have a meal in a restaurant last weekend. П **4** Ask your teacher the questions. Put a tick (✓) next see your friends to the things she/he did. play football Did you go to the sports club? watch TV/a film/a DVD Yes, I did./No, I didn't. go to a picnic do a lot of homework 5 Ask a partner the questions. Put a tick ( ) next to do a lot of housework the things she/he did. Tell the class about you and your partner. Maria went to the sports club, but I didn't. I went shopping. 74 Unit 10 • We had a great time!

	aking conversation aking conversations to show we are interested.
М	aking to show we are interested.
6	we went to the mall yesterday.
(	Wa Went to me
-	Oh, really? What did you buy?
	Was it crowded?
	(Who was there?)
	Reply to these lines with a question.
	1 ning vesterage
	'Really? (Where/go:)
	that new Lebanese restaurant last night.'
	2 'We went to that here?' ?' 'Mmm! (What/have?)?'
	with the coffee har'
	3 'We saw a lot of our friends in the coffee bar.'  'Oh! (Who/see?)?'
	4 'I played tennis at the weekend.'
	'Oh, really? (Where/play?)?'
	5 'The picnic on Saturday was great!'
	'Oh, good! (What time/leave?)?'
	T10.7 Listen and check.
7	Work with a partner. Read the example conversation.
	A I went shopping yesterday.
	B Really? Where did you go?
	A Oxford Street.
	B Oh! What did you buy?
	A Well, I wanted a new coat, and I went to the new mall.
	B Did you find one?
	A Yes, I did. I found a beautiful black one. It was only £50!

Time expressions

8 Complete the time expressions using a word from the box.

				=
at	in	on	last	]
	3414			on Monday
				night
		an many day	Approx.	8 o'clock
1	went '	there .		week
		Danie Caralle	eger-	2007
				year
				Sunday morning

Check it

9	Tick (✓)	the	correct	sentence.
•	TICK (	LIIC		

1	She bought an expensive car.
	She buyed an expensive car.

	0110	04,		-I-I	
	T1.	1	4:		Cundow

3	Did they went shopping yesterday?

4	What did	you do	last	wee	kend?

			_	
6	I saw	John	last	night

	I saw	John	on	last	nig	h
--	-------	------	----	------	-----	---

Choose one of the conversations in exercise 6 and make it longer.



Unit 10 • We had a great time!

75

## VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING Sport and leisure

- 1 What are the activities in the photos?
  - 2 tennis
- computer games
- football
- walking
- skiing
- swimming
- ☐ golf
- jogging
- motor racing
- cycling
- windsurfing
- fishing horse-riding
- rugby ice-skating
- 2 Write the activities in the correct column.

I play tennis.

I go jogging.

play	go + -ing
tennis	jogging

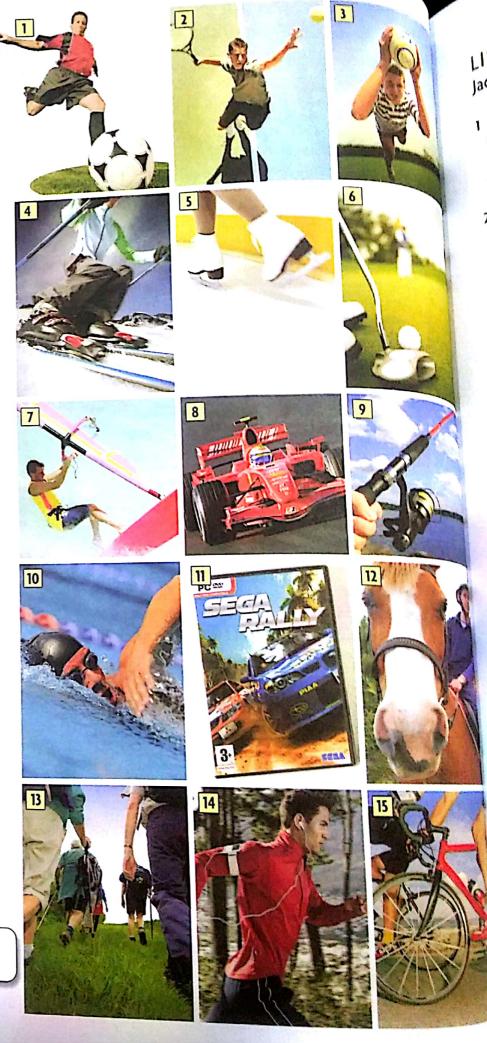
3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the activities.



4 Tell the class about your partner.

Molly doesn't play tennis, but she goes jogging. She went jogging in the park yesterday.

76 Unit 10 • We had a great time!



#### LISTENING AND SPEAKING Jack and Millie Parker's holiday

1 Say the months of the year.

January February ...

In your country, what months are ...?

spring summer autumn winter

When do you usually go on holiday?

I usually go on holiday in summer.

3 110.9 Listen to Jack and Millie Parker talking about their holidays. <u>Underline</u> what they say.

#### They usually . . . But last year they . . .

go in summer / spring.
go to Italy / India.
stay in a hotel / a villa.
eat at home / with friends.
go swimming / sailing.
play golf / read.
have / don't have a good time.

went in autumn / winter.

went to Canada / Colorado.

stayed in a hotel / a house.

went out to restaurants / diners.

went skiing / jogging.

stayed in / went out every night.

had / didn't have a good time.

4 Ask and answer questions with a partner about Jack and Millie's holidays.



5 Complete the sentences about their last holiday.

1 Last year Jack and Millie <u>didn't go</u> on holiday in summer.

They <u>went</u> in winter.

<sup>2</sup> They \_\_\_\_\_\_ to Italy. They \_\_\_\_\_ to Colorado.

3 They \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel. They \_\_\_\_\_ in a villa.

4 They \_\_\_\_\_ at home. They \_\_\_\_\_ in restaurants.

5 They \_\_\_\_\_ skiing. They \_\_\_\_\_ swimming.

T 10.10 Listen and check.







#### SPEAKING AND WRITING My last holiday

1 What is your favourite kind of holiday? What do you like doing? ✓ What don't you like doing? X

eating in restaurants

visiting relatives

relaxing in the hotel

going shopping

driving in the mountains

sightseeing in famous cities

visiting museums

playing sports

Compare your choices with a partner.

What did you do on your last holiday? Ask and answer questions with your partner.

· Where ... go?

• When ... go?

Where did you go?

· Where ... stay?

I went to Jordan.

· What ... do every day?

· ... have good weather?

When did you go?

• What ... do in the evening?

Last year. / Two years ago.

- What ... eat?
- · ... meet nice people?

**3** Tell the class about your partner.

Carl went sightseeing in Rome last June / six months ago.

#### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

ago

two years ago means two years before now.

I met James ten years ago.

I went to Oman six weeks ago.

Sally phoned five minutes ago.



sightseeing

#### Writing

4 Write about your last holiday. Read it to the class.

#### -17777777777777777

#### My last holiday

Last ..., I went on holiday to ... I went with ... We stayed in ...

Every day we ... Sometimes we ... Once we ... We met ...

The food was ... and the weather was ...

We had a ... time.

78 Unit 10 • We had a great time!

#### <sub>VERYDAY</sub> ENGLISH oing sightseeing

Write the names of two cities and the dates when you were a tourist there.

London, July 2005. Dubai, April 2009.

Show a partner. Talk about the cities.

What did you do there? What did you see? What did you buy?

I went to ...

We visited ...

I bought ...

2 TIO.II Listen and complete the conversations in a Tourist Office.

- 1 A Hello. Can I \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  - B Yes. \_\_\_\_\_ have a map of the city, please?
  - A Of course. Here you are.
  - B Can you \_\_\_\_\_ where we are on the \_\_\_\_?
  - A Yes. We're \_\_\_\_\_ in Regent Street in the city \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 C We want to go on a \_\_\_\_\_ tour of the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A That's fine. The next bus \_\_\_\_\_ at 10 o'clock. It \_\_\_\_\_ about an hour and a half.
  - C Where does the bus go from?
  - A It \_\_\_\_\_ Trafalgar Square, but you can get \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ when you want.
- 3 D I want to visit the British Museum. What time does it \_\_\_\_\_?
  - A It opens at 10 in the morning and \_\_\_\_\_ at 5.30 in the evening.
  - D \_\_\_\_\_ is it to get in?
  - A It's \_\_\_\_.

Work with a partner. Practise the conversations.

When people go sightseeing in your town, where do they go? What is there to do in your town?

There's a park and a zoo.

We have a beautiful castle.

Visitors go to the market/ the old town /the square ...

#### Roleplay

4 Roleplay a conversation in a Tourist Office with your partner.

#### Student A

You are a tourist at the Tourist Office.

Ask for information.

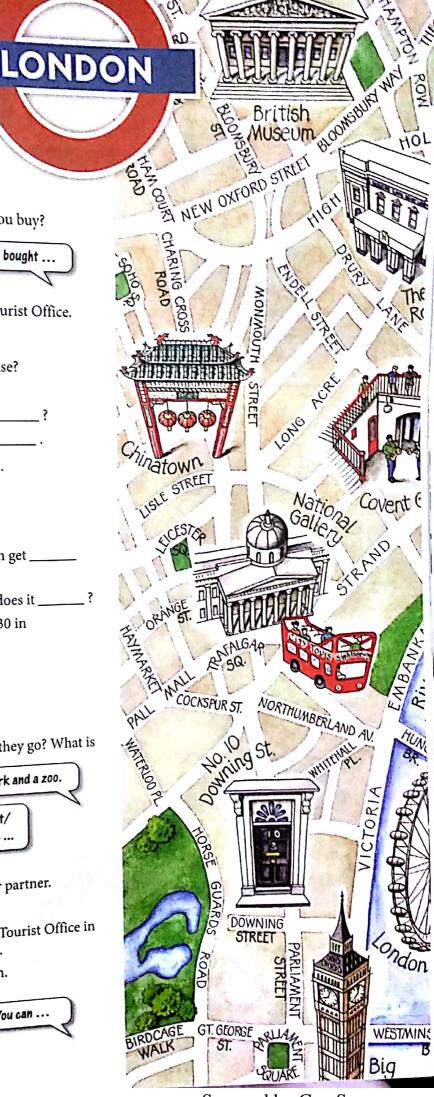
#### Student B

You work in the Tourist Office in your home town.

Give information.

Hello. I want to go on a tour of the town ... see the exhibition ... visit the castle ...

That's fine. You can ...



Scanned by CamScanner





## I can do that!

can/can't • Adverbs • Adjective + noun • Everyday problems

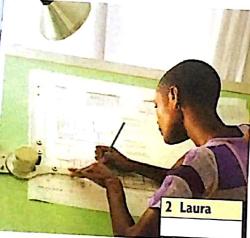
#### STARTER

Do you have a computer? Do you use it for . . .?

• work • the Internet • computer games • shopping • emails

Talk to a partner. Tell the class.







#### WHAT CAN THEY DO? can/can't

1 Match the words and photos.

pilot farmer schoolboy interpreter grandmother architect





Margaret

- **2** Complete the sentences with *a* or *an* and a word from exercise 1.
  - 1 Marcus is <u>an interpreter</u>. He can speak French and German fluently.
  - 2 Laura is \_\_\_\_\_\_. She can draw well.
  - 3 Justin is \_\_\_\_\_. He can fly 747 jumbo jets.
  - 4 George is \_\_\_\_\_\_. He can drive a tractor.
  - 5 Lee is \_\_\_\_\_. He can run very fast.
  - 6 Oliver is \_\_\_\_\_\_. He can use a computer really well.
  - 7 Margaret is Oliver's \_\_\_\_\_\_. She can make fantastic cakes.

Til. Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

3 Tell a partner what you can do from exercise 2.

I can use a computer and I can draw.

## Questions and negatives

Listen and repeat the questions and answers.

can Marcus speak French?

Yes, I can.

Can you speak French?

Yes, she can.

Can Laura draw well? Can you draw well?

No, I can't. I can't draw at all!

2 Ask and answer more questions with a partner. First Ask about the people, then ask about your partner.



#### GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

Can/Can't have the same form for all persons.

I / You / He / She / It / We / They | can can't

draw.

2 Till. Listen and repeat the different pronunciations of can and can't.

/kan/

/ka:nt/

He can speak Spanish.

They can't draw.

/kən/

/kæn/

Can you drive?

Yes, I can.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 11.1–11.2 p128

Of course I can!

Read and listen to Oliver and Dominique. Complete the conversation.

Dominique Can you use a computer, Oliver? Oliver Yes, of course I \_\_\_\_\_! All my friends can. I \_\_\_\_\_a computer at home in my bedroom and we use computers at \_\_\_\_\_ all the time. D That's great. What other things can you \_\_\_\_\_? O Well, I can \_\_\_\_\_ fast, very fast, and I can draw a bit. I can \_\_\_\_\_ really good cars but I \_\_\_\_ drive them of course! I can draw good planes, too. When I'm big I want to be a pilot and \_\_\_\_\_747s. D Excellent. Now, I know you can speak French. O Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I can speak French fluently because my dad's French. We sometimes \_\_\_\_\_\_French at home. D Can you speak any other languages? O No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I can't speak German or Spanish, just French - and English of course! And I can cook!

I can \_\_\_\_\_ cakes. My grandma makes fantastic



big chocolate cake! T11.4 Listen again and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

- 4 Answer the questions about Oliver.
  - 1 What can Oliver do? What can't he do?
  - 2 Does he use a computer at school? 3 What does he want to be when he's big?
- 4 Why can he speak French well?
- 5 What did he do yesterday?

#### **PRACTICE**

#### Pronunciation

- 1 Listen and underline can or can't.
  - 1 I can / can't ski quite well.
  - 2 She can / can't speak German at all.
  - 3 He can / can't speak English fluently.
  - 4 Why can / can't you come to my house?
  - 5 We can / can't understand our teacher.
  - 6 They can / can't read.
  - 7 Can / Can't I have an ice-cream, please?
  - 8 Can / Can't cats swim?

Listen again and repeat.

#### She can speak Spanish very well!

2 T11.6 Jenni Spencer is English, but she lives in Argentina. Listen and tick (✓) the things she can do.

Can?	Jenni	You	T	S
speak Spanish speak German speak English ride a horse play golf cook				

3 Complete Jenni's sentences with words from the box.

a little bit quite well	really well fluently	(not) at all

- 1 I can speak Spanish \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I can speak German \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My friends can speak English \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I can ride \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 I can't cook \_\_\_\_\_\_.

T11.6 Listen again and practise the sentences.

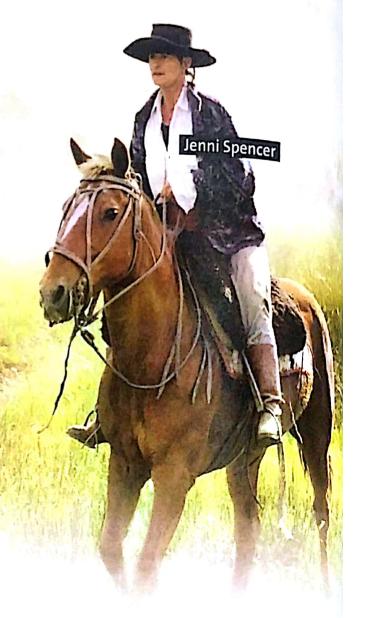
#### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

- Adverbs can come after the verb.
   She can run fast. He plays golf well.
- 2 Regular adverbs end in -ly. She can speak Spanish fluently.

Please speak slowly.

►► Grammar Reference 11.3 p128

82 Unit 11 • I can do that!



#### Talking about you

**4** Complete the chart in exercise 2 about *you*. Then ask and answer the questions with the teacher and another student.



5 Compare yourself with the teacher and other students.

Isabel and I can ride a horse quite well. She can cook, too, but I can't cook at all.

### REQUESTS AND OFFERS Can I help you?

Look at the pictures. Use the words to write questions with Can ...?

2 Match these answers with the questions in exercise 1.

a 3 Sorry. I can't. It's my brother's wedding on Saturday.

b \_\_ It's about three thirty.

c \_\_\_ Yes, of course. Here you are.

d \_\_\_ Yes, please. I want to buy this postcard.

Oh, yes please! That's so kind of you!

I'm sorry. Is this better? Can you understand me now?

T11.7 Listen and check.

3 Practise the questions and answers with a partner. Continue the conversations.



#### Check it

- **4** Tick (✓) the correct sentence.
  - 1 🔲 I no can understand.
    - ☐ I can't understand.
  - 2 He can drive a tractor.
    - ☐ He cans drive a tractor.
  - 3 Can you swim fast?
    - ☐ Do you can swim fast?
  - 4  $\square$  We can to play tennis quite well.
    - ☐ We can play tennis quite well.
  - 5 \quad You speak Italian very good.
    - You speak Italian very well.
  - 6  $\square$  He plays very well the piano.
    - ☐ He plays the piano very well.

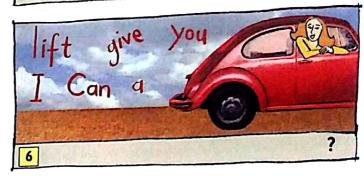












#### READING AND LISTENING The Internet

1 What are these websites for? What does 'www' mean?

#### www.bbc.co.uk

www.londontheatre.com

www.google.com www.blogger.com www.english.aljazeera.net

#### www.football365.com

2 Match the verbs and nouns.

Verbs	Nouns
listen to	a newspaper
watch \	a bill
play \	an email
pay	friends
read	chess
chat to	a hotel
send	TV
book	the radio

Which of these things can you do on the Internet?

- 3 What do you know about the Internet? Discuss these questions.
  - · When did the Internet start?
  - · Why did it start?
  - What can people do on the Internet?
- 4 T11.8 Read and listen to the text about the Internet. Answer the questions in exercise 3.
- 5 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (X)? Correct the false (X) sentences.
  - 1 The Internet started in the 1970s.
  - 2 Telephone companies started it.
  - 3 It started in America.
  - 4 In the 1980s, scientists sent messages between computers.
  - 5 There is an international computer language.





#### What do you do on the Internet?

6 T11.9 Listen to the people. When and why do they use

the Internet?	Complete the information.
	Charlotte, 14
(25)	When? every day
	Why? help with homework
Lauren, 20	
0	Mike, 23
120	When?
23	Why?
Alan Krum,	47
When?	
Why?	
	Max, 10
6	When?
	Why?
Edna, 71	
When?	

T11.9 Listen again and check.

Why? \_\_\_\_\_

#### 7 "The list is endless!"

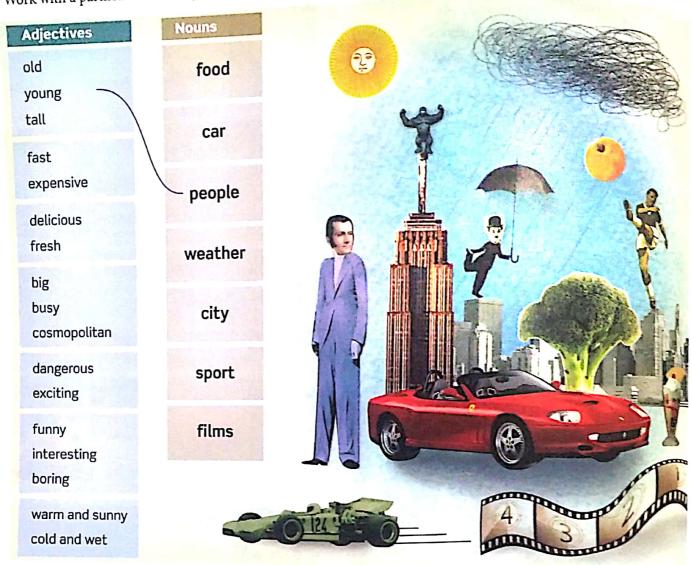
Work in groups. What different things do you use the Internet for? What are your favourite websites? Tell the class.

Unit 11 • I can do that!

#### VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

#### Adjective + noun

1 Work with a partner. Match the groups of adjectives with the nouns.



2	Complete the sentences with words from exercise 1.
	Compare answers with a partner.

1	A Ferrari is		
	'Howis your brother?' 'He's very, 1.9 metres.'		
3	I think motor racing is a		
	Can I have aorange juice, please?		
5	New York is a very		
6	Charlie Chaplin made some very		
7	We can't go for a walk. It's too		

T11.10 Listen and compare. Look at the tapescript on p120 and practise the conversations.

- **3** Work in groups. Think of examples of these things.
  - an expensive car and a cheap car
  - a dangerous sport and a safe sport
  - an old city and a modern city
  - an old film star and a young film star
  - a funny film and a boring film

Compare your lists.

86 Unit 11 • I can do that!

## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Everyday Problem	
Look at the pictures. Who has a problem with?	
☐ computers ☐ directions ☐ a ticket machine ☐ arriving late ☐ a lost passport ☐ an accident	
5	
Match the lines with the pictures.  I can't find it anywhere!  This machine doesn't work!  I'm lost!  I'm so sorry I'm late!  I can't get on the Internet!  Are you all right?	

	Excuse me! Can you help me? I'm	
B	Where do you to go?	
	Grand Central Station.	
В	Turn left onto Park Avenue. It's on	١,
	You miss it.	
2 A	Oh no!	
В	What's the?	
A	There's somethingwith my	
	computer. I can't the Internet,	
	so I can't send my emails.	
В	Turn everything off and try	
	That sometimes,	
3 A	Excuse me! This ticket machine	
	Did you the green button?	
A	Oh! No, I didn't.	
F	Ah, well. Here's your	
	Thank you very much.	
4	Come on! It's time to go to the airport.	
1	But I my passport! I can't find	
	it anywhere!	
	You it in your bag.	
76	B Did I? Oh, yes it is! Phew!	
5	A Are you?	
	B Yes, I think so.	
	A Does your arm hurt?	
	B It hurts, but I think it's OK.	
6	A I'm so sorry	
·	B It's OK. The film in 15 minutes	s.
	A I missed the	
	B I told you, it doesn't Come on	1
	D I told Joseph	
	Let's go.	

class.

3



## Please and thank you

I'd like = some/any • In a restaurant • Signs all around

#### STARTER

1 Match the activities and the places. What can you do where?

Activities	Places
<ul> <li>1 9 buy newspapers and magazines</li> <li>2 buy bread, milk, fruit, and meat</li> <li>3 change your money</li> <li>4 buy stamps and send a parcel</li> <li>5 buy a dictionary</li> <li>6 get an espresso</li> <li>7 buy shampoo and conditioner</li> </ul>	a post office b bookshop c bank d chemist's e supermarket f coffee shop g newsagent's

2 Make sentences with You can . . . You can buy newspapers and magazines in a newsagent's.

Tizii Listen and check.

#### SAYING WHAT YOU WANT

I'd like . . . , some and any

1 11222 Listen to Adam and complete the conversations. Where is he?

1	A	Good I'd like some chicken, please.	
	B	How much would you like?	
	A	slices.	
	B	Would you like anything else?	V
	A	Yes, I'd like some cheeseyou any Emmental?	-
	B	I'm afraid we have any Emmental. What about mozza	rella

A No, thank you. Just the chicken, then. \_\_\_\_ much is that?

?	C	Can I help you?
	A	Yes, please, I' like some shampoo.
		We have lots. Would you it for dry or normal hair
		Dry, I think.
	C	OK. Try this oneelse?
		Er – oh yeah. I don't have conditioner.
		I'd like conditioner for dry hair, please.
(		Yes, of course. That's £6.90, please.

**T12.2.** Listen again and check. Practise the conversations.



88 Unit 12 • Please and thank you

# CRAMMAR SPOT I'd like ... is more polite than I want ... I'd like some chicken, please. We offer things with Would you like ...? Would you like anything else? some and any We use some in positive sentences. I'd like some cheese. We use any with questions and negatives. Do you have any mozzarella? We don't have any mozzarella. Grammar Reference 12.1–12.2 p128

2 T12.3 Listen to two more conversations with Adam.

	Conversation 1	Conversation 2
Where is he?		
What does he want?		
What are his words?	I'd like	

3 Adam has a visitor. Complete their conversations.

- 1 A What would \_you\_\_\_\_ to drink?
  - V A juice. I'\_\_\_\_\_an apple juice, please.
  - A Er ... I have \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice, but I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ apple juice.
  - V Don't worry. Orange juice is fine.Thanks.
- 2 A \_\_\_\_\_you \_\_\_\_\_ something to eat?
  - V Yeah, OK. A sandwich. A cheese sandwich?
  - A Er ... I don't have \_\_\_\_\_cheese. Sorry.

    I have \_\_\_\_chicken. \_\_\_you \_\_\_
    a chicken sandwich?
  - V I don't like chicken.
  - A \_\_\_\_\_\_\_some cake, then?
  - V Yes, please. I'd love \_\_\_\_\_.

T12.4 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

#### Roleplay

- 4 You have a friend at your house. Make him or her feel at home! Offer some of these things.
  - a cold drink a coffee something to eat
  - a glass of fruit juice
- some ice-cream

Would you like a cold drink?

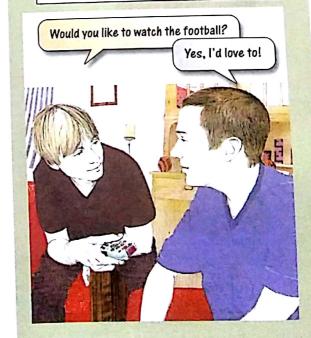
Yes, please.

What would you like?

An orange juice, please.



- watch the football listen to the radio
- watch TV see the garden
- play some computer games



Unit 12 • Please and thank you

#### PRACTICE

#### It's my birthday!

- 1 Listen to the conversation. What does the woman want to do? Why is the other woman not happy?
- 2 Read and complete the conversation with words from the box.

would you like I'd like I'd like to (x3) some A Hey, isn't it your birthday soon? B Yeah, next week on the 15th. A So, what \_\_\_\_\_ for your birthday? B I don't know. I don't need anything. \_\_buy you something.

B That's kind, but I think \_\_\_\_\_ \_ forget my birthday this year.

A What? You don't want any presents! Why not?

B Well, I'm 30 next week, and that feels old.

A Thirty isn't old. Come on! \_\_\_\_\_ take you out for a meal with \_\_\_\_\_ friends. You can choose the restaurant.

B OK, then. Thank you. \_\_\_\_\_ that. Just don't tell anyone it's my birthday.

A Oh, that's silly!

T12.5 Listen again and check. Practise the conversation.

#### Birthday wishes

3 T12.6 Listen to three people. It's their birthday soon. Complete th

What would they	like for a present?	like to do in the evening?
Kelly		
25		
Mike		
Jade		
hen do you receive pr	esents? Aplana 1	

When do you receive presents? Ask and answer questions about what you'd like.

you like?

I'd like an iPod, and some new clothes, ...

How about you? What would you like?

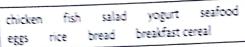
90 Unit 12 • Please and thank you

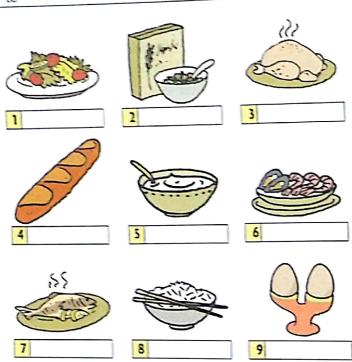
#### like and would like Listening and pronunciation 1 What's the difference between these sentences? 4 T12.8 Listen to the conversations. Tick (✓) the sentences you hear. I like fruit juice. Read and listen to the two conversations. 1 ✓ Would you like a coffee? Which conversation is about what you like day Do you like coffee? Willer day? Which is about what you want to do soon? I like watching films. A What do you like doing in your free time? I'd like to watch a film. B I like going to the mall, and I like playing We like flats with big bedrooms. We'd like a flat with two bedrooms. computer games. A Do you like playing . . .? What would you like to do? What do you like doing? 2 C What would you like to do this weekend? I like new clothes. D I'd like to go out. What about you? I'd like some new clothes. C Great! Would you like to go to the mall? Look at T12.8 on p121 and practise the conversations. D I'd love to! Check it Practise the conversations with a partner. 5 Tick (✓) the correct sentence. 1 Ilike leave early today. **GRAMMAR SPOT** l'd like to leave early today. 1 Like refers to always. 2 Do you like your job? I like tea. I like going to the mall. ☐ Would you like your job? 2 'd like refers to now or soon. 3 Would you like tea or coffee? I'd like a cup of tea, please. ☐ You like tea or coffee? I'd like to go to the mall today. 4 l'd like any tea, please. ▶▶ Grammar Reference 12.3 p128 ☐ I'd like some tea, please. 5 They like something to eat. Talking about you They'd like something to eat. 3 Work with a partner. Make conversations. 6 I don't have any money. What do you like doing in your free time? I don't have some money. I like ... and I like ... What about you? What would you like to do this weekend? Well, I'd like to . . . What about you? play computer games eat in a restaurant watch football see a film go fishing go shopping sleep a lot

#### READING AND SPEAKING

You are what you eat

Match the food and the pictures.





2 Work in three groups.

Group A Read about MASUMI TAKAHASHI.

Group B Read about CAROLINE WELTY.

Group C Read about FAHD AL QAHTANI.

Answer the questions.

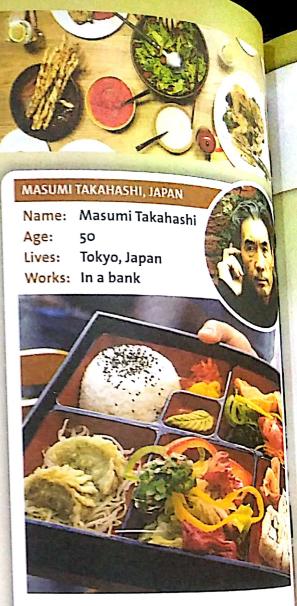
- 1 Which food in exercise 1 does he/she eat?
- 2 What does he/she have for breakfast, lunch, and dinner?
- 3 What time does he/she eat?
- 4 What does he/she like doing? When? Where?
- 5 What would he/she like to do?
- 6 Does he/she do any exercise?
- 3 Find a student from the other two groups. Compare and swap information.

#### What do you think?

- Do all three people have a good diet? Do they eat a lot?
- What do you eat in a day? When?
- Would you like the food they eat in Japan/New York/Saudi Arabia?
- What suggestions can you make for a good diet?

Eat lots of fruit. Don't have too much sugar.

92 Unit 12 • Please and thank you



In Japan we eat rice at every meal.

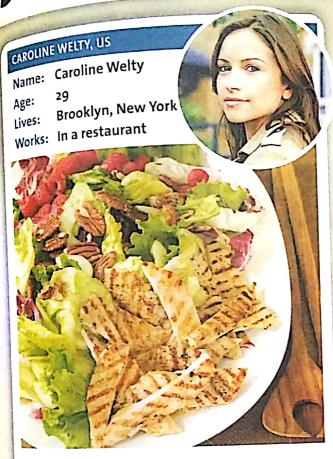
For breakfast, we have rice, fish, and soup.

At 12.00 I have *bento*, which is a lunch box. My wife makes this for me every day. There are small dishes of rice, fish, vegetables, eggs, and sometimes meat.

In the evening, we have more fish, maybe with beans. I'd like to eat with my children but I don't get home till 9.00.

At the weekend, we like doing things together. We go for walks, and have dinner. We eat lots of small dishes. We don't put a lot of food on our plate, so we don't eat too much.

## what's on three people from different parts of the world describe what they eat each day.



leat little and early. I have toast and cereal for breakfast, and salad for lunch at about 11.30. For dinner I usually eat chicken, fish or seafood. If I have a snack between meals, it's always fruit.

I ride my bike to work across Brooklyn Bridge, and run 10 kilometres a day. I'd like to run the New York Marathon this year. I'm a waitress, so I'm on my feet all day.

Too many people in this country don't eat right. They say they don't have time to buy food and cook, so they snack all the time.

At home I like cooking for friends. For me the dinner table is the centre of the home.

#### **FAHD AL QAHTANI, SAUDI ARABIA**

Name: Fahd Al Qahtani

Age:

Lives: Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

Works: In a hospital



For breakfast I have bread with cheese, eggs, yogurt and tea. Lunch is at 2.30. It is usually a big meal, with lots of different dishes. Perhaps some chicken or fish with rice – 'kabsa' – vegetables, hummus and tomato sauce. We drink fruit juice or water with the meal.

We have dinner at 8. Traditionally the evening meal was much smaller than lunch, but now it is the big meal of the day. Of course during Ramadan we eat just two meals, one before dawn, and one after sunset.

I'd like to eat out more often but I don't have time. I live near the hospital so I like walking to work. It's my only exercise!

## VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

In a restaurant

1 Read the menu. What do you like on the menu? What don't you like? Tell a partner.



2 112.9 Listen to Liam and Maddy ordering a meal in the CAFÉ FRESCO.

Who says these things? Write L (Liam), M (Maddy), or W (Waiter).

- W Are you ready to order?
- \_\_\_\_ Well, I am. Are you ready, Maddy?
- Yes, I am. What's the soup of the day?
- \_\_\_\_ French onion soup.
- Lovely. I'd like the French onion soup to start, please.
- \_\_\_\_ And to follow?
- \_\_\_\_ I'd like the salmon salad with some chips on the side.
- Thank you. And you, sir? What would you like?
- Er I'd like the tomato and mozzarella salad, followed by the burger and chips.
- Would you like any side orders?
- \_\_\_\_ No, thank you. Just the burger.
- \_\_\_ And to drink?
- Sparkling water for me, please. What about you, Liam?
- The same for me. We'd like a bottle of sparkling water, please.
- Fine. I'll bring the drinks immediately.
- 3 Practise the conversation in groups of three.

#### Roleplay

- 4 Work in groups of three. Roleplay being customers and waiters in a restaurant.
- 94 Unit 12 Please and thank you



EVERYDAY ENGLISH signs all around 1 Look at the signs. Where can you see them?



#### 1 Which sign means ...?

- 1 f You can go in here.
- 2\_ You can go out here.
- 3\_ You can't sit here.
- <sup>4</sup>\_ You can't smoke here.
- 6 \_\_ Push this door to open it.
- 7 \_\_ Pull this door to open it.
- 8 \_\_\_ Men can go to the toilet here.
- 9 \_\_\_ You can go up or down floors here. 14 \_\_\_ / \_\_\_ You can't go in here.
- 5 This machine doesn't work. 10 Women can go to the toilet here.
- 11 \_\_\_ You can buy something cheap here.
- 12 \_\_\_ Stand and wait here.
- 13 \_\_\_ Not open.

Listen to the lines of conversation. Which sign do they go with?

1 \_ 2 \_ 3 \_ 4 \_ 5 \_ 6 \_ 7 \_ 8 \_

4 Work with a partner. Write a conversation that goes with a sign. Act it to the class. Can they identify the correct sign?



## Here and now

Colours and clothes • Present Continuous • Opposite verbs • What's the matter?

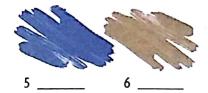
#### STARTER

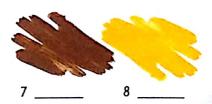
1 What are the colours? Write the colours from the box.

blue	<del>red</del>	green
black	white	yellow
brown	grey	









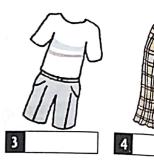
What is your favourite colour? Tell the class.

2 What are the clothes? Write words from the box.

a <mark>jac</mark> ket <mark>train</mark> ers	shoes and socks a shirt and tie		boots a <b>T</b> -shirt and shorts
			2) John S

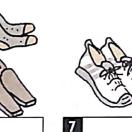




















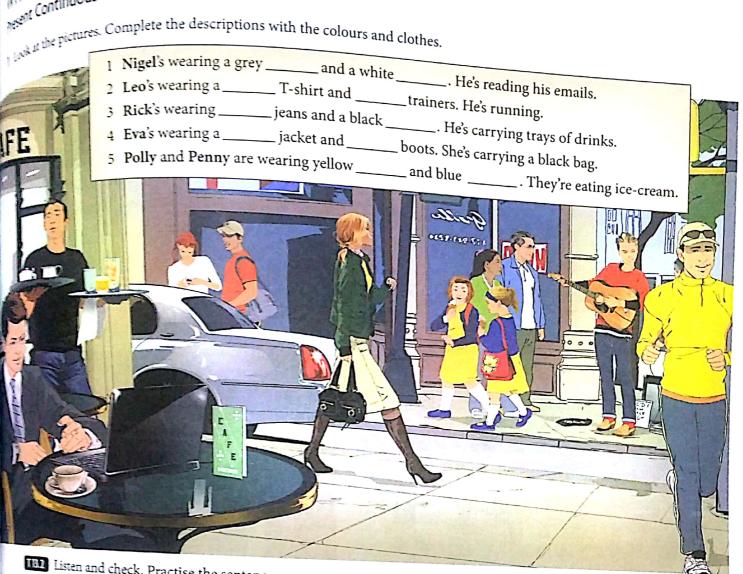


Listen and repeat.

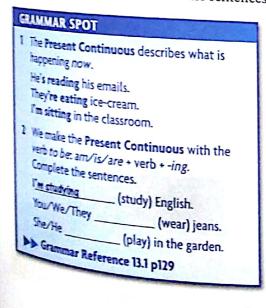
3 What clothes can you see in the classroom? What colour are they? Lillian's skirt is black. Roberto's shirt is blue.

## MAT ARE THEY WEARING?

Accept Continuous



Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

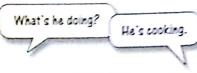


2 Work with a partner. Describe someone in the room. Who is it? He's wearing a white shirt, blue jeans. He's sitting next to me. It's Ali! 3 I'm wearing blue jeans and a black T-shirt. 4 TIBB Listen and repeat the questions. What's he wearing? What's she doing? What are they doing? Ask and answer the questions about the pictures with a partner. What's Nigel wearing? A grey suit and . . What's he doing? He's .. Unit 13 • Here and now

#### PRACTICE

#### Asking questions

Work with a partner. What are the people doing?
 Ask and answer questions.















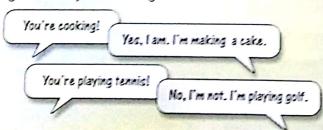






TIBA Listen and check. What extra information do you hear?

2 Mime actions to your partner. Can your partner guess what you are doing?



98 Unit 13 · Here and now

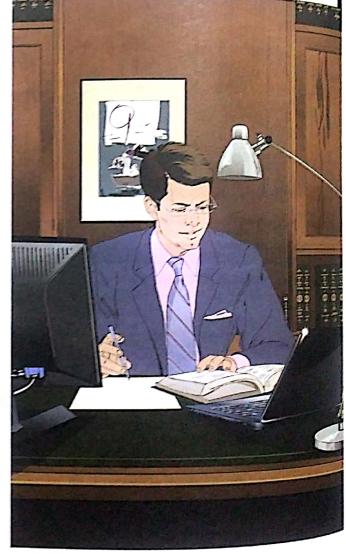
## HE'S ON HOLIDAY AT THE MOMENT

Read about Nigel. Complete the text with the verbs
 in the box.

80	has	440145	reads
wears	arrives	feels	. 2003

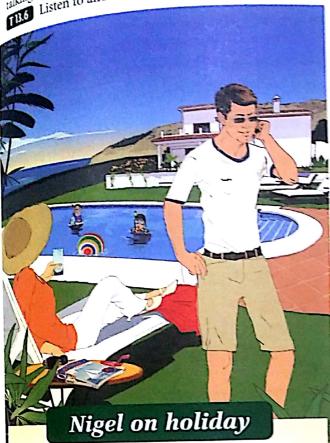
#### Nigel at work

Nigel is a businessman. He (1) works from 9.00 to 5.30 every day. He always (2) \_\_\_\_\_a suit and tie for work. He usually (3) \_\_\_\_\_lunch at his desk at 1.00. He (4) \_\_\_\_\_home at about 7.00 every evening and he (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to his children before they (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to bed. He often (7) \_\_\_\_\_ very tired at the end of the day.



Tibs Listen and check.

1 Nigel and his family are on holiday in Spain. Nigel is 1 Nigel and his boss, Bill, on his mobile phone Nigel and ms many in opain. Nigel with his boss, Bill, on his mobile phone. Listen to and read the conversation.



Nigel Hello.

Bill Nigel, it's Bill, sorry to call you about work.

- N Oh, hi Bill! That's OK.
- B First things first, are you having a good time?
- N Yes, we are. We're having a great time.
- B Are you staying in a hotel?
- N No, we're not. We're staying in a house with a swimming pool near the beach.
- B Wonderful. And your family? Are they enjoying it?
- N Oh, yes. The kids are swimming in the pool right now. Can you hear them?
- B I can. And are you and your wife relaxing?
- N We are. We're sitting by the pool. Karen's drinking lemonade, and I'm reading a lot. And I'm not wearing a suit and tie, just shorts and a T-shirt.
- B You're lucky. It's raining again here. Now, I'm calling about work ...
- N OK Bill, what's the problem?
- B Well ...

#### **GRAMMAR SPOT**

Read the sentences.

He wears a suit for work. He's wearing a T shirt.

Which sentence is about now? Which is true day after day but not now?

Grammar Reference 13.2 p129

3 How many true sentences can you make about Nigel's holiday? Compare with your partner.

Nigel		enjoying the holiday.
Karen	ÌS	talking to Bill. calling Nigel.
Bill	isn't	staying in a hotel.
The children	are	wearing a suit.
lt	aren't	raining in Spain. swimming in the pool.
They		relaxing.

- 4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions about Nigel's holiday.
  - 1 Are they . . . a good time?

Are they having a good time!

Yes, they are.

- 2 Where . . . staying?
- 3 What...the children doing?
- 4 What . . . Karen doing?
- 5 What ... Nigel doing?
- 6 Is he ... a suit?
- 7 Why ... Bill calling?

TB7 Listen and check.

5 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

1	Nigel lives	_ (live) in a house in London, bu
	now he 's staying	(stay) in a house by the sea.

,	He usually	(wear) a suit, but today
_		r) shorts.

2	He never	(relax) at work, but now
-	110 110	( . L ) by the pool
	he	(relax) by the pool.

4	Karen	(work) in a shop, but today
•	rui =	(enjoy) her holiday.
	she	(enjoy) her nonday.

=	The children	(work) hard at school
3		(swim) in the pool.
	but today they	

6	It often_	(rain) in England and
O		(rain) there now.
	it	(rain) there have

## PRACTICE

## Questions and answers

- Make the questions.
  - 1 you/wear/a new jumper? Are you wearing a new jumper?
  - 2 we/learn/Chinese?
  - 3 we/sit/in a classroom?
  - 4 you/listen/to the teacher?
  - 5 the teacher/wear/blue trousers?
  - 6 all the students/speak/English?
  - 7 you/learn/a lot of English?
  - 8 it/rain today?

Stand up. Ask and answer the questions.

Are you wearing a new jumper?

No, I'm not. It's really old.

## A photo of you

- 2 Bring a photograph of you to class. Say ...
  - where you are.
  - what you're doing.
  - · who you're with.
  - · what you're wearing.

#### Check it

- 3 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.
  - 1 I'm wear a blue shirt today.
    - ☐ I'm wearing a blue shirt today.
  - 2 Where are you going?
    - ☐ Where you going?
  - 3 Peter no working this week.
    - Peter isn't working this week.
  - 4 That's Nabil over there. He talks to the teacher.
    - ☐ That's Nabil over there. He's talking to the teacher.
  - 5 Heidi is German. She comes from Berlin.
    - Heidi is German. She's coming from Berlin.
  - 6 Why aren't you having a coffee?
    - ☐ Why you no having a coffee?

100 Unit 13 • Here and now

# READING AND LISTENING

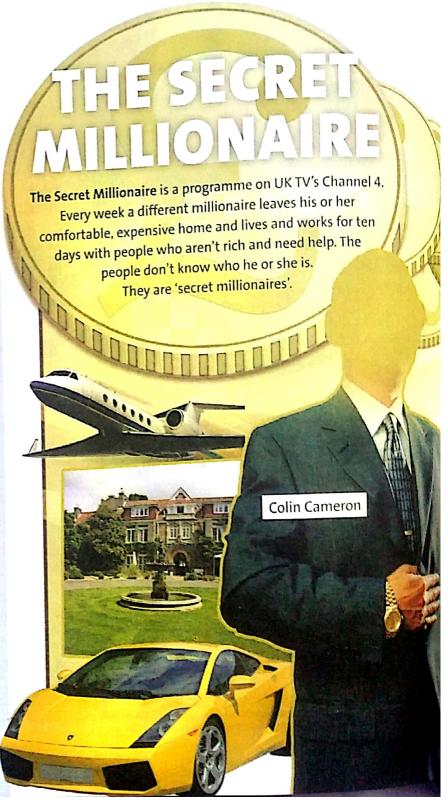
## This week is different

1 How do very rich people spend their time and money? What don't they do? Compare ideas with the class.

They often have very big, expensive cars.

They don't travel by public transport.

2 Read the introduction to the TV programme *The Secret Millionaire*. What do the millionaires do in the programme? Why are they called *secret millionaires*?



he start his business.

he start his business? Where he live?

3 Does he \_\_\_\_\_ any children?

he a lucky man?

5 Who does he \_\_\_\_\_\_to help?

Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.

4 Read This week is different. Are the sentences true () or false (X)? Correct the false ones.

Colin went to Manchester by bus.

He's staying in a flat in the centre of the city.

3 He isn't sleeping in a bedroom.

4 The hostel is for homeless girls.

5 He's helping the boys to read and write.

6 They don't think that he is a good teacher.

7 Colin isn't enjoying the work at all.

8 He wants to give Roger and Margaret a lot of money.

## Listening

5 T13.8 Listen to four conversations with Colin. Complete the chart.

	Who's he talking to?	What's he talking about?
1		THIRE S HE CAIKING ADOUG!
2		
3		
4		

## What do you think?

Discuss the questions.

- How is Colin a typical millionaire? How is he not?
- Why would Colin like his sons to meet the boys?
- Do you think the TV programme is a good idea?

Colin Cameron is this week's millionaire. He started his business 25 years ago when he was 19. He's now worth £60 million and lives with his wife and two teenage sons in a beautiful, big country house. He also has a house in Paris, and apartments in London and New York. He drives a yellow Lamborghini and even has a private plane. He says:

"lam a very lucky man. Now I want to help people who are not as lucky as I am, especially young people."



Colin left his family last weekend and went by train to Manchester. He is now living in Moss Side, a poor area of the city. He is staying with a married couple, Roger and Margaret Watson. They think he is looking for work in Manchester.

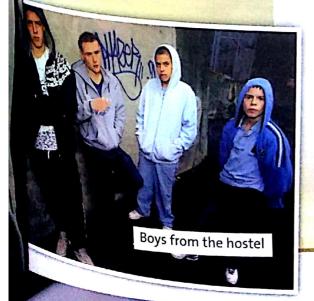


Roger and Margaret live in a small flat on the 8th floor of an apartment block. They only have one bedroom so Colin is sleeping on the sofa in the living room. They run a hostel for homeless teenage boys.

This week Colin is working with the boys in the hostel, an old, grey building in a busy road. Some of the boys can't read and write very well and he is helping them learn so that they can find jobs.

Roger, Margaret and the boys like Colin. They think that he is a good teacher. They have no idea he is a millionaire. Colin says:

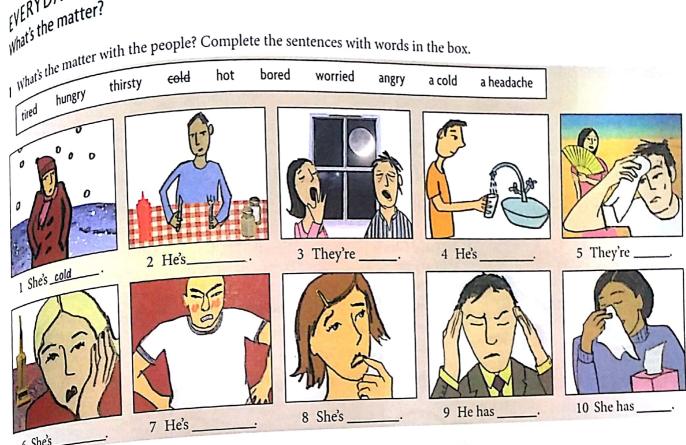
"I'm missing my family a lot but Roger and Margaret are wonderful people. I'm enjoying my time with them very much. I'm learning a lot about life. At the end of the week I want to give them £100,000 to build a new hostel. I'd like to bring my sons here to meet them all."



# VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

	he verbs. They are verbs with opposite means answering them.	uning.
1 leave arrive       5 love         2 work       6 open         3 buy       7 turn on         4 walk       8 start	9 get up 10 remember 11 put on 12 win ntences with the opposite verb in the correc	play sell hate turn off <del>arrive</del> finish forget take off go to bed lose run close t form.
	Please, don't ask me any more questions. I can't them.  I'm selling my old car and I'm a new one.	FOR SALE
	3 We always get up at seven in the morning and at eleven at night.  4 It was cold, so Tom took off his T-shirt and a warm jumper.	
	5 I usually walk to school, but yesterday I was late so I all the way.	Y ,
	7 Don't turn off the TV, I'm watching it! Pleaseit again!	es.
4 T13.10 Listen. Write down the opposition of the large script on p122. Practical Unit 13 • Here and now	3, 4	5,6,

# EVERYDAY ENGLISH What's the matter?

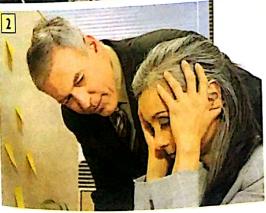


TB:II Listen and repeat.

1 Complete the conversations with words from exercise 1.



- A What's the matter?
- B I'm \_\_\_\_\_and\_
- A Why don't you have a cup of tea?
- B That's a good idea.
- A Sit down. I'll make it for you.



- C What's the matter?
- D I have a bad \_\_
- C Oh dear! Why don't you take some aspirin?
- D I don't have any.
- C It's OK. I have some.

### Roleplay

- 3 Have similar conversations. Use the words from exercise 1 and these ideas.
  - go to bed early
  - put on a jumper
  - have a sandwich
  - have a cold drink
  - talk to a friend
  - watch a DVD
  - sit down and relax
  - go to the mall
  - have a cold shower

TB.D Listen and check. Practise the conversations with a partner.

103



# It's time to go!

Future plans • Grammar revision
Vocabulary revision • Social expressions (2)

#### STARTER

1 Write the form of transport.





\_\_\_\_\_2





3 \_\_\_\_\_





5\_\_\_\_\_6\_\_\_





7\_\_\_\_\_8\_

2 How do you travel? Where to?

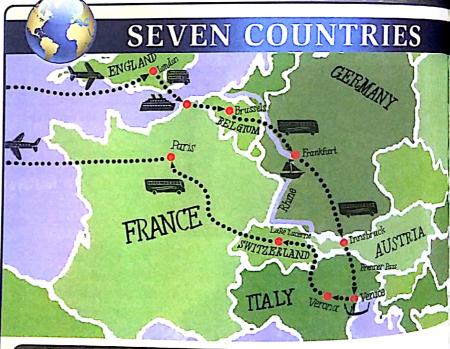
I usually come to school by bus, but today I came by car.

Sometimes I travel by . . .

104 Unit 14 • It's time to go!

# SEVEN COUNTRIES IN SEVEN DAYS! Future plans

- 1 Bill and Gloria Bigelow are from the US. Next week they are going on holiday to Europe. Look at the map and answer the questions.
  - 1 Which seven countries are they going to visit?
  - 2 Where does the holiday begin? Where does it end?
  - 3 How are they travelling?
- 2 Read the holiday information and check your answers.



## HOLIDAY INFORMATION

- SUNDAY COLUMBUS AIRPORT, OHIO, US LONDON ENGLAND Fly overnight to London.
- 2 MONDAY LONDON, ENGLAND

Check into hotel. Bus tour of London, visit Buckingham Palace, the Houses of Parliament, the Tower of London. See the city from the London Eye.

IN

Early mother through the River By coac Overnige 5 THU South through Piazza 5

🜀 FRIC

the St.

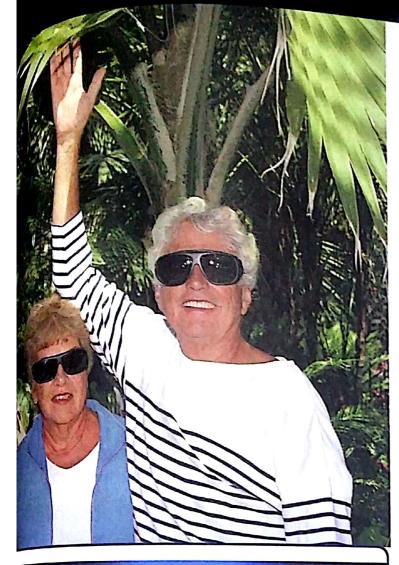
Overnig **7**2 SAT

The audinner

NUS 📵

Mornir and the

Columi



# IN SEVEN DAYS

- 3 TUESDAY LONDON BELGIUM FRANKFURT, GERMANY Early morning start. Ferry across the English Channel and coach through Belgium and into Germany. Evening boat cruise on the River Rhine. Overnight in Frankfurt.
- 🚯 WEDNESDAY FRANKFURT INNSBRUCK, AUSTRIA By coach down through Germany to the Alps and Austria. Overnight in Innsbruck.
- 5 THURSDAY INNSBRUCK BRENNER PASS VENICE, ITALY South to Italy. Drive over the fantastic 'Europa Bridge' and drive through the Brenner Pass to Venice. Boat ride along the Canals to Piazza San Marco. Overnight in Venice.
- 6 FRIDAY VENICE LAKE LUCERNE, SWITZERLAND Stop in Verona to see Romeo and Juliet's balcony. Drive through the St. Gotthard Tunnel to Switzerland and beautiful Lake Lucerne. Overnight at Lake Lucerne.
- SATURDAY LAKE LUCERNE PARIS, FRANCE The autoroute into France and through countryside to Paris. Have dinner in the evening in a Left Bank bistro. Overnight in Paris.
- SUNDAY PARIS COLUMBUS AIRPORT, OHIO, US Morning sightseeing in Paris, the Eiffel Tower, the Arc de Triomphe and the Louvre to see the Mona Lisa. Overnight flight back to Columbus, US.

## **GRAMMAR SPOT**

Here are two ways of talking about future plans.

1 Present Continuous

They're flying to Europe tomorrow/next week. We're leaving on Sunday/at six o'clock.

2 going to

They're going to have a bus tour of London. We're going to stop in Verona.

- ►► Grammar Reference 14.1 p129
- 3 Read the holiday information again carefully. Complete the sentences.

1 On Sunday they're flying to \_\_\_

2 On Monday they're going to have a \_\_\_\_\_tour of London.

3 On Tuesday they're travelling through \_\_\_\_\_ and into \_\_\_\_\_.

4 On Wednesday they're going to drive down to the Alps and

5 On Thursday they're going to \_\_\_\_\_ over the Europa Bridge.

6 On Friday they're going to \_\_\_\_\_\_ in Verona. They're \_\_\_\_\_ to see Juliet's balcony.

7 On Saturday evening they're \_\_\_\_\_ dinner in a bistro in Paris.

8 On Sunday morning they're \_\_\_\_\_ to the Louvre to see the Mona Lisa. In the evening they're \_\_\_\_\_ back to the US.

T141 Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

#### Questions

4 114.2 Listen and repeat the questions.

What are they doing on Sunday? What are they going to do on Monday?

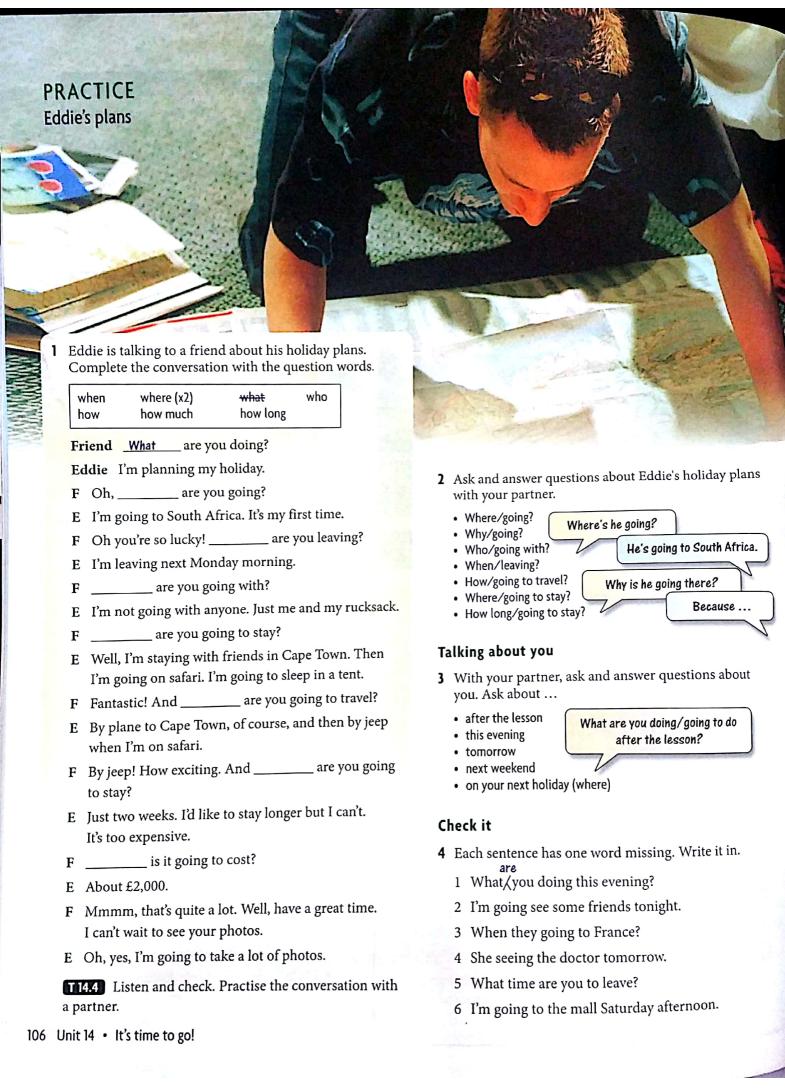


Complete the questions about Bill and Gloria.

- 1 What/doing/Tuesday?
- 2 What/going to do/Wednesday?
- 3 When/going to drive/the Europa Bridge?
- 4 What/going to do/Verona?
- 5 Where/having dinner/Saturday?
- 6 When/going to the Louvre?
- 7 When/flying back/the US?

T14.3 Listen and check. Ask and answer the questions with your partner.

Unit 14 • It's time to go!



# VOCABULARY REVISION Words that go together

1	В
travel ride drive go work have take	hard a photograph by train dinner with friends a bike sightseeing carefully
do	a suit
pay	your homework bills on the Internet
wear	bills of the internet

Work with a partner. Talk about your plans

I'm going to travel by train next Saturday.

1 Draw a line between words that have a connection.

station	journali	st airport
shampoo \	•	spital
newspaper	train	swimming
waiter	kitchen	menu
fridge	nurse	2
beach c	hemist's	planes

Explain the connection. Trains travel between stations.

# 1 Match a verb in A with words in B.

<del>pilot</del>	<del>hotel</del>	women	married	
enjoy	shampoo	chocolate	arrive	

0.	•0		
pilot	hotel		

Listen and check.

4 Write the words in the correct box.

### Three syllables

Pronunciation

Two syllables

<del>photograph</del> designer interesting understand		vegetable souvenir	magazine
---	--	-----------------------	----------

0	 •••
photograph	

T14.6 Listen and check.

5 T14.7 Listen and <u>underline</u> the two words that rhyme.

1 some	home	<u>come</u>
2 goes	knows	does
3 were	here	her
4 make	steak	speak
5 near	wear	there
6 eat	great	wait

OF HOME WELL IN THE ME ME WIND WIND WIND

T14.7 Listen again and check.

3	Three
	Three words belong to a group and one is different.  Underline the one that is different.  When the different will be different.
	<u>Underline</u> the one that is different. Why is it different?
	1 train

· uain	bus	haidaa	motorbike
<sup>2</sup> wife		<u>bridge</u>	
3 lovely	waiter	aunt	grandfathe
4 trainers	fantastic	amazing	awful
5 desk	trousers	socks	boots
6 doctor	armchair	sofa	laptop
10000	journalist	cooker	painter

Unit 14 • It's time to go!

## READING AND SPEAKING Life's big events

1 Put these life events into an order.

	went	to	school

\_1 ... was born ...

\_\_ ... got married

\_\_ ... grew up ...

\_\_ ... studied at university

... met a husband/wife

2 Look at the pictures of the people.

T14.8 Listen to Milena Dušek, Georg Reinhardt, and Archie McCrae talk about their lives. Who talks about ...?

- his/her parents
- · his/her husband/wife
- his/her studies
- where he/she lives

What do they say?

3 Work in three groups.

Read about Milena Dušek. Group A

Read about Georg Reinhardt. Group B

Read about Archie McCrae. Group C

Read your text quickly. Find one piece of information about his/her past, present, and future. Compare your ideas in your group.

- 4 Read your text again and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where ... born?
  - 2 Where ... live? Who ... with?
  - 3 Where ... grow up?
  - 4 What ... parents do? What ... wife do?
  - 5 Where ... go to school?
  - 6 What ... studying at school/university?
  - 7 When ... going abroad?
  - 8 What ... going to do there?
  - 9 How does ... feel about going?

Find a student from the other two groups. Compare and swap information.

# Past, Present, Three people talk about their family. Milena Dušek **Georg Reinhardt Archie McCrae**

# and Future

education, work, and ambitions.

Mena Dušek is Czech. She was born in Prague, where she still lives with worther, father and two sisters. She's 18, and she goes to an international she is studying English, psychology, and economics.

Whather is a journalist, and works for a newspaper called Blesk. My mother sets as a chef in a restaurant in the Old Town.

when wants to work in banking. She's going to study business when she's det, so it's important that she speaks very good English. Next summer she's ping to London for two months to study at a language school. She's going to say with an English family, and she's going to learn English for five hours a day.

She's excited about going to London, but a little bit worried, too. 'I hope the family are nice, and I hope I like English food!' she says.

Georg Reinhardt is an architect. He's married, and he lives with his wife, Karlotta, and three children, in Berlin. Karlotta is a housewife, and their three children go to a local school.

Twasborn in Frankfurt, where I grew up and went to school. I studied architecture at the University of Munich. I met Karlotta at university. She was a student of modern languages. We moved to Berlin in 1995.

Georg also teaches architecture. Next year he is moving to America, to leach at the University of California in Berkeley for three years. His family is going with him. They're going to live on the university campus, where there is a school for the children. His wife is going to teach German.

They're all very excited about the trip. 'The kids are learning English.

They want to see the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco,' says Georg.

My wife and I are looking forward to living in sunshine all year round.'

Archie McCrae is Scottish. He was born in Glasgow, where he grew up with his parents and his brother and sister. His father is a doctor and his mother works for the research company, Bayer.

Went to Drumchapel High School. I studied biology, chemistry, and physics. At school I met Fiona, and we got married when we were 22. We studied medicine together at the same university, and now we live in Edinburgh.

New y want to work in developing countries. Next week they're going to Zambia, in southern Africa, for a year, to work in a hospital in the east of the country. How do the country and nurses in villages near the hospital.

Archie 'Zambia is a beautiful country, but very poor. The people are wonderful.

Archie 'Can help them.'

#### Talking about you

**5** When we meet someone for the first time, we sometimes say a little bit about ourselves.

l was born in ... I go to school in ...

Find the expressions in the box in the texts about Milena, Georg, and Archie. <u>Underline</u> them.

was born grew up live with going to hope work as/for studying/studied excited about

- **6** Use the expressions in exercise 5 to write sentences about you.
- 7 Work with a partner. Imagine you are meeting for the first time.

Tell him/her about yourself.

Ask questions to learn more about him/her.



Unit 14 • It's time to go!

109

#### GRAMMAR REVISION

#### **Tenses**

- 1 Complete the sentences about Archie McCrae from p109 with the verbs in the correct tense.
  - 1 Archie and Fiona <u>live</u> (live) in Edinburgh.
  - 2 Archie \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a brother and a sister.
  - 3 His mother \_\_\_\_\_ (work) for a research company, Bayer.
  - 4 Archie \_\_\_\_\_ (grow up) in Glasgow.
  - 5 He \_\_\_\_\_ (study) medicine at university.
  - 6 He and Fiona \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to work in Zambia soon.

#### Questions

- 2 Complete the questions about Archie.
  - 1 Where do Archie and Fiona live? They live in Edinburgh.
  - 2 How many \_\_\_\_\_ Two, one brother and one sister.
  - A research company called 'Bayer'.
  - 4 Where did \_\_\_\_\_? In Glasgow.
  - 5 What\_ Medicine.
  - 6 Where are \_\_\_\_\_\_? Zambia.

#### Check it

- 3 Underline and correct the mistakes.

  - 1 He come from Qatar.
  - 2 I no want to go out.
  - 3 She has 18 years old.
  - 4 Where you live?
  - 5 I went in Algeria last year.
  - 6 He have a cat.
  - 7 I no can understand you.
  - 8 What did you last night?
- 9 I going see a film tonight.
- 10 What you do this weekend?

#### Sentence completion

- 4 Write the correct answer.
- 1 I have <u>some</u> homework to do this evening -b- some a any
  - 2 In our town \_\_\_\_\_ a big park.
    - a there's b it's
  - 3 Who is \_\_\_\_\_ man talking to John?

b that

- 4 I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ money. Sorry.
  - a any
- 5 Dave, \_\_\_\_\_ is my brother, Pete.
  - Pete, \_\_\_\_\_ is Dave.
  - b that
- 6 My brother Pete is \_\_\_\_\_ engineer.
- 7 My \_\_\_\_\_ name is Alice.
- b mother's a mothers
- 8 You speak \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a English very well b very well English
- 9 I have a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a car German
- **b** German car
- 10 I'm hungry. \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich.
  - b I like a I'd like



Listen and look at the pictures. Complete the conversations with the words in the boxes.



	best	later	luck
A	Good_		in the exam!
	I hope it	goes we	ell.

- B Thanks. I'll do my\_
- A See you \_\_\_\_\_. Bye!



matter	SO	worry
--------	----	-------

- 2 C Oh, no!
  - D Don't\_\_\_\_\_. It doesn't \_\_\_\_\_.
  - C I'm \_\_\_\_\_ sorry!



		weekend	Same	special
3	E	Have a go	ood	!

- F Thanks! \_\_\_\_\_\_to you! What are you doing? Anything \_\_\_\_\_?
- E We're going to a wedding.



phone 4 G Goodbye! Drive carefully!

H Thanks! I'll \_\_\_\_\_you when

G See you again \_\_\_\_\_!



to say present kind

for you. 5 I I have a\_

J For me? Why?

I It's just \_\_\_\_\_thank you.

That's so \_\_\_\_\_ of you!



everything Bye pleasure ! And thanks 6 K for \_\_\_\_\_!

L It was a \_\_\_\_\_. We enjoyed having you.

Listen again and check.

Work in pairs. Learn the conversations. Stand up! Act the conversations to the class.

Unit 14 • It's time to go! 1

# **Tapescripts**



#### UNIT 1

T1.1 T1.2 see p6

T13 T14 T15 see p7

T1.6 see p8

#### 77177

Wanthing and

- 1 A Hello. My name's Anna. What's your
  - B My name's Marie.
- A Max, this is Carla.
  - B Hi, Carla.
  - C Hello, Max. Nice to meet you.
- 3 A Hi, Eda. How are you?
  - B Fine, thanks, David. And you?
  - A Very well, thanks.

#### T1.8 Everyday English

- 1 A Good morning!
  - B Good morning! What a lovely day!
- 2 A Good afternoon!
  - B Hello. A cup of tea, please.
- 3 A Goodbye!
  - B Bye! See you later!
- 4 A Good night!
  - B Good night! Sleep well!

- A Good morning! How are you today?
- B Fine, thanks.
- 2 A Good afternoon!
  - B Good afternoon! A cup of coffee, please.
- 3 A Goodbye! Have a nice day!
  - B Thank you. And you. See you later.
- 4 A Good night! Sleep well.
  - B Thank you. And you.

#### Vocabulary

- 1 a book 2 a computer
- 7 a burger
- 3 a television
- 8 a sandwich
- 9 a camera
- 4 a phone
- 10 a photograph
- 5 a bus
- 6 a car
- 11 a bag 12 a house
- see p10
- TARE see pll

#### Plurals

- a five books
- b three cars
- c eight houses
- d seven cameras
- e nine photographs
- two sandwiches
- four computers
- h six buses
- i ten students

#### TAM see pl1

#### UNIT 2

## T2.1 T2.2 T2.3 see p12

## T2.4 Where's he from?

- 1 His name's Kevin. He's from the United
- 2 His name's László. He's from Hungary.
- 3 Her name's Karima. She's from Egypt.
- 4 Her name's Tatiana. She's from Russia.
- 5 Her name's Rosely. She's from Brazil.
- 6 His name's Simon. He's from England.
- His name's Yong. He's from China.
- 8 Her name's Hayley. She's from Australia.

#### T2.5 see p13

#### T 2.6 Cities and countries

Where's Barcelona? Where's Beijing? Where's Moscow?

It's in Spain. It's in China. It's in Russia.

Where's Cairo? Where's Los Angeles?

It's in Egypt. It's in the United States. It's in Brazil.

Where's São Paulo? Where's Sydney? Where's Damascus?

It's in Australia. It's in Syria.

Where's Budapest? Where's London?

It's in Hungary. It's in England.

#### T2.7 Questions and answers

- R = Rosely, B = Bruno
- R Hello, I'm Rosely. What's your name?
- B My name's Bruno.
- R Hello, Bruno. Where are you from?
- B I'm from Brazil. Where are you from?
- Oh, I'm from Brazil, too. I'm from São Paulo.
- B Really? I'm from São Paulo, too!
- R Oh, nice to meet you, Bruno.

#### T 2.8

- C Hello. I'm Claudia. I'm from Italy.
  - A Hello, Claudia. I'm Akemi from Japan.
- 2 C Hello. My name's Charles. What's your name?
  - Hi, Charles. I'm Bud. I'm from the United States. Where are you from?
  - C I'm from London, in England.
  - B Oh, right! I'm from Chicago.
- 3 L Hi! I'm Loretta. I'm from Sydney, Australia.
  - Hi, Loretta. I'm Jane. I'm from Australia,
  - Oh, wow! Are you from Sydney?
  - J No, I'm from Melbourne.

#### Questions and answers

- Where are you from? I'm from Japan.
- 2 What's her name? Her name's Tatiana.
- 3 What's his name? His name's Fadi.
- 4 Where's he from? He's from Amman.
- 5 What's this in English? It's a computer.

- 6 How are you? Fine, thanks.
- Where's Montreal? It's in Canada.

## T 2.10 see p16

# Where are they from?

- C = Claude, H = Holly
- 1 C Oh, no! Look at the weather! H Ugh! It's awful!
- 2 H Wow! Look at my burger! It's fantaget C My burger is really good, too!
- 3 C What's this building? H It's the Empire State Building! It's farture
- 4 C Wow! Look at Central Park! H It's beautiful!

#### T 2.12 see p17

#### **T 2.13** Numbers 21 – 30

twenty-one twenty-two twenty-three twenty-four twenty-five twenty-six twenty-seven twenty-eight twenty-nine thirty

#### T 2.14

1 12 2 16 3 9 4 17 5 23

#### T 2.15

- 1 This is little Becky. She's two.
- 2 Her name's Naomi. She's seven.
- He's Nathan. He's fifteen tomorrow.
- How old is she? She's 26.
- This is Jeremy. He's 29, nearly 30.

6 a shop assistant

7 a nurse

8 a student

9 a businessman

#### UNIT 3

#### T3.1 Jobs

- 1 a teacher
- 2 a doctor
- 3 a bus driver
- 4 a police officer
- 5 a builder

## T 3.2 T 3.3 see p18

#### T 3.4 Kiran Patel What's his surname?

- Patel. 2 What's his first name?
- Kiran. 3 Where's he from?
- England. What's his address? 29, Victoria Road, Birmingham
  - What's his phone number? 07700 955031
- 6 How old is he? He's twenty. 7 What's his job?
- He's a student. 8 Is he married? No, he isn't.

see p19

D&P = Donny & Paul,

brothers from Ireland) thers nom and the boys from the National

University?

p-all Yes, we are. Great! And are you Donny McNab? No. I'm not. I'm Paul McNab. This is

Donny. He's my brother. Ah, yes, sorry. Hi, Donny. You're a student from Scotland, right?

Well, yes, I am a student but I'm not from

Scotland. Oh, where are you from? P&D We're from here - Ireland.

Are the other boys from Ireland too? No, they aren't. They're all from different

Oh! Interesting! And are they all students? Yes, they are. We're all ...

Yeah, we're all students at the National University of Ireland, in Galway.

Interesting! Now, this walk is difficult. Twelve mountains or 'Bens' in three days! Are you worried?

Yes, it's very difficult, but we aren't worried!

OK boys! Nice to meet you. Good luck to you all!

All Thank you very much.

**BII** Questions and answers

I Are Paul and Donny brothers? Yes, they are.

2 Are they from Scotland? No, they aren't.

3 Are the other boys from Ireland? No, they aren't.

5 Is it a difficult walk? Yes, it is.

6 Are the boys worried? No, they aren't worried.

11.8

Tarek Elkushli l = Interviewer, T = Tarek I Good morning.

What's your name, please? I My name's Tarek Elkushli.

Thank you. And where are you from, Tarek? Im from Tripoli, in Libya.

Thank you. And your telephone number, 092 1844362

How old are you, Tarek? I I'm forty-two.

And ... what's your job? I'm a businessman.

And ... are you married? No, I'm not.

Thank you very much.  $^{G_{\text{race}}\,Ch_{\text{ou}}}$ 

I = Interviewer, G = Grace Good afternoon. Good afternoon.

What's your name, please?

G Grace, Grace Chou.

And where are you from?

From New York.

Ah! So you're from the United States.

G Yes, I am.

What's your phone number?

G 212 638-9475

Thank you. How old are you?

G I'm thirty-three.

What's your job, Miss Chou?

G I'm a shop assistant.

And are you married?

G Yes, I am.

I That's fine. Thank you very much.

The boys are on holiday. They aren't on holiday! They're on a charity walk!

2 They're in Scotland.

They aren't in Scotland! They're in Ireland! 3 Bo is from Australia.

He isn't from Australia! He's from Sweden! Keith's from Sweden.

He isn't from Sweden! He's from England! 5 They're on the phone to a friend.

They aren't on the phone to a friend! They're on the phone to a journalist!

They're very tired. They aren't tired! They're very happy and excited!

TRAO Interview on a mountain

I = Journalist, R = Ronan (Australian), B = Bo (Swedish), K = Keith (English), D&P = Donny & Paul, (brothers from Ireland)

Hi, guys, where are you?' Ţ

Hi, we're on Benbaun. It's beautiful! All

And how are you?

D&P We're all fine! It's fantastic here!'

Are you tired?'

D&P No, we aren't. We're very happy and excited?

Now, is this your first walk for charity?

Yeah. That's right.

All And what is the money for?

It's for children ...

R

Yes, it's for a children's charity. K

Great! And you're all at the same J university, is that right?

Yeah, the National University in Galway. p

Now, one by one. Ronan you're from J Australia.

Uh huh.

And how old are you, Ronan?

R

So Bo and Keith, how old are you? J

K We're both 19.

Yeah. That's right. В

OK. Now, Donny and Paul. You're brothers. J

D&P Yeah, we are. And you're from Scotland?

D&P No, no. We aren't from Scotland. We're from Ireland.

Ireland. Oh, yes. Sorry. How old are you both?

I'm 20.

And I'm 18.

Others Come on Paul and Donny. It's time to

Thanks very much guys! Good luck with the rest of the walk!

THANK YOU!

## TBIII Social expressions

1 A I'm sorry.

B That's OK.

2 C A coffee, please.

D That's £1.20

C Thanks very much.

3 E Excuse me! Where's the station?

F It's over there.

E Thanks a lot.

4 G Thank you very much. That's very kind.

H That's OK.

Quelle heure est-il?

J I'm sorry. I don't understand.

6 K Excuse me! Where's the town centre?

L I'm sorry. I don't know.



#### UNIT 4

T4.1 see p24

T 4.2

1 Is Annie married? Yes, she is.

Where's their house? It's in London.

3 What's Annie's job? She's a doctor.

Where's her hospital? In the centre of London.

What's Jim's job? He's a bank manager.

Are their children both at school? No. Emma's at school. Vince is at university.

T433 see p25

#### T 4.4

1 Annie is Jim's wife.

Jim is Annie's husband. Emma is Annie and Jim's daughter. 3

Vince is their son.

5 Annie is Vince's mother.

Jim is Emma's father.

Emma is Vince's sister.

8 Vince is Emma's brother.

9 Annie and Jim are Emma and Vince's parents.

10 Emma and Vince are Jim and Annie's children.

#### T4.5 The Taylor family

1 Come on, Emma! Time for school!

2 Mum! Where are my school books?

3 Bye, everybody! I'm off to work! Have a

Bye, Dad! See you this evening.

5 Good morning, Mrs Clark. How are you today?

#### T 4.6 Michela Sacchi from Chicago

Hi! My name's Michela Sacchi, and I'm from the United States. This is my family. Our house is in Chicago. This is my brother. His name is Massimo, and he's 19. He's a student in college. This is my mother. Her name's Maria. She's 47, and she's an Italian teacher. And this is my father Giovanni. He's 52, and he's a businessman.

#### T 4.7

- What's your name? My name's Annie.
- What are your names? Our names are Emma and Vince.
- 3 Jean-Paul and André are students. Their school is in Paris.
- 4 My sister's married. What's her husband's name?
- 5 My brother's office is in New York. What's his job?
- We're in our English class.
- Mum and Dad are in Rome. What's the name of their hotel?

#### T4.8 see p27

#### T4.9 Paddy's life

- 1 I have a small hotel in the city of Galway.
- My wife has a job in town.
- We have three sons.
- 4 We have an apartment in the hotel.
- 5 My sister has a big house in London.

#### T 4.10 Questions and answers

- 1 How's your daughter? She's very well, thank you.
- 2 What's your sister's job? She's a nurse.
- 3 How old are your children? They're ten and thirteen. 4 Who is Pedro?
- He's a student from Madrid.
- 5 Where's your office? It's in the centre of town.
- 6 What's your surname? Smith.

#### T4.11 Who is it?

- 1 Look at these shoes, Alison! They're fantastic!
- 2 My flat mate is from the north of England. 3 London's great! And my flat mate Valerie's
- 4 Our sister's at university.
- Yeah, she's at university in London. 5 I like my sister's flat mate, she's funny.
- 6 Our children's school is near our house.
- My bank is in the centre of Manchester. Come on, United! Come on! Yes! A goal! 4 - 1 to Man United!

### T 4.12 T 4.13 see p30

## T 4.14 How do you spell...?

1 What's your name? Annie Taylor. How do you spell your first name? A-N-N-I-E How do you spell your surname? T-A-Y-L-O-R

- 2 What's your name? Quentin Wrexham. How do you spell your first name? Q-U-E-N-T-I-N. How do you spell your surname? W-R-E-X-H-A-M.
- 3 What's your name? Takako Matsuda. How do you spell your first name? T-A-K-A-K-O. How do you spell your surname? M-A-T-S-U-D-A.

#### ti 415 see p30

#### T416 see p31

#### T447 Email addresses

- 1 A Your email address is?
- P pambowler@btinternet.com
  - A B-A ...
  - P No, Pam. P-A-M.
  - A Ah, OK. Pam,
  - P Bowler, B-O-W-L-E-R.
  - A Pam ... Bowler ... @
  - P @btinternet.com
  - A @btinternet.com
  - P That's it.
- 2 B Can you tell me your email address?
  - H Yes. harrylime@hotmail.co.uk
  - B harrylime ... All one word ...
  - H @hotmail ...
  - B @hotmail ...
  - H .co.uk
- B .co.uk. Great. Thanks.
- 3 C What's your email address?
  - paulmartin@wanadoo.fr
  - C paul ...
  - P martin, M-A-R-T-I-N.
  - C paulmartin ...
  - @wanadoo ...
  - C wanadoo ...
  - P .fr
  - C .fr. Got it.

#### UNIT 5

#### T 5.1

#### Sports

tennis football swimming skiing

Indian food Chinese food pizza burger oranges ice-cream

#### Drinks

tea coffee cola orange juice milk

## T 5.2 see p32

T 5.3 see p32

#### T 5.4 Harvey

What do I like? Well, I like sports a lot, but not be I like football - American football What do I need to the sports a lot, but for all sports. I like football - American football all skiing! But I doct that all sports. I have sainty and toolbal of course – and I like skiing! But I don't like swimming like of course - and the swimming very food and drink? What do the much. And food and drink? What do I like Well, I like burgers, and pizza. I like Indian Well, I like but not Chinese food, I don't like to and I don't like to Ton't like tood a lot. Due lot like tea, I uont like Chinese food, and I don't like tea. Tea is for the English. I'm American so I like coffee sometimes, and cola, of course. I love cola

#### T 5.5 see p33

## T 5.6 Harvey and Eva

I= Interviewer, H = Harvey,  $E = E_{Va}$ 

- I Harvey and Eva. You're twins. Do you like
- H Well, we really, really like pizza!
- Oh, yes! It's delicious! We have pizza a lot a home and in restaurants.
- So, do you like the same food?
- E Well, we both like ice-cream.
- H Mmm, it's fantastic!
- E But we really don't like tea! Do we, Harvey!
- H No, we don't. Ugh! It's awful!
- And do you both like sports?
- H Yes, we do. We like skiing.
- E Yeah! We like skiing a lot. It's really exciting
- H And I love football! It's great.
- E No, it isn't. It's awful!

#### T 5.7 see p34

#### I = Interviewer, C = Colin

- 1 I Hello, Colin, nice to meet you. Where do you come from?
  - C I come from Scotland, from Dundee.
- 2 I Do you live in Dundee?
  - C No. I don't. I live and work in London.
- 3 I Do you live with friends?
  - C Yes, I do. I live with two friends.
- 4 I Where do you work?
  - C I work in an Italian restaurant.
- Do you like Italian food?
  - C Yes, I do. I like it a lot.
- Do you drink Italian coffee?
  - Yes, I do. I drink coffee but I don't drink tea. I don't like it.
- 7 I Do you like your job?
  - C No, I don't. I want to be an engineer.
- Do you speak Italian?
  - No, I don't. I speak Spanish and French. but I don't speak Italian.

#### T 5.9

#### Conversations with Colin

- 1 Colin Goodbye guys. Time for work.
  - Bye. Colin. See you later. Colin Yeah. Very late tonight.
  - Oh yes. It's Friday. Colin Yes, I work late on Fridays. Bye.
- Ah yes. We both want pizzas.
  - Yes, two Pizza Margheritas please Colin Fine. And do you want a drink?
  - Oh yes, we do. Do you have a list? Colin Yes, of course. Here it is.

Tapescripts 4.6-5.8

, Mum Hello? Colin Mum Oh hello Colin. Donald, It's your big On new Colin, how are you?

Colin I'm fine Mum, really fine.

Do you like your flat? Mum Yes, I do but it's a bit small for three

Mum Ah, yes. It is small. But do you like

Colin No, I don't. Not really. But I like the

Mum Oh, yes. Italian food is good. Colin Yeah but I like your food the best,

Mum! It's delicious! Mum Ooh, thank you Colin. Now, do you want to speak to your brother? Colin Yes, of course. Hi Donald. It's your

brother ...

## Languages and nationalities

T 5.10 English England German Germany Italian Italy Mexican Mexico Syrian Syria Japanese Japan Portuguese Portugal Chinese China French France American the United States Saudi Arabian Saudi Arabia

#### TM What language do they speak?

1 In Portugal they speak Portuguese.

2 In Canada they speak English and French.

3 In France they speak French.

4 In Germany they speak German.

5 In Italy they speak Italian. 6 In Japan they speak Japanese.

7 In Mexico they speak Spanish.

8 In Libya they speak Arabic.

9 In Turkey they speak Turkish.

10 In Russia they speak Russian.

## What's this? Where's it from?

1 It's a German car.

2 It's Moroccan tea.

3 They're Spanish oranges.

4 It's a Japanese camera.

5 It's Mexican food.

6 It's an English dictionary.

7 It's an Italian bag.

8 It's Brazilian coffee. 9 It's French water.

#### At a dinner party F = Flavia, T = Teresa

F Hello, I'm Flavia, Flavia Rossi, What's

Hi Flavia. I'm Teresa. Teresa Adams.

Do you work here in London, Teresa? T Well, I work in London but I don't live in London. I live in Brighton.

And what's your job?

T I'm a doctor. What's your job, Flavia? Do

Yes, I do. I work in a hotel. A big hotel

T Flavia, you aren't English, but you speak English very well. Where do you come from?

I come from Italy, from Napoli. Or Naples I think you say.

Ah, Italy. I love Italy.

F Do you know Naples?

T No, I don't. I don't know Naples, but I know Rome. I like Rome very much. It's very beautiful.

F Naples is beautiful too. Do you speak Italian, Teresa?

T No, I don't. I speak French but I don't speak Italian.

F It's nice to meet you, Teresa.

T You too.

#### T514 T515 T516 see p39

#### TEAT How much is it?

1 The cheese sandwich is £2.90.

2 The football is £14.

The iPhone is £90.95. 3

4 The coffee is £3.50.

5 The dictionary is £7.50.

6 The pair of jeans is £50.

The chocolate is 60p.

8 The bag is £44.99.

#### UNIT 6

#### T 6.1 The time

1 It's nine o'clock.

2 It's nine thirty.

3 It's nine forty-five.

It's ten o'clock.

5 It's ten fifteen.

6 It's two o'clock.

7 It's two thirty.

8 It's two forty-five.

9 It's three o'clock.

10 It's three fifteen.

#### T 6.2 see p40

#### T 6.3 Kim's day

Kim Well, on schooldays I get up at seven forty-five. I have breakfast at eight and I go to school at eight thirty. I have lunch in school with my friends, that's at twelve fifteen - it's early in our school. I leave school at three thirty in the afternoon and I walk home with my friends. I get home at four thirty, have tea, and watch television. I go to bed at eleven o'clock on schooldays, but later at the weekend, of course!

#### T 6.4 see p41

#### T 6.5 Elliot's day

He gets up at six o'clock and has a shower. He has breakfast at six forty-five. He leaves home at seven fifteen, and he goes to work by taxi. He has lunch, a cola and a sandwich, in his office at one o'clock. He always works late. He leaves work at eight o'clock in the evening. He sometimes buys a pizza and eats it at home. He gets home at nine fifteen. He never goes out in the evening. He works at his computer until eleven thirty. He always goes to bed at eleven forty-five. He watches television in bed.

gets up has leaves works buys goes watches

#### T 6.7

He always works late. He sometimes buys a pizza. He never goes out in the evening. He always goes to bed at eleven forty-five.

#### T 6.8 see p42

#### T 6.9 Questions and negatives

1 What time does he get up? He gets up at six.

2 When does he go to bed? He goes to bed at eleven forty-five.

Does he go to work by taxi? Yes, he does.

Does he have lunch in a restaurant? No, he doesn't.

5 Does he go out in the evening? No, he doesn't.

#### T 6.10

1 When does he leave home? He leaves home at 7.15.

Does he go to work by bus? No, he goes to work by taxi.

Where does he have lunch? He has lunch in his office.

4 Does he usually work late? Yes, he does, every day.

Does he eat in a restaurant? No, he doesn't. He eats at home.

What does he do in the evening? He works. He never goes out.

#### T 6.11 Lois' Day

#### Lois Maddox

The seaside artist fills her day with work, walks, and friends.

Lois Maddox is twenty-five and she's an artist. She lives in a small house by the sea in Cape Cod, Massachusets. She always gets up late, at ten o'clock in the morning. She has a big breakfast, coffee, eggs and toast - and then she goes to the beach. When she gets home, she works in her studio until seven o'clock in the evening. She never eats lunch but she always cooks a big dinner and she often invites friends. After dinner, she usually listens to the radio or plays chess. Sometimes she phones her brother, Elliot, in New York. She goes to bed very late, at one or two o'clock in the morning.

#### T.C.D On the phone

#### L= Lois, E = Elliot

- L Hi Elliot, how are you
- E. I'm fine, thanks. Busy as usual.
- L. Oh, you're always busy. You and your computers)
- E. I know, but I love my work.
- L. I love my work too, but I relax sometimes.
- E. Huh! I don't know about that. You paint all day
- Yes, but I stop in the evening. You never 5200
- E. That's not true. Hey Lois, how's Aun't Nancy
- L. Aunt Nancy! She's OK. You know, Elliot. Aunt Nancy often asks albeit you
- E. Really? I like Aunt Nancy
- L. Well, come and visit me soon. I want to cook for you and Aunt Nancy.
- E Good idea! What about next weekend? Next Sunday?
- Yes, great! I often invite Aunt Nursey at the bookens
- E. Great. See you on Sunday. Have a good week

#### TEB Negatives and pronunciation

- She lives in a flat. She doesn't live in a flat! She lives in a MUNICIPAL
- 2 He gets up at ten oblock. He doesn't get up at ten oblock! He gets up at six oblock!
- 3 She's a businesswoman. She isn't a businesswoman! She's an artist!
- 4 He goes to work by bus. He doesn't go to work by bus! He goes to work by taxi
- 5 She watches television in the evening She doesn't watch television in the evening! She listens to the radio or plays chess!

#### T 6.14 Words that go together

go shopping get up early go to bed late drink coffee listen to the radio cat in restaurants watch TV have a shower play chess cook dinner work in an office stay at home

#### 1.6.15 Lifestyle questionnaire

- 1 Do you get up early?
- 2 Do you have a big breakfast?
- 3 Do you walk to school or work?
- 4 Do you go to school or work by bus?
- 5 Do you watch TV in the evening?
- 6 Do you go shopping at the weekend?
- 7 Do you eat in restaurants?
- 8 Do you drink coffee?
- 9 Do you go to bed late?

#### 1616 Days of the week

Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday

Sunday



#### 1721 WY 1749

#### 0.237

- 1 Where do not the I have in Prairies in Paris
- 2 Who are the married as John Cardy Hel Head
- 5. What days were handand do? He's a planted
- 4. When are tree in Strings against News Charles
- 5. Who are the children in the photon We have after here where configure not and Derry Livelle
- restricted the lates of They be set, them, and ten mounths old.
- " Who do now children have French Require their father in French
- 8 the man convert do you do every year? Alvert sal
- thread on keen were story of 11 & Secret I have my next
- What do you do in your five time? I go out with my family.

Gina is a violinist. Paris is her favourite city She kores it there. Next Chrober she's in Shihres for a concert. She is married to a Frenchman. They have a haby son. Saturday is their favourite day.

#### This and that

- 1 A This is my favourite family photo
- B. Ah, yes. You all look very happy!
- 2 C Whole that?
  - D. The guy in the hat? That's the boss!
- 3 E What's that?
  - F it's my new MP3 player.
  - E Word it's great!
- 4 G. How much is this?
  - H 12.51
- G 171 have it, please.
- 5 I How much is that?
  - I by earn
  - 1 I love it. It's fantastic!
- 6 K Is this your phone?
- L. Ves, it is. Thanks.
- 7 M I like that coat.
  - N The blue one?
  - M No, the red one!
- 8 O I like this cheese.
  - P Where's it from?

  - O France. It's delicious.
- 9 Q This is for you.
  - P A present? For me? Why?
  - Q Because you're my wife!

#### 1 like them!

- I have the he cream? You I know
- Driver like court No. I have them
- I the new like meet (Morning ! like must
- 4 Then West Ashanest worth you broads Me also true how me triggitude
- trades were she were the We like her year much

#### Pac Questions and answers

- How do you come to school? the bus
- What do you have for breakfaul than and cultiv
- Whole near finewrite georgenous I don't have a timewrite. I like a ky
- 4. Where does your tather work? by an either in the centre of town
- Why do you want to learn English? Decraise it's an international language
- a. How much moves do you have on mad Not a lot. About 62
- What time do lessous start at your school They start at none oicks.k
- 8. How many languages does your teacher TANFASE three

#### Adjectives

- 1. A lit's no best technic tent it?
  - B. I know II k 35 degrees!
- C. Hert I like your new shoes!
  - D. Thank you! They're really nice area? they?
  - C. They've fantastic!
- E. I live in a very small flat.
  - F. How many bedrooms do you have
  - E Only one!
- 4 G. How much is that coat?
  - 11 6150
  - G. Wow! That's two expensive for me
- Your name's Peter, isn't if
  - Yes, that's right.
  - Nice to meet you, Peter

#### 17.8 see p.53

- Can I have a return ricket to Chievel plant
- 2. Thke this number Can I my it out
- 3 I want to past these letters to the Cool Republic, please
  - 4 Can I have a coffee please?
  - Some aspirin, please.

#### T 7.10

- 1 Can I have a return ticket to Chiled I In a railway station
  - please! A Sure

  - I How much is that?
  - A Thomas mo pounds fifty plant
  - A No problem Put your cold of the 1 Can I pay by credit cand machine. And enter your PIX maps. please

- In a clothes show on this jumper, please?

  I Hello. Can I try on the shanging rooms, please? 1 In a clothes shop I rieno. The changing rooms are over
  - there.

In a post these letters to the Czech 3 In a post office

Republic, please?

C Sure. Put them on the scales. That's £1.68. Thank you. How much is a stamp for a

postcard to the United States?

c Sixty-two p.

I Can I have three, please?

4 In a café

D Yes, please! Can I have a coffee, please? With milk.

D Large or small?

I Small please. To take away.

D Sure. Anything to eat?

I No, thanks. Just a coffee.

D Thanks a lot.

5 In a chemist's

E Next, please!

I Hello. Can I have some aspirin, please?

E Twelve or twenty-four?

I Pardon?

E Do you want a packet of twelve aspirin or twenty-four?

I Oh, twelve's fine, thanks.

#### UNIT 8

#### Rooms of a house

bathroom bedroom kitchen dining room living room

#### 182 Things in a house

a bed an armchair a cooker a lamp a sofa a picture a TV a magazine a shower a DVD player a toilet a laptop a table a desk a fridge

## [8.3] Robert's living room

My living room isn't very big, but I think it's great. There's an old sofa, and there are two armchairs. There's a table with a TV and a DVD player on it.

There's also a PlayStation\*. I love all the games. There are some books, and there are a lot of pictures and posters on the walls. There are two lamps. My room's not very tidy but it's really comfortable.

## 18.4 see p57

## 18.5 Robert and his mum R= Robert, M = Mum

R Hi, Mum.

M Robert. How are you? How's the new flat? R It's great, Mum. I love it. It's really

M And tidy?

Er- well ...

M So, tell me about it. Is there a nice sofa?

- R Well, there's an old sofa but it's OK.
- M Mmm. And are there any chairs?
- R Yes, of course, there are chairs. There are two big armchairs.

M Good. And a TV. Is there a TV?

- R Oh, yes, there is. The TV's really big. And I have a DVD player and a PlayStation\*
- M A PlayStation\*? Why?
- R Mum, I love playing games!
- M OK, OK. So is there a desk?
- There isn't a desk in the living room but there's one in the bedroom.
- M Good. Now, are there any pictures on the walls? Any photographs of your family?
- Well, in the living room there are my posters of New York and Sydney but there aren't any photographs, they're all in my bedroom.

OK. Now your father and I want to see this flat. Can we visit next...?

- R Visit? You want to visit?
- M Yes. We're free next weekend. Can we come?
- R Er- next weekend -er sorry Mum, -er I think -er ...

#### T 8.6 Robert's bedroom

- His laptop is on the desk.
- The CD player is next to the laptop.
- There are three books on the floor next to his bed.
- His car keys are in the drawer.
- There's a football on the floor under the desk.
- 6 His trainers are next to his bag under his bed.

#### T 8.7 Questions and answers

- Do you live in a house or a flat?
- How many bedrooms are there?
- Is there a phone in the kitchen?
- 4 Is there a television in the living room?
- 5 Is there a DVD player under the television? 6 Are there a lot of books in your bedroom?
- Are there any pictures on the wall?

#### T 8.8 Which room is it?

There's a cat on the sofa, and there's a phone on a small table next to the sofa. There's a CD player with some CDs under it. Not a lot of CDs. There isn't a TV, and there aren't any pictures or photographs on the walls. There's one lamp. It's next to the table with the phone. There are two tables and two armchairs. There are some books under one of the tables.

#### T 8.9 Vancouver – the best city in the world

Vancouver is called the 'best city in the world'. Why? Is it the spectacular mountains? The beautiful beaches? The excellent shops and restaurants? It's all of this and more!

Vancouver is in south-west Canada, next to the Pacific Ocean, 24 miles from the US border.

When to go

It is always a good time to visit Vancouver. The weather is never too cold or too hot. It is warm and sunny in summer but it rains a lot in autumn and winter.

#### What to do

In spring, go skiing in the mountains in the morning and relax on the beach in the afternoon. In summer, go swimming, sailing or fishing or go walking in North America's biggest park, Stanley Park. There are excellent shops in Yaletown, and there is also theatre of every sort. Vancouver is the 'City of Festivals'.

#### Where to eat

Vancouver is a cosmopolitan city, so there are French, Italian, Japanese, Indian, Thai, and Chinese restaurants. Vancouver's Chinatown is the second biggest in North America, after San Francisco. There is also a lot of delicious, fresh seafood.

#### Where to stay

In the busy city centre there are some excellent, expensive hotels. The beautiful Fairmont Hotel is \$400 a night, but next to the sea there are a lot of cheap, comfortable hotels from \$59 a night.

#### How to travel

You don't need a car in Vancouver. There are slow, old trolley buses and there is the fast, modern Sky Train. Take the ferry - it is a great way to see the city.

#### T 810 My home town

Hi! My name's Steve and I live in Vancouver. I work at an international bank in the centre of the city but I live in English Bay near the beach. I have a small apartment there. Vancouver's a great city. It's really cosmopolitan. People from all over the world live here. Every Friday after work my wife and I go to Chinatown and have delicious Chinese food - it's my favourite.

I like the weather because it's never too hot or too cold, but it rains a lot and I don't like that.

I work hard and I play hard! I love sport and Vancouver's good for so many sports. In winter I go skiing every weekend, I like snowboarding too. In summer I go swimming and I play golf. I often go cycling with my wife. Sometimes we cycle along the Vancouver Seawall to the park - Stanley Park. The mountains look fantastic from there.

Why doesn't everyone want to live in Vancouver? It's the best place to live in the world!

#### Tall Who is it?

#### Conversation 1

Steve Morning. Monday again!

Yeah. I hate Mondays and it's another busy day.

Steve I know. I have three meetings this morning.

#### Conversation 2

Steve Hi, can I meet you after work?

Yeah, that's great.

Steve Six o'clock OK? We can go to that restaurant next to the Chinese supermarket.

Fine. I want to go there again. The В food's delicious.

Conversation 3

Steve Oh no! Rain again!

It's not so bad.

Steve Yes it is. The sky's really black.

You're right. No golf today, then!

Steve It's a lovely afternoon. Do you want to go out?

Yeah, where do you want to go?

Steve What about Stanley Park?

Great, I love that Park! The mountains look fantastic from there.

Steve Come on then! Let's get the bikes.

#### T8.12 Directions

- 1 Go up North Road. Turn left at the bank into Charles Street. It's on the right next to
- 2 Go up North Road. Turn right at the school into Hillside Road, and it's on the left next to the chemist's.
- 3 Go up North Road. Turn right at the castle into Station Road. Go straight down, and it's on the right next to the car park.
- 4 Go straight on up North Road for five minutes, and it's in Albert Square. It's a big building on the right.
- 5 Go straight on up North Road. At the post office turn left into Park Lane. It's on the right, past the Chinese restaurant.



#### UNIT 9

#### 11911 Years

- 1 nineteen ninety-six
- 2 nineteen sixteen
- 3 two thousand and two
- 4 seventeen ninety-nine
- 5 eighteen forty
- 6 two thousand and five

#### 11921 see p64

#### T 9.3

#### Jane Austen

Jane Austen, the English writer, was born in 1775, in Hampshire, in the south of England.

#### Luciano Pavarotti

Luciano Pavarotti, the Italian opera singer, was born in 1935, in Modena, in the north of Italy.

T 9.4 see p64

**T 9.5** see p65

#### T 9.6 Magalie Dromard

My name's Magalie. It's a French name, but I'm not French. I'm English. I was born in 1994. I have two brothers and a sister. My eldest brother's a doctor. His name's Tristan, and he was born in 1985. My sister is also older than me. Her name's Cecilia and she's a teacher, and she was born in 1988. And my little brother is Matt, and he was born in 1996. He's still a student. My father is French. His name's André, he's from Marseille, and he was born in, I think ...1958. My mother is English, her name's Ella, she's from Manchester, and she was born in, er ... 1961. My grandmother, who is my mother's mother, is called Edith. Isn't that a lovely name? She was born in Bristol in ... I'm not sure, but I think about 1935.

#### 19.7 When were they born?

- Shakespeare was born in 1564 in Stratfordupon-Avon, England.
- 2 Mozart was born in Salzburg, Austria, in 1756.
- 3 Diana Spencer was born in Sandringham, England, in 1961.
- 4 Umm Kalthoum was born in 1898 in Mansoura, in Egypt.
- Bruce Lee was born in 1940 in San Francisco, in the US.
- 6 Benazir Bhutto was born in Karachi, Pakistan, in 1953.
- Vincent Van Gogh was born in 1853 in Zundert, Holland.
- 8 Ayrton Senna was born in 1960 in São Paulo, Brazil.

#### 119.81 see p66

119.9 see p67

- 1 A Ayrton Senna was an actor.
  - B No, he wasn't! He was a racing driver!
- 2 A Jane Austen was a princess.
  - B No, she wasn't! She was a writer!
- 3 A Shakespeare and Jane Austen were artists.
  - B No, they weren't! They were writers!
- 4 A Mozart was a scientist.
  - B No, he wasn't! He was a musician!
- 5 A Luciano Pavarotti and Umm Kalthoum were politicians.
  - B No, they weren't! They were singers!
- 6 A Benazir Bhutto was a writer.
  - B No, she wasn't! She was a politician!

#### T 9.11

go went come came have had be was make made see saw buy bought say said found

## T 9.12 Who is Jackson Pollock?

Teri Horton, a 60-year-old lady from Los Angeles, went shopping in San Bernardino, a town in California, USA. She was in a charity shop when she saw a colourful, modern painting. She bought it for \$5.

An art teacher saw the painting and said it was by the American artist, Jackson Pollock. 'Who is Jackson Pollock?' said Teri. She had no idea that he was a very famous modern painter. Many art experts came to her house to see the painting. Some said that it wasn't a 'Pollock', but one expert, Peter Paul Biró, found Pollock's fingerprint on the back. Biró said, "This is a real Pollock painting.

A rich man was happy to pay \$9 million for it, but Teri said: 'No! I want \$50 million.'

In 2007, a Canadian TV company made a film about Teri and the painting. It is now for sale in an art gallery in Toronto. Price: \$50 million!

- 1 Yesterday I met my mother at one oclock and we had lunch in a restaurant.
- 2 1 hate doing housework but last Sunday I did a lot because my house was a mess,
- Yesterday was a lovely day so I went for a walk in the park.
- Usually I walk but yesterday I went to work by bus.
- 5 On Saturday night I went to a great restaurant. I had a really nice meal,
- I did a lot of exercise yesterday. I went to the gym.
- The film wasn't very good so we went home early.

#### T 9.14 Months of the year

January February March April May June July August September October November December

#### T 9.15 T 9.16 see p71

#### T 9.17

the first of January the third of March the seventh of April the twentieth of May the second of June the twelfth of August the fifteenth of November the thirty-first of December



#### **UNIT 10**

#### 1101 Angie's weekend

Yesterday was Sunday, so I got up late, about 11.30. I had a big breakfast, orange juice, toast, eggs, and coffee. Then I went shopping, just to the supermarket, and I bought some tea. some milk, and the Sunday papers. Then I just stayed at home for the rest of the day. In the morning I cleaned my flat and in the afternoon I did some work on my computer for a bit. then in the evening I watched a film on TV. I went to bed early, about 11.00. I was tired. I had a late night on Saturday.

#### 110.2 Regular verbs

cooked watched

/d/ played listened

/td/ started wanted

A = Angle, R = Rose A Hi, Rose. Did you have a good weekend?

R Yes, I did, thanks.

A What did you do yesterday? A Wills, I got up early and I played tennis with some friends.

A You got up early on Sunday! R Well, yes, it was such a lovely day.

A Where did you play tennis?

R in the park. We had lunch in the café there. A Oh, great! Did you go out in the evening?

R No, I didn't. I cooked a meal for my sister.

A Mmm! What did you have?

R Roast beef. It was delicious! What about you Angie? Did you have a good weekend?

#### T10.4 p73

## T10.5 Angie's weekend

A = Angie, R = Rose

R What about you Angie? Did you have a good weekend?

A Oh yes, I did, very good.

R What did you do on Saturday?

A Well, on Saturday morning I went shopping. Then on Saturday evening I went to a dinner party. It was great!

R Who did you see at the dinner party?

A Oh, one or two old friends.

R Did you go out on Sunday?

A Oh no, I didn't. I didn't go out because I was too tired. I stayed at home most of

R Did you do anything on Sunday evening?

A No, I didn't do much. I just watched a film on TV. I didn't go to bed late. About 11.00.

#### T 10.6 see p73

## T10.7 Making conversation

1 I went shopping yesterday. Really? Where did you go?

2 We went to that new Lebanese restaurant last night.

Mmm! What did you have?

3 We saw a lot of our friends in the coffee bar. Oh! Who did you see?

4 I played tennis at the weekend. Oh, really? Where did you play?

5 The picnic on Saturday was great! Oh, good! What time did you leave?

# 1 10.8 Making conversation

1 A I went shopping yesterday. B Really? Where did you go?

Oxford Street.

Oh! What did you buy?

Well, I wanted a new coat, and I went into the new mall.

Did you find one?

Yes, I did. I found a beautiful black one.

2 A Tom and I went to that new Lebanese restaurant last night.

B Mmm! Wisat did you have? Well, I had lamb schwarma and Tom had

B Did you enjoy it?

A Very much. And it wasn't expensive.

3 A We saw a lot of our friends in the coffee bar.

B Oh! Who did you see?

A Angie and Rose and some other friends from work.

B I don't think I know them.

A They're very nice.

4 A I played tennis at the weekend.

B Oh, really? Where did you play?

A In the park. It was lovely. It was so sunny.

B What a great thing to do on a Sunday morning!

5 A The picnic on Saturday was great!

B Oh, good! What time did you leave?

A About six in the evening. The food was fantastic!

B Did you eat a lot?

A Of course!

#### 110.9 Jack and Millie Parker's holiday

J= Jack, M = Millie

Well, we usually go on holiday in summer ...

M Yes, usually we go to Italy for our holidays, don't we?

But last year we did something different. We had a holiday in winter, and we went to Colorado, in America.

M Because we wanted to learn to ski, you see, and we wanted a change. In Italy we always

stay in a villa ...

... but in Colorado we stayed in a very nice hotel, and because we were in a hotel, we had all our meals in restaurants.

M And that's very special for us. In Italy we cook at home in the villa. But in Colorado we went to a different restaurant every night!

In Italy, because it's summer and it's hot, we go swimming in the swimming pool, and sit in the sun, and I play tennis sometimes ...

M Jack loves his tennis, don't you darling?

I do, but of course last year in Colorado we learned to ski, so we went skiing every day. And Millie, you went ice-skating, didn't you?

M We both went ice-skating!

That's right! It was great fun! In Italy in the

evening, we usually read ...

M ... but last year in Colorado we went out every night, and we met lots of lovely people, didn't we?

We did. We had a really good time.

Last year Jack and Millie didn't go on holiday in summer. They went in winter.

They didn't go to Italy. They went to Colorado.

They stayed in a hotel. They didn't stay in a villa.

4 They didn't eat at home. They ate in restaurants.

5 They went skiing. They didn't go swimming.

1 A Hello. Can I help you? B Yes. Can I have a map of the city, please?

Of course. Here you are.

B Can you show me where we are on the map?

A Yes. We're here in Regent Street in the city centre.

2 C We want to go on a bus tour of the city.

A That's fine. The next bus leaves at 10.00. It takes about an hour and a half.

C Where does the bus go from?

A It goes from Trafalgar Square, but you can get on and off when you want.

3 D I want to visit the British Museum. What time does it open?

A It opens at 10.00 in the morning and closes at 5.30 in the evening.

D How much is it to get in?

A It's free!

#### UNIT 11

#### THAT

1 Marcus is an interpreter. He can speak French and German fluently.

Laura is an architect. She can draw well.

Justin is a pilot. He can fly 747 jumbo jets.

George is a farmer. He can drive a tractor.

5 Lee is an athlete. He can run very fast.

6 Oliver is a schoolboy. He can use a computer really well.

Margaret is Oliver's grandmother. She can make fantastic cakes.

#### 11112 11113 see p81

#### T11.4 Of course I can!

D = Dominique, O = Oliver

D Can you use a computer, Oliver?

Yes, of course I can. All my friends can. I use a computer at home in my bedroom and we use computers at school all the time.

D That's great. What other things can you do?

Well, I can run fast, very fast, and I can draw a bit. I can draw really good cars but I can't drive them of course! I can draw good planes, too. When I'm big I want to be a pilot and fly 747s.

D Excellent. Now, I know you can speak French.

O Yes, I can. I can speak French fluently because my dad's French. We sometimes speak French at home.

D Can you speak any other languages?

O No, I can't. I can't speak German or Spanish, just French - and English of course! And I can cook! I can make cakes. My grandma makes fantastic cakes and I sometimes help her. Yesterday we made a big chocolate cake!

#### T11.5 Pronunciation

1 I can ski quite well.

2 She can't speak German at all.

He can speak English fluently.

Why can't you come to my house? 5 We can't understand our teacher.

They can read. 6

7 Can I have an ice-cream, please?

8 Can cats swim?

#### T11.6 Jenni Spencer

I live in the city of Tucumán. I teach English. I can speak Spanish fluently and German a little bit.

I love it here. On Saturday night I go out with friends. A lot of my friends can speak English really well. On Sundays I often go riding here. I can ride quite well now. Or sometimes I watch friends playing golf. I can't play golf but I like watching it. Sunday is also the day for 'asado' or barbecues. We always cook beef, I can't cook at all but I want to learn. It's a great life here, everyone is really friendly.

#### Requests and offers

- 1 A Can I help you?
  - B Yes, please. I want to buy this postcard.
- 2 A Can you tell me the time, please?
  - B It's about three thirty.
- 3 A Can you come to my dinner party?
  - B Sorry. I can't. It's my brother's wedding on Saturday.
- 4 A Can I have a glass of water, please?
  - B Yes, of course. Here you are.
- 5 A Can you speak more slowly, please?
  - B I'm sorry. Is this better? Can you understand me now?
- 6 A Can I give you a lift?
  - B Oh, yes please! That's so kind of you!

#### TIL8 see p84

#### 1111.9 What do you do on the Internet? 1 Charlotte, age 14

I use the Internet a lot. Every day, I think. It helps me with my homework. I 'google' for information or I use Wikipedia. It helps me with everything, history, geography, science, English -er everything. Yesterday I got a lot information about Jane Austen.

#### 2 Lauren, age 20

I really like poetry and I can find lots of great poems on the Internet. Yesterday I got the words of a sonnet, you know, by Shakespeare. I use the Internet mostly in the evenings, when I have time.

#### 3 Mike, age 23

I go on the Internet a lot, sometimes three or four times a day. It's a great way to hear all your friends' news and see all their photographs. Yesterday I posted all the photos from my holiday. You can see them if you want.

#### 4 Alan Krum, age 47

Well, my surname, -er my family name is Krum and I want to write about my family, so I use the Internet to find out about my family's history. There are special websites for this. Also, I can chat to people with the same name from all over the world, Canada, Germany, Argentina. It's really interesting. I usually use it on Sundays because I have more time then.

#### 5 Max, age 10

I play games a lot. And I go on websites for my favourite football players. I want to be on the computer all the time, but my mum says I can't. She says I can only use it after school for an hour, and then I stop.

#### 6 Edna, age 71

I go shopping on the Internet. Every Friday I go to my son's house and I use his computer. It's fantastic - the supermarket brings all my shopping to my home. I want a computer now. I want to send emails to my friends. Most of my friends have computers.

#### TILLO Adjectives and nouns

- 1 A A Ferrari is a fantastic car. It's so fast. B Yeah, I know, but it's also so expensive.
- 2 A How tall is your brother?
  - B He's very tall, 1.9 metres. I'm only
- 3 A I think motor racing is a really dangerous sport.
  - B I know it's dangerous but it's exciting too. That's why I love it!
- 4 A Can I have a fresh orange juice, please?
  - B I'm afraid we don't have fresh.
  - A OK. Just a glass of water then.
- 5 A New York is a very cosmopolitan city. I love it.
  - B Me too. I can't believe I'm here.
- 6 A Charlie Chaplin made some very funny films, don't you think?
  - B No. I don't like his films. I think they're really boring.
- 7 A We can't go for a walk, it's too cold and wet.
  - B Yes, we can. Look it's sunny again! Come on!

#### TILII Everyday problems

- 1 A Excuse me! Can you help me? I'm lost.
  - B Where do you want to go?
  - A Grand Central Station.
  - Turn left onto Park Avenue. It's straight on. You can't miss it.
- 2 A Oh, no!
  - B What's the matter?
  - A There's something wrong with my computer. I can't get on the Internet, so I can't send my emails.
  - B Turn everything off and try again. That sometimes works.
- 3 A Excuse me! This ticket machine doesn't
  - B Did you push the green button?
  - A Oh! No, I didn't.
  - B Ah, well. Here's your ticket.
  - A Thank you very much.
- 4 A Come on! It's time to go to the airport.
  - B But I can't find my passport! I can't find
  - You put it in your bag.
  - B Did I? Oh, yes. Here it is! Phew!
- 5 A Are you all right?
  - B Yes, I think so.
  - A Does your arm hurt?
  - B It hurts a bit, but I think it's OK.

- 6 A I'm so sorry I'm late.
  - A I'm so sorry .....

    B It's OK. The film starts in 15 minutes.

  - A 1 missed the Come on!

    B 1 told you, it doesn't matter. Come on!



### UNIT 12

# What can you do where?

- You can buy newspapers and magazines in a
- 2 You can buy bread, milk, fruit, and meatin
- 3 You can change your money in a bank.
- 4 You can buy stamps and send a parcel in a
- You can buy a dictionary in a bookshop.
- 6 You can get an espresso in a coffee shop.
- You can buy shampoo and conditioner in a chemist's.

## T12.22 Saying what you want

- Adam Good morning. I'd like some chicken, please.
  - How much would you like?
  - Adam Four slices. В
- Would you like anything else? Yes, I'd like some cheese. Do you Adam have any Emmental?
- B I'm afraid we don't have any Emmental. What about
- mozzarella? Adam No, thank you. Just the chicken then. How much is that?
- 2 C Can I help you?
  - Adam Yes, please, I'd like some shampoo. C We have lots. Would you like it for
  - dry or normal hair? Adam Dry, I think.
  - OK. Try this one. Anything else?
  - Adam Er- oh yeah. I don't have any conditioner. I'd like some conditioner for dry hair, please.
  - C Yes, of course. That's £6.90 please.

#### Where is Adam?

- 1 D Is that all? The Times and two magazines?
  - Yes, that's all. Oh, I nearly forgot Adam I'd like this computer magazine, too.
  - D Yes. Anything else? Adam That's it, thanks ..
  - OK. Would you like a bag? D No, thanks. I don't need a bag. Adam
  - D That's £9.65.
- I'd like an espresso, please. 2 Adam Drink here or take away? E
- To drink here, please. Adam Small, medium or large? E
- Medium, please. Adam
- Would you like something to eat? E Er - yes. I'd like some chocolate Adam cake.
- Sure. Anything else?
- Adam That's it, thanks.

Lewis and Adam A= Adam, L = Lewis What would you like to drink? Nijuice. I'd like an apple juice, please. Ajunction I have some orange juice, but I don't have any apple juice.

Don't worry. Orange juice is fine. Thanks. Would you like something to eat?

Yeah, OK. A sandwich. A cheese sandwich? I frain I don't have any cheese. Sorry. I have gone chicken. Would you like a chicken

sandwich? I Idon't like chicken.

A Would you like some cake, then? L Yes, please. I'd love some.

#### It's my birthday!

A Hey, isn't it your birthday soon?

B Yeah, next week on the 15th.

A So, what would you like for your birthday?

B Idon't know. I don't need anything. A But, I'd like to buy you something.

B That's kind but I think I'd like to forget my birthday this year.

A What? You don't want any presents! Why not? B Well, I'm 30 next week and that feels old.

A 30 isn't old. Come on. I'd like to take you out for a meal with some friends. You can choose the restaurant.

B OK, then. Thank you. I'd like that. Just don't tell anyone it's my birthday. A Oh, that's silly!

#### ID.6 Birthday wishes

Kelly What would I like for my birthday? That's easy! I'd like to have breakfast in bed. With the newspapers. And in the evening I'd like to go to the theatre.

Mike Well, I'd like a new computer, because my computer is so old that new programs don't work on it. And then in the evening Id like to go to a good restaurant. I don't mind if it's Italian, French, Chinese or English. Just good food.

lade I'd love a new mobile phone. My mobile is so old now. I'd like one that takes good photos. Your phone has a really good camera and it wasn't that expensive. And in the evening I'd like to go out with all my friends and have a great time!

# see p91

# Listening and pronunciation 1 A What would you like? Would you like a

B Yes, please. I'm very thirsty. 2 A What sort of thing do you like doing at

B Well, I like watching films.

3 A What sort of flat do you want to move

C Wed like a flat with two bedrooms. Somewhere near the centre.

4 A We have this weekend free. What would

B l'd like to do? l'd like to go into town and eat at that

5 A What do you spend all your money on? B Well, I like new clothes. I buy new clothes every week.

## T12.9 In a restaurant

 $\overline{W = W}$ aiter, L = Liam, M = Maddy

W Are you ready to order?

Well, I am. Are you ready, Maddy?

Yes, I am. What's the soup of the day?

W French onion soup.

M Lovely. I'd like the French onion soup to start, please.

W And to follow?

M I'd like the salmon salad with some chips on the side.

Thank you. And you, sir? What would you like?

Er - I'd like the tomato and mozzarella salad, followed by the burger and chips.

Would you like any side orders?

L No, thank you. Just the burger.

W And to drink?

M Sparkling water for me, please. What about you, Liam?

The same for me. We'd like a bottle of sparkling water, please.

W Fine. I'll bring the drinks immediately.

#### Signs all around

1 Hey, look! That lovely red jumper is only £19.99 now.

Oh, no. I put my money in before I saw the sign.

Can you tell me where the toilets are, please?

4 This is our table. It has our name on it.

I'm not waiting. There are so many people.

Which floor is our room on? Is it the 6th or 7th?

7 Oh, dear we're too late. It doesn't open again until Monday now.

8 I'm sorry, but you can't walk here. Didn't you see the sign on the gate?

#### **UNIT 13**

#### Clothes a jumper

a shirt and tie 8 a jacket 3 a T-shirt and shorts a scarf 10 boots 4 a skirt 11 a suit

7 trainers

5 a dress

12 trousers 6 shoes and socks

#### TB2 What are they wearing?

1 Nigel's wearing a grey suit and a white shirt. He's reading his emails.

Leo's wearing a yellow T-shirt and white trainers. He's running.

Rick's wearing blue jeans and a black T-shirt. He's carrying trays of drinks.

Eva's wearing a green jacket and brown boots. She's carrying a black bag.

Polly and Penny are wearing yellow dresses and blue shoes. They're eating ice-cream.

#### T B.3 see p97

## Asking questions

1 What's he doing?

He's cooking dinner for friends.

What's he doing? He's driving to London.

What's he doing? He's having a shower after work.

What's she doing? She's writing an email to her mother. What's she doing?

She's skiing in France. 6 What's she doing?

She's eating a strawberry ice-cream.

7 What are they doing? They're running fast. What are they doing?

They're shopping in a mall.

What are they doing? They're playing golf in the rain.

#### Wigel at work

Nigel is a businessman. He works from 9 o'clock to 5.30 every day. He always wears a suit and tie for work. He usually has lunch at his desk at one o'clock. He arrives home at about seven o'clock every evening and he reads to his children before they go to bed. He often feels very tired at the end of the day.

#### TB6 see p99

#### Questions about Nigel

Are they having a good time? Yes, they are.

2 Where are they staying? They're staying in a house with a swimming pool near the beach.

3 What are the children doing? They're swimming in the pool.

4 What's Karen doing? She's drinking lemonade.

5 What's Nigel doing? He's talking on the phone.

6 Is he wearing a suit? No, he isn't.

7 Why is Bill calling? Because he has a problem.

#### T13.8 Four conversations

C= Colin, R = Roger, M = Margaret, CW = Colin's wife, CS = Colin's sons, B = boys in the hostel

#### Conversation 1

Hello, I'm Colin.

Hi, Colin. Lovely to meet you. This is my wife Margaret.

It's very good of you to come and help us.

I'm pleased to be here.

#### Conversation 2

That's much better. Now, read it again.

There was a man who work -ed, worked hard and his busi- busi

... his business became very suc - suc cess - ful, successful!

Great. You're doing well.

#### Conversation 3

C Hello, darling.

CW Colin! How are you? We're all missing you.

I'm missing you too but I'm having a good time. It's very interesting here. Roger and Margaret are wonderful people.

#### Conversation 4

- Hi, boys!
- CS Dad! Hi! We're doing our homework.
- Hey, that's good. I'm working hard too.
- CS Are you having a good time?
- I am. I'm with some really interesting people.
- Can we meet them? CS
- Yes, you can. I'd like you to meet them.
- See you soon, Dad.
- Yeah, can't wait! See you soon!

#### TB9 Opposite verbs

- Please don't ask me any more questions, I can't answer them.
- 2 I'm selling my old car, and I'm buying a
- 3 We always get up at seven in the morning and go to bed at eleven at night.
- 4 It was cold, so Tom took off his T-shirt and put on a warm jumper.
- I usually walk to school but yesterday I was late so I ran all the way.
- 6 John's playing tennis with Peter today. He always loses. He never wins.
- Don't turn off the TV, I'm watching it! Please turn it on again!

#### T 13.10

- A Would you like an espresso?
  - B No, thank you, I hate black coffee.
  - A Do you? I love it.
- 2 C What time does the film start?
  - D 6.45.
- C And do you know when it finishes?
- D About 8.30, I think.
- 3 E Would you like to play tennis after work?
  - F Sorry, I can't. I'm working late again.
- 4 G Our train leaves London at 13.55.
  - H And what time does it arrive in Paris?
  - G 16.05
  - H Wow! That's fast.
- 5 I Did you remember to bring your dictionary?
  - Oh, sorry. I forgot it.
  - I Not again!
- 6 K Can I open the window? I'm hot.
  - Of course. Just remember to close it when you leave the room.

#### TBII What's the matter?

- 1 She's cold.
- 6 She's bored.
- 2 He's hungry.
- He's angry.
- 3 They're tired. 4 He's thirsty.
- 8 She's worried.
- 9 He has a headache.
- 5 They're hot.
- 10 She has a cold.

### Why don't you...?

- A What's the matter?
  - B I'm tired and thirsty.
  - A Why don't you have a cup of tea?
  - B That's a good idea.
  - A Sit down. I'll make it for you.

- 2 C What's the matter?
  - D I have a bad headache.
  - C Oh dear! Why don't you take some aspirin?
  - D I don't have any.
  - C It's OK. I have some.

#### **UNIT 14**

#### T1411 Bill and Gloria's holiday

- On Sunday they're flying to London.
- 2 On Monday they're going to have a bus tour of London.
- 3 On Tuesday they're travelling through Belgium and into Germany.
- 4 On Wednesday they're going to drive down to the Alps and Austria.
- 5 On Thursday they're going to drive over the Europa Bridge.
- 6 On Friday they're going to stop in Verona. They're going to see Juliet's balcony.
- 7 On Saturday evening they're having dinner in a bistro in Paris.
- On Sunday morning they're going to the Louvre to see the Mona Lisa. In the evening, they're flying back to the US.

#### **111412** see p105

#### T 14.3

- What are they doing on Tuesday?
- What are they going to do on Wednesday?
- When are they going to drive over the Europa Bridge?
- 4 What are they going to do in Verona?
- 5 Where are they having dinner on Saturday?
- When are they going to the Louvre?
- When are they flying back to the US?

#### T114.4 Eddie's plans

- F = Friend, E = Eddie
- F What are you doing?
- I'm planning my holiday.
- Oh, where are you going?
- I'm going to South Africa. It's my first time.
- Oh you're so lucky! When are you leaving?
- I'm leaving next Monday morning.
- Who are you going with?
- I'm not going with anyone. Just me and my Where are you going to stay?
- Well, I'm staying with friends in Cape Town. Then I'm going on safari. I'm going to sleep in a tent.
- Fantastic! And how are you going to travel?
- By plane to Cape Town, of course, and then by jeep when I'm on safari.
- By jeep! How exciting. And how long are
- Just two weeks. I'd like to stay longer but I can't. It's too expensive.
- How much is it going to cost?
- About £2,000.
- Mmmm, that's quite a lot. Well, have a great time. I can't wait to see your photos.
- Oh, yes, I'm going to take a lot of photos.

## TI45 Pronunciation

Two syllables

hotel women arrive married shampoo chocolate enjoy

#### T 14.6 Pronunciation

Three syllables

photograph banana vegetable magazine interesting understand designer souvenir assistant

#### THAT Rhymes

1 some home come 2 goes knows does 3 were here her make steak speak 5 near wear there 6 eat great wait

#### T 14.8 Past, Present, and Future

Milena Dušek My father is a journalist, and works for a newspaper called Blesk My mother works as a chef in a restaurant in the Old Town.

Georg Reinhardt I was born in Frankfurt. where I grew up and went to school I studied architecture at the University of Munich. I met Karlotta at university - she was a student of modern languages. We moved to Berlin in 1995.

Archie McCrae I went to Drumchapel High School. I studied biology, chemistry, and physics. At school I met Fiona, and we got married when we were 22. We studied medicine together at the same university, and we now live in Edinburgh.

#### Social expressions 2

- 1 A Good luck in the exam! I hope it goes well.
  - B Thanks. I'll do my best.
  - A See you later. Bye!
- 2 C Oh, no!
  - D Don't worry. It doesn't matter.
  - C I'm so sorry!
- 3 E Have a good weekend!
  - F Thanks! Same to you! What are you doing? Anything special?
- E We're going to a wedding.
- F Oh, lovely!
- 4 G Goodbye! Drive carefully!
  - H Thanks! I'll phone you when I arrive.
  - G See you again soon! I have a present for you.

  - For me? Why? I It's just to say thank-you.
  - That's so kind of you!
- 6 K Bye! And thanks for everything! L It was a pleasure. We enjoyed having
  - you.

# Grammar Reference

11 am/are/is

I dille		
1	'm am	Ben.
You	re are	Miki.
My name	's is	James Bond.
This	is	Judy Koblenz.

## ≥1.2 Questions with question words

What's your name? (what's = what is)

How are you?

#### 1.3 Possessive adjectives

My name's John. What's your name?

#### 1.4 Plural nouns

- 1 Most nouns add -s.
- book computer camera
  - books computers cameras
- 2 Some nouns add -es. sandwich →
  - sandwiches bus bus**es**

#### UNIT 2



#### 2.1 am/are/is

I'm (am)	from England. a student.	
You're (are)		
He's (is) She's (is)		
It's (is)	a computer.	
They're (are)	in Muscat. married.	



### 2.2 Possessive adjectives

His name's Pablo. What's her name?

My name's Ahmed. What's your name?

his = possessive adjective his name, his car, his camera

He's Bruno. He's from Brazil. He's fine. (he's = he is)



#### 2.3 Questions with question words

Where	are you is she is he	from?
What	's your (is your) 's her (is her)	name?



#### 2.4 am/are/is

I'm (am)	
You're (are)	from England. a student.
He's She's (is) It's	fine. in Paris. in Dubai. married.
They're (are)	

#### 🚵 3.1 am/are/is

#### Negative

1	'm not (am not)	a teacher. from Syria.
He She	isn't (is not)	married. very well.

#### Yes/No questions and short answers

1 contro que con en		
Are you married?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.	
Is she a teacher?	Yes, she is. No, she isn't.	
Is he English?	Yes, he is. No, he isn't.	
Is her name Alice?	Yes, it is. No, it isn't.	

#### 3.2 Verb to be

#### Positive

I	'm (am)	
He She It	's (is)	from the US.
You We They	're (are)	

#### Negative

I	'm not	
He She It	isn't	English.
You We They	aren't	

#### Questions with question words

with question words	
What	is your name? is her address? is his phone number?
Where	are you from? is he from? are they from?
How old	are you? are they?

#### Answers

John Mason. 16, Albert Road, Bristol. 01693 456729.

From Japan.

I'm 16. They're 8 and 10.

#### Yes/No questions

1				
Is	he she it	Indian?		
Are	you we they	married?		

#### Short answers

Yes, he is. No, she isn't. Yes, it is.

Yes, I am. No, we aren't. No, they aren't.

#### UNIT 4

#### 🏊 4.1 Possessive adjectives

This is	my your his her our their	family. school, office.
---------	--	-------------------------------

### 4.2 Possessive's

's shows possession.

This is John. This is his son. This is John's son. This is Marie. This is her car. This is Marie's car.

his house Tom's house your wife's name her name

() 's is also the short form of is.

he's he is she's she is it's it is Who's Who is

#### 🌺 4.3 Plural nouns

Most nouns add -s in the plural.

doctor doctors book books student students

2 Nouns that end in -s, -ss, -sh, or -ch add -es.

bus buses class classes sandwich sandwiches

3 Some nouns that end in -y change to -ies.

cities country countries dictionary → dictionaries

4 Some nouns are irregular.

man men woman women child children

## 🚵 4.4 have/has

#### Have is an irregular work

Tave is all irregular verb.				
I You We They	have	a good job.		
He She It	has	a computer.		

#### UNIT 6

## 🏊 6.1 Present Simple: he/she/it

#### **Positive**

He She	gets up	at 8.00.
It	leaves	

### 🚱 6.2 Spelling – Present Simple: he/she/it

1 Most verbs add -s.

listens he/she/it leaves walks

2 Verbs ending in -s, -ss, -sh, -ch add -es.

watches he/she/it washes

go, have, and do are irregular.

does he/she/it goes

#### 🎥 6.3 Adverbs of frequency

0%	40%	90%—	100%
never	sometimes	usually	always

Adverbs of frequency (never, sometimes, usually, always) can come before the verb.

We never watch TV.

She sometimes goes out on a Saturday night.

He usually works late.

I always have tea for breakfast.

#### 🗞 6.4 Present Simple: he/she/it

#### Negative

She He doesn't go out in the evening. eat in a restaurant.
--

#### Questions with question words

What	- does	he have for lunch?		
Where		she work?		
What time		he go to bed?		
When		he leave work?		

Yes/No questions and short answers

Does he like football?	Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.
Does she speak English?	Yes, she does. No, she doesn't.

Does he like tea? Do you like coffee?

NOT Yes, he does. NOT No, I don't.

Yes, he likes. No, I don't like:

# SI Present Simple: 1/you/we/they

like coffee. play tennis. live in London. speak two languages. have a good job. hey

like tennis. speak French. don't work in a restaurant. You We

Questions with question words

you live? Where we like? do What sports they speak? How many languages

Yes/No questions and short answers

Do you like football?	Yes, I do. No, I don't.		
Do they speak English?	Yes, they do. No, they don't.		

Do you like tea?

Yes, I do. NOT Yes, I like.

#### § 5.2 a/an

We use an before words that begin with a, e, i, o, and u.

an English dictionary

an ice-cream

an orange an umbrella

a car

a burger

a television

# 5.3 Adjective + noun

Adjectives always come before the noun.

<sup>a</sup> Japanese camera a beautiful tree Spanish oranges

NOT

NOT

a tree beautiful Spanishes oranges

a car German

a camera Japanese

#### UNIT 7



#### 🊵 7.1 Question words

Look at the question words and the answers

What?	A burger.	How?	By taxi.
When?	In the evening.	How old?	16.
What time?	At 8.00.	How many?	Two.
Who?	Peter.	How much?	<i>\$2</i> .
Where?	In Jeddah.	Why?	Because



#### 7.2 Pronouns

Look at the subject and object pronouns, and the possessive adjectives.

Subject pronouns	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
Object pronouns	me	you	him	her	it	us	them
Possessive adjectives	my	your	his	her	its	our	their



#### 🎥 7.3 this/that

We use this to refer to things near to us.



This is my son.



I like this sandwich.

We use that to refer to things that are not near to us.



That's my house.



I don't like that car.

#### UNIT 8



## ≽ 8.1 There is/There are

#### **Positive**

There's a sofa in the living room.

(There's = There is)

There are two CD players in my house.

#### Negative

There isn't a TV.

There aren't any photos.

#### Question

Is there a TV in the kitchen? Are there any magazines on the table? How many CDs are there?



#### 🗞 8.2 some and any

We use some in positive sentences. There are some books.

We use any in questions and negatives. Does he have any photographs? There aren't any lamps.

See 12.2 p128 for information on some and any.

9.1 was/were I must tense of am/are/is.

his and we	T	
present	am	
He/She	is	fine. in class.
lì .		
you	are	

	_	
I He/She	was	fine.
It		
You We	were	at home.
They		

1	Vegative		
	I	wasn't	at home last weekend.
	He You	weren't	at school yesterday.
	They	WCICIT	

Questions

Where were you yesterday? Was she at school? Yes, she was./No, she wasn't.

We use was/were with born, not am/is/are.

Where were you born? He was born in Russia. NOT

Where are you born? He is born in Russia.

## 9.2 Past Simple - irregular verbs

Many common verbs are irregular. See the list of irregular verbs on p142.

any commo	ii vei u	s are mich
Present	-	Past
am/is/are		was/were
go		went
come		came
have		had
make		made
see		saw
buy		bought
say		said
find		found
do		did

## 🐎 10.1 Past Simple positive

1 Regular verbs add -ed or -d in the Past Simple.

**Past** Present played play watched watch listened listen turned turn changed change

Remember: Many common verbs are irregular.

went saw see had have

See the list of irregular verbs on p142.

2 The form is the same for all persons.

I You He/She/It We They	listened to the radio. went to work. had lunch.
-------------------------------------	---

# 10.2 Past Simple questions and negatives

→ Past did • Present do/does What time does he usually get up? What time did he get up yesterday?

## Questions with question words

(	Questions	with qu	lestion works	
	Where	did	I you he/she/it we they	go?

Negative		
I You He/She/It We They	didn't	go shopping. see the film.

## Yes/No questions and short answers

Yes/No questions and short and	311.5
	Yes, they did.
Did they play football?	No, I didn't.
Did you have a good time?	No, I didirt.



#### 🐎 11.1 can

#### Positive

I You He/She/It We They	can	swim. drive. cook. run fast.
-------------------------------------	-----	---------------------------------------

#### Negative

I You He/She/It We They	can't	draw. speak German. play golf.
-------------------------------------	-------	--------------------------------------

#### Questions with question words

question words			
What		you do?	
When	can	I go home?	
How many languages		he speak?	

#### Yes/No questions and short answers

Can you swim?	Yes, I can.
Can he play tennis?	No, he can't.

#### 🐎 11.2 Modal verbs

Can is a modal verb. We don't use do/does/don't/doesn't with can.

I can't swim.	NOT	<del>I don't can swim.</del>
Can you cook?	NOT	Do you can cook?
She can't speak Spanish.	NOT	She doesn't can
They can't drive.	NOT	They don't can



#### > 11.3 Adverbs

- 1 Adverbs give more information about verbs. go fast draw well speak beautifully
- 2 Notice the word order.

NOT You speak English well. You speak well English. He drives his car fast. NOT He drives fast his ear.

3 Regular adverbs end in -ly.

Adjective -	→ Adverb
fluent	fluently
beautiful	beautifully
slow	slowly
careful	carefully
usual	usually

Some adverbs are irregular.

Sollie adve		
Adjective	$\rightarrow$	Adverb
good		well
fast		fast
late		late
early		early
hard		hard
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		

#### **UNIT 12**

#### 🔈 12.1 would like

1 We use would like to ask for things.

#### **Positive**

I You He/She We They	'd like a cup of tea.
----------------------------------	-----------------------

2 We use Would ... like? to offer things.

#### Question

Wo	ould	you he/she they	like some cake?
----	------	-----------------------	-----------------

3 Look at the answers.

Yes, please. Would you like a cup of tea? No, thank you. We use would like, not want, to be polite. I'd like a coffee, please. NOT I want a coffee.

4 We can use would like with another verb. Would you like to go out tonight? What would you like to do?

#### Name and any

1 We use some in positive sentences.

I'd like There's We have	some	chicken. cheese. books.
--------------------------------	------	-------------------------------

2 We use any in questions.

Is there	anv	chicken?
Do you have Are there	any	money? people?

3 We use any in negatives.

There isn't We don't have	any	bread. friends.
There aren't		books.

4 We use some when we offer things or ask for things.

Would you like Can I have	some	water? cheese?
------------------------------	------	-------------------

#### 12.3 like and would like

- We use like and like doing to talk about things we always like. I like coffee. (= I always enjoy coffee.) She likes swimming in summer. What do you like doing at the weekend?
- We use would like to talk about things we want now or soon. (= I want a cup of tea now or soon.) I'd like a cup of tea. She's hot. She'd like to go swimming. What would you like to do tonight?

Author		Control of the Contro
Auri	am	
the She	is	working.
Non They	are	

eşative l	'm not	
the she It	fnzi	working.
You We They	aren't	

Questions with question words

	am l	
What	are you are we are they	wearing?
	is he is she	1. 5 1

Yes/No questions and short answers

Are you wearing jeans?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
is the reading a newspaper?	Yes, she is. No, she isn't.

## 13.2 Present Simple and Present Continuous

- We use the Present Simple to talk about actions that are true for all time or a long time.
  - Hans comes from Germany.
  - Hove my family.
  - My father works in a bank.
  - l get up at 7.30 every day.
- She doesn't understand French.
- We use the Present Continuous to talk about actions that last a short time. The actions are happening now.
  - I usually wear jeans, but today I'm wearing a suit.
  - He's speaking French to that man. He speaks French very well. h's raining.
  - They're swimming.

#### **UNIT 14**

#### > 14.1 Future plans

#### Positive

I'm You're He's She's We're They're	going to Europe. leaving next week. flying on Sunday.
--	---

I'm You're He's She's We're They're	going to	see Buckingham Palace. have a tour of the city. stay in the Ritz hotel.
--	----------	---

#### Questions

Where	going on holiday?
When	leaving?
Where	staying?
Who	going with?

Where What	are you going to	stay? do?
* * 1100		

## Word list

Here is a list of most of the new words in the units of New Headway Plus Beginner Student's Book.

adj = adjective adv = adverbconj = conjunction

n = nounpl = pluralprep = preposition

pron = pronounv = verbinfml = informal



#### UNIT 1

and conj /ænd/, /ənd/ bag n /bæq/ book n /buk/ burger n /'ba:go(r)/ bus n /bas/ Bye! /bal/ camera n /'kæmrə/ car n /ka:(r)/ coffee n /'kofi/ computer n /kəmˈpju:tə(r)/ cup n /knp/ day n /dei/ English adj, n /'mglis/ everyday adj /'evridei/ fine adj /fain/ first name n /'fa:st ,neim/ Good afternoon! /god \_a:ftə'nu:n/ Good morning! /god 'mɔ:nɪŋ/ Good night! /god'naɪt/ Goodbye! /god'bai/ Have a nice day! / hæv ə nais 'dei/ hello n /hel'au/ house n /haus/ How are you? /,hao a 'ju:/ lovely adj /'lavli/ my /mar/ name n /neim/ Nice to meet you. /,nais to 'mi:t ju/ OK adj /,ou 'ker/ phone n /foun/ photograph n /'fautagra:f/ please /pli:z/ sandwich n /'sænwitʃ/ See you later! /,si: ju 'leito(r)/ Sleep well! /'sli:p wel/ surname n /'sa:neim/ tea n /ti:/ television n /'telivi3n/ thank you /'θæŋkju:/ thanks /0æŋks/ this pron /'ðis/ today n /to'der/ very well /,veri 'wel/ what? /,wpt/ with prep /wib/ your /jɔ:(r)/ Numbers 1-10

four /fo:(r)/ five /faiv/ six /siks/ seven /'sevn/ eight /eit/ nine /naɪn/ ten /ten/

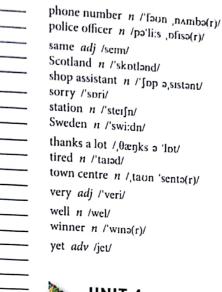


about prep /əˈbaʊt/	
awful adj /'ɔ:fl/	
beautiful <i>adj /</i> 'bju:tɪfl/	
building n /ˈbɪldɪŋ/	
centre adj /'sentə(r)/	
cities n pl /'sɪtiz/	
countries n pl /'kʌntriz/	
doctor n /'doktə(r)/	
fantastic <i>adj</i> /fæn'tæstɪk/	
find v /faind/	
from <i>prep</i> /from/	
hear v /hɪə(r)/	
her /h3:(r)/	
his /hɪʒ/ hospital n /'hɒspɪtl/	
how old? /hau 'əuld/	
look at (sth) v /'lok ət/	
map n /mæp/ married <i>adj /</i> 'mærid/	A THE STATE OF THE
on holiday /on 'holədei/	
people n pl /'pi:pl/	
• • •	
really good adj /ˌri:əli ˈgud/	
school n /sku:l/	
these pron /ŏi:z/	
100 adv /tu:/	
weather n /'weðə(r)/	
where? adv /weə(r)/ world n /wə:ld/	
Countries	
Australia n /o'streilio/ Brazil n /brə'zil/	
Canada n /'kænədə/	A(2.75-2)
China n /'tʃaɪnə/	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
Egypt n /'i:dʒɪpt/	The Control of the Co
England n /'ingland/	Table 1871 APRIL 19
France n /fra:ns/	
Hungary n /'hʌŋgəri/	13.99
ta <mark>ly n /ˈɪtɔli/</mark> apan n /dʒəˈpæn/	A PARTY OF
Russia n /'rʌʃə/	100000
Spain n /spein/	1/2/20
Saudi Arabia n / saudi: ə'reibi:ə/	

one /wan/ two /tu:/ three /0ri:/

130

Numbers 11-30 eleven Allevin twelve /twelv/ thirteen /0a:'ti:n/ fourteen /fo:'ti:n/ ifteen /Afti:n/ sixteen /siks'ti:n/ seventeen /sevn'ti:n/ eighteen /er'ti:n/ nineteen /nam'ti:n/ twenty / twenti/ twenty-one / twenti wan/ wenty-two / twenti'tu:/ twenty-three / twenti 0ri:/ twenty-four /,twenti'fo:(r)/ twenty-five / twenti faiv/ twenty-six / twenti siks/ twenty-seven / twenti sevn/ twenty-eight / twenti'eit/ twenty-nine /,twenti'nam/ thirty /'0a:ti/



#### UNIT 3

address n /o'dres/ all adv /5:1/ America n /ə'merikə/ another pron /o'nAdo(r)/ boy n /bot/ brother n /'braða/ builder n /'bilda(r)/ bus driver n /'bas ,draivo(r)/ businessman n /'biznəsmæn/ charity walk n /'tʃærɪti ,wɔ:k/ excited adj /ik'saitid/ excuse me /ık'skju:z ,mi:/ forty /'fo:ti/ good luck /god 'lak/ Great! adv /greit/ happy adj /'hæpi/ here adv /hip(r)/ Hi /haɪ/ l don't understand /aı ,dəunt Andə'stænd/ I'm sorry /aim 'spri/ interesting adv /'introstin/ interview n / mtəvju:/ Ireland n /'arələnd/ job n /dzob/ live v /liv/ magazine n /,mægə'zi:n/ now adv /nau/ nurse n /na:s/ other adj /'noo(r)/ over there /,ouva 'dea/ personal information n /ng:səni incə:meisn/

-4-11	
station n /'sterfn/	
Sweden n /'swi:dn/	
thanks a lot /ˌθæŋks ə 'lot/	
tired n /'taiəd/	
town centre n /,taun 'sento(r)/	
very adj /'veri/	
well n /wel/	
winner n /'winə(r)/	
yet adv /jet/	



#### **UNIT 4**

of course /av 'ka:s/

a lot of /a 'lot av/ accountant n /ə'kauntənt/ age n /eid3/ bank manager n /'bæŋk ,mænidʒə(r)/ bank n /bæŋk/ best friend n /,best 'frend/ big adj /big/ both pron /baut/ business card n /'biznis ka:d/ certainly adv /'sa:tənli/ children n pl /'tsildrən/ college n /'kplid3/ Come on! /,kam 'on/ company n /'kʌmpəni/ connecting v /kə'nektıŋ/ dictionary n /'dıksənri/ evening n /'i:vnin/ everybody pron /'evribodi/ family tree n / fæməli 'tri:/ fans n pl /'fænz/ football n /'futbo:1/ friends n pl /frendz/ funny adj /'fʌni/ Germany n /'dʒ3:məni/ give v /qıv/ goal n /gəul/ good adj /gud/ have v /hæv/ home n /houm/ hotel n /hou'tel/ like v /laɪk/ manager n /'mænidʒə(r)/ near adj /niə(r)/ new adj /nju:/ nice adj /nais/ north adj /no:θ/ notice v /'nautis/

office n /'pfis/ our /auə(r)/ part of (something) n /'pu:t av/ part-time adj /,po:t 'taim/ police n /pa'lis/ really adj /'ri:əli/ small adj /smo:V spell v /spel/ sport n /spo:t/ sports centre n /'spo:ts ,sento(r)/ their /ðeo(r)/ together adv /to'geðə(r)/ university n / ju:ni'va:səti/ us pron /AS/ village n /'vilidz/ want v /wont/ The family brother n /'braða(r)/ daughter n /'do:to(r)/ father n /'fa:ðə(r)/ husband n /'hazband/ mother n /'maðo(r)/ parents n pl /'pearants/



#### UNIT 5

sister n /'sisto(r)/

son n /san/

wife n /waif/

Arabic n /'ærəbik/ blue adj /blu:/ cheese n /tsi:z/ chocolate n /'t[pklət/ Coke n /kəuk/ Come here! / kam 'hip(r)/ count v /kaont/ delicious adj /di'lisos/ drama n /'dra:mə/ drink v /drink/ eat v /i:t/ exciting adj /ik'saitin/ flat n /flæt/ food n /fu:d/ guys n pl /gaiz/ how much? / hav 'mats/ ice-cream n /'aiskri:m/ identity n /ar'dentiti/ languages n pl /'længwid3iz/ list n /list/ love v /lav/ Mexico n /'meksikəu/ millionaire n /miljo'neo(r)/ nationalities n pl /,næso'nælatiz/ orange n /'prind3/ order v /'o:do(r)/

pair (of) n / peo(r) (ov)/ pizza n /'pi:tsə/ play v /plet/ Portugal n /'po:tfogl/ pounds n pl /paondz/ prices n pl /'praisiz/ restaurants n pl /'restronts/ skiing n /'ski:n/ sometimes adv /'samtaimz/ speak v /spi:k/ swimming n /'swimin/ Switzerland n /'switsələnd/ tennis n /'tenis/ terrible adj /'terabl/ the best adj /oo 'best/ twin n /twin/ waiter n /'weita(r)/

#### Nationalities

American /a'merikan/
Brazilian /bra'zilian/
Chinese /tʃai'ni:z/
French /frentʃ/
German /'dʒa:mən/
Italian /i'tæliən/
Japanese /ˌdʒæpə'ni:z/
Mexican /'meksikən/
Portuguese /ˌpɔ:tʃo'gi:z/
Saudi Arabian /ˌsaudi: a'reibi:ən/
Spanish /'spænɪʃ/
Syrian /'siri:ən/
Turkish /'ta:kɪʃ/

#### Numbers 40-100

forty /'fɔ:ti/
fifty /'fɪfti/
sixty /'sɪksti/
seventy /'sevənti/
eighty /'eɪti/
ninety /'naɪnti/
one hundred /wʌn 'hʌndrəd/



dad n /dæd/

#### UNIT 6

all day adj /,ɔ:l 'dei/
always adv /'ɔ:lweiz/
artist n /'ɑ:tist/
as usual /əz 'ju:ʒuəl/
at the weekend /ət ðə ˌwi:k'end/
aunt n /ɑ:nt/
beach n /bi:tʃ/
bed n /bed/
between adv /bi'twi:n/
breakfast n /'brekfəst/
businesswoman n /'bizniswomən/
busy adj /'bizi/
buy v /bat/
come v /kʌm/
cook v /kok

meet v /mi:t/	
mobile phones n pl / moobail 'foonz/	
money n /'mʌni/	
months n pl /manθs/	
neighbours n pl /'neibəz/	
newspaper n /'nju:zpeipə(r)/	
no problem /'nou ,problem/	
October n /pk'təubə(r)/	
old <i>adj</i> /əuld/	
over there /,ɔuvɔ 'ðeɔ(r)/	
packet n /'pækit/	
parcel n / pa:sl/	
Pardon? /'po:dn/	
PIN n /'pin/	
place n /pleis/	
post v /pəust/	
Post Office n /'paust pfis/	
postcard n /'pəustka:d/	
present n /'preznt/	
programme n /'prəugræm/	
railway station n /'reilwei ,steisn/	
red adj /red/	
return ticket n /ri'ts:n ,tikit/	
sad adj /sæd/	
salad n /'sæləd/	
scales n pl /skeilz/	
seafood n /'si:fu:d/	
shampoo n /ʃæm'pu:/	
shoes $n pl / \int u \cdot z / \int dz dz$	
shows n pl /souz/	
single ticket n /'singl ,tikit/	
stamp n /stæmp/	
Swedish adj /'swi:dis/	had an old a nothing to be
· ·	
take away n /'teikəwei/ teach v /ti:tʃ/	to but I by Yelik
that pron /ðæt/	
toothpaste $n$ /'tu:0peist/	
town n /taun/	
train n /trein/	
try on v /trai pn/	
T-shirt n /'ti:ʃ3:t/	
understand v /ˌʌndəˈstænd/	
very much / veri 'mʌtʃ/	
violinist n / vaiə'linist/	
website n /'websait/	
wet adj /wet/	
white adj /wait/	
who? /hu:/	
why? /wai/	
wonderful adj /'wʌndəfl/	
wrong adj /rɒŋ/	



darm clock n /5'la:m ,klok/ iny pron /'eni/	
armchair n /a:mtfeo(t)/	
autumn n /ˈɔːtəm/	
oathroom n /ˈbɑːθruːm/	
porder n /bo:do(r)/	
ous station n /bas ,stelfn/	
rar keys n pl /'ka: ˌki:z/	
car park n /ka: ,pa:k/	
castle n /ˈkɑːsl/ cinema n /ˈsməmə/	
cooker n /'kukə(t)/	
cosmopolitan adj /,kozma'politan/	
cycling n /'saiklin/	
desk n /desk/	
dining room n / damin ,ru:m/	
directions n /dəˈrekʃnz/	
drawer n /dro:(r)/ DVD player n /,di: vi: 'di: ,pletə(r)/	
excellent adj /'eksələnt/	
ferry n / feri/	
festivals n pl /ˈfestivlz/ fishing n /fifiŋ/	
floor n /flo:(r)/	
fresh adj /fres/	
fridge n /fridʒ/	
furniture n /ˈfɜːnɪtʃə(r)/	
games npl/geimz/ golf n/golf/	
home town n /,hoom 'taon/	
Indian adj /'indiən/	
Internet café n /'intenet ,kæfet/	
kinds of /'kaındz əv/ kitchen n /'kıtʃn/	
lamp n /læmp/	
laptop n /'læptop/	
left /'left/	
living room n /'livin ,ru:n/	
mean adj /mi:n/	
meetings n pl /'mi:tiŋz/ miles n pl /mailz/	
minutes n pl /'minuts/	
modern adj /'modn/	
more pron /mo:(r)/	
mountain n /'maonten/	
need v /ni;d/	
next to prep /'nekst tu:, ta/ night n /naɪt/	
park n /pa:k/	
posters n pl /'paustaz/	
quick adj /kwik/	
right adj /rait/	
rooms n pl /ru:mz/	
run v /rʌn/	
sailing n /seiliŋ/	

yellow adj /'jelau/

M. 19	last year /,la:st 'jiə(r)/	
see a skal	make v /meik/	
1 NA 1	mess n /mes/	
sy shall slau csnauba:din/	most /məust/	
ding n / site	musician n /mjuˈʒɪ∫n/	
2000	next year /,nekst 'jɪə(r)/	
set and spek'tækjələ(r)/ spektacular adj /spek'tækjələ(r)/ spektacular adj /spo:ts ,bæg/	older adj /'əuldə(r)/	9
seticular day representation of sports bag/		
	Pakistan n / pæki'stæn/	
affile (atreit DIV	pay v /peɪ/ politician n /ˌpɒləˈtɪʃn/	
striking (symp(r))	princess n /,prin'ses/	
samy adj /sami/	·-	
sany adj /sanV sany adj /sanV spermarket n /'su:pəma:kit/	racing driver n /'reisin ˌdraivə(r)/ real adj /'ri:əl/	
-hone n / terra	rich adj /ritʃ/	
That adj /tat/	Saudi Arabia n /ˌsaudi əˈreɪbiə/	
, and M / Ulest	scientist n /'saiantist/	
the add / taidb	see v /si:/	
wilet n /toilat/ winers n pl /'treinaz/	singer n /'sɪŋə(r)/	
1 - /tr@VI/	south adj /saυθ/	
molley bus n /'troli ,bas/	still adj /stɪl/	
trac v /t3:n/	story n /'sto:ri/	
under prep /'Andə(t)/	thousand $n$ /' $\theta$ a $\upsilon$ zənd/	
/ws.lz/	TV company n / ti: 'vi: knmpən	
adi /wim/	uncle n /'ʌŋkl/	
water sports n /'wo:to ,spo:ts/	writer n /'raitə(r)/	
winter n /'wintə(r)/	year n /jɪə(r)/	
	yesterday adv /'jestədei/	
LINIT 9	Months of the year	- 21
UNIT 9	Months of the year January n /dʒænjuəri/	
*	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /ˈfebruəri/	
art n l'o:t/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /ˈfebruəri/ March n /mɑ:tʃ/	
art n /'o:U ————————————————————————————————————	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /ˈfebruəri/ March n /mɑːtʃ/ April n /ˈeɪprəl/	
art n /'o:U	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /ˈfebruəri/ March n /mɑːtʃ/ April n /ˈeɪprəl/ May n /meɪ/	
art n /'o:U ————————————————————————————————————	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /ˈfebruəri/ March n /mɑːtʃ/ April n /ˈeɪprəl/ May n /meɪ/ June n /dʒuːn/	
art n /'o:t/ Austria n /'ostria/ back n /bæk/ birthday n /'b3:0det/ born v /bo:n/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /mɑ:tʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /meɪ/ June n /dʒu:n/ July n /dʒu'laɪ/ August n /'ɔ:gəst/	
art n /'o:t/  Austria n /'ostrie/  back n /bæk/ birthday n /'bs:0det/ born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃpp/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /mɑ:tʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒu:n/ July n /dʒu'lai/ August n /'ɔ:gəst/ September n /sep'tembə(r)/	
art n /'o:t/  Austria n /'ostria/  back n /bæk/ birthday n /'ba:0det/ born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /mɑːtʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒuːn/ July n /dʒu'lai/ August n /'ɔːgəst/ September n /sep'tembə(r)/	
art n /'o:t/  Austria n /'ostria/  back n /bæk/ birthday n /'b3:0det/ born v /bɔ:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/ dear adj /dɪəfr/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /mɑ:tʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒu:n/ July n /dʒu'lai/ August n /'ɔ:gəst/ September n /sep'tembə(r)/ October n /ɒk'təubə(r)/ November n /nəu'vembə(r)/	
art n /'o:t/  Austria n /'ostria/  back n /bæk/  birthday n /'ba:0det/  born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/  dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /mɑ:tʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒu:n/ July n /dʒu'lai/ August n /'ɔ:gəst/ September n /sep'tembə(r)/ October n /ok'təubə(r)/ November n /nəo'vembə(r)/ December n /di'sembə(r)/	
art n /'o:t/  Austria n /'ostria/  back n /bæk/  birthday n /'ba:0det/  born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/  dear adj /drə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldist/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /mɑːtʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒuːn/ July n /dʒuˈlai/ August n /ˈɔːgəst/ September n /sepˈtembə(r)/ October n /bkˈtəubə(r)/ November n /nɔuˈvembə(r)/ December n /dɪˈsembə(r)/	
art n /'o:t/  Austria n /'ostrio/  back n /bæk/ birthday n /'bɔ:θdet/ born v /bɔ:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/ dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldɪst/ expert n /'ekspə:t/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /mɑːtʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒuːn/ July n /dʒuˈlai/ August n /ˈɔːgəst/ September n /sepˈtembə(r)/ October n /okˈtəubə(r)/ November n /nəuˈvembə(r)/ December n /dɪˈsembə(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fɜːst/	
art n /'o:t/  Austria n /'ostrio/  back n /bæk/ birthday n /'bɔ:θdet/ born v /bɔ:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/ dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldɪst/ expert n /'ekspɜ:t/ famous adj /'ferməs/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /mɑːtʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒuːn/ July n /dʒuˈlai/ August n /'ɔːgəst/ September n /sepˈtembə(r)/ October n /okˈtəubə(r)/ November n /nəuˈvembə(r)/ December n /dɪˈsembə(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fɜːst/ second adj /ˈsekənd/	
art n /'o:t/ Austria n /'ostriə/ back n /bæk/ birthday n /'bɔ:θdet/ born v /bɔ:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/ dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldɪst/ expert n /'ekspə:t/ famous adj /'ferməs/ film n /ʃulm/	January n /dawnjuari/ February n /'februari/ March n /ma:ts/ April n /'eipral/ May n /mei/ June n /dau:n/ July n /dau'lai/ August n /'a:gast/ September n /sep'temba(r)/ October n /ok'tauba(r)/ November n /nau'vemba(r)/ December n /di'semba(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fa:st/ second adj /'sekand/ third adj /fa:d/ fourth adj /fa:d/	
art n /'o:t/ Austria n /'ostriə/ back n /bæk/ birthday n /'ba:θdet/ born v /bɔ:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kaləft/ dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldɪst/ expert n /'ekspə:t/ famous adj /'feɪməs/ film n /film/ film company n /'film ,kampəni/ fingerprint n /'fsnaarant/	January n /dawnjuari/ February n /'februari/ March n /ma:ts/ April n /'eipral/ May n /mei/ June n /dau:n/ July n /dau'lai/ August n /'a:gast/ September n /sep'temba(r)/ October n /ok'tauba(r)/ November n /nau'vemba(r)/ December n /di'semba(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fa:st/ second adj /'sekand/ third adj /fa:d/ fourth adj /fa:d/ fifth adj /fa:d/	
art n /'o:t/  Austria n /'ostria/  back n /bæk/  birthday n /'ba:0det/  born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃop/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/  dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldɪst/ expert n /'ekspa:t/ famous adj /'ferməs/ film n /film/ film company n /'film ,kʌmpəni/ fingerprint n /'fɪŋgəprɪnt/ for sale /fə'setl/	January n /damjuari/ February n /'februari/ March n /ma:ts/ April n /'eipral/ May n /mei/ June n /dau:n/ July n /dau'lai/ August n /'a:gast/ September n /sep'temba(r)/ October n /ok'tauba(r)/ November n /nau'vemba(r)/ December n /di'semba(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fa:st/ second adj /'sekand/ third adj /fa:d/ fourth adj /fa:d/ fifth adj /fif0/ sixth adj /siks0/	
art n /'o:t/  Austria n /'bstria/  back n /bæk/  birthday n /'bs:0det/  born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/  dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldist/ expert n /'eksps:t/ famous adj /'fetməs/ film n /film/ film company n /'film ,kʌmpəni/ fingerprint n /'fingəprint/ for sale /fə'seil/ gallery n / gæləri/	January n /daænjuari/ February n /'februari/ March n /ma:ts/ April n /'eipral/ May n /mei/ June n /dau:n/ July n /dau'lai/ August n /'a:gast/ September n /sep'temba(r)/ October n /ok'tauba(r)/ November n /nau'vemba(r)/ December n /di'semba(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fa:st/ second adj /'sekand/ third adj /fa:d/ fourth adj /fa:d/ fifth adj /fift/ sixth adj /siksd/ seventh adj /'sevnd/	
art n /'o:t/  Austria n /'bstrie/  back n /bæk/  birthday n /'bs:0det/  born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/  dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldist/ expert n /'eksps:t/ famous adj /'feiməs/ film n /film/ film company n /'film ,kʌmpəni/ fingerprint n /'fingəprint/ for sale /fə'seil/ gallery n /,gæləri/ go v /qəi/	January n /dawnjuari/ February n /'februari/ March n /ma:ts/ April n /'eipral/ May n /mei/ June n /dau:n/ July n /dau'lai/ August n /'a:gast/ September n /sep'temba(r)/ October n /ok'tauba(r)/ November n /nau'vemba(r)/ December n /di'semba(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fa:st/ second adj /'sekand/ third adj /0a:d/ fourth adj /fa:0/ fifth adj /fift/ sixth adj /siks0/ seventh adj /eit0/ eighth adj /eit0/	
art n /'o:t/ Austria n /'bstria/ back n /bæk/ birthday n /'bs:0det/ born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/ dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldist/ expert n /'eksps:t/ famous adj /'feiməs/ film n /film/ film company n /'film ,kʌmpəni/ fingerprint n /'fingəprint/ for sale /fə'seil/ gallery n /,gæləri/ go v /gət/ good time / curt ii.	January n /damjuari/ February n /'februari/ March n /ma:ts/ April n /'eipral/ May n /mei/ June n /dau:n/ July n /dau'lai/ September n /sep'temba(r)/ October n /ok'tauba(r)/ November n /nau'vemba(r)/ December n /di'semba(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fa:st/ second adj /'sekand/ third adj /fa:d/ fourth adj /fa:d/ fourth adj /fs:b/ sixth adj /siksb/ seventh adj /sevnb/ eighth adj /nainb/ tenth adj /nainb/	
art n /'o:t/ Austria n /'bstria/ back n /bæk/ birthday n /'bs:0det/ born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃop/ colourful adj /'kʌləft/ dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldist/ expert n /'ekspə:t/ famous adj /'feiməs/ film n /film/ film company n /'film ,kʌmpəni/ fingerprint n /'fingəprɪnt/ for sale /fə'seɪl/ gallery n /,gæləri/ go v /gəu/ good time /,gud 'taɪm/ grandfather n /'grænfɑ:ðə(r)/ grandmother n / grænfɑ:ðə(r)/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /mɑːtʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒuːn/ July n /dʒuˈlai/ August n /ˈɔːgəst/ September n /sepˈtembə(r)/ October n /okˈtəubə(r)/ November n /nəoˈvembə(r)/ December n /diˈsembə(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fɜːst/ second adj /ˈsekənd/ third adj /fɜːd/ fourth adj /fɪfθ/ sixth adj /sɪksθ/ seventh adj /ˈsevnθ/ eighth adj /eɪtθ/ ninth adj /naɪnθ/ tenth adj /tenθ/ eleventh adj /ɪˈlevənθ/	
art n /'o:t/ Austria n /'bstria/ back n /bæk/ birthday n /'bs:0det/ born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃɒp/ colourful adj /'kʌləft/ dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldist/ expert n /'ekspə:t/ famous adj /'feiməs/ film n /film/ film company n /'film ,kʌmpəni/ fingerprint n /'fɪŋɡəprɪnt/ for sale /fə'seɪl/ gallery n /,gæləri/ go v /gəu/ good time /,gud 'taɪm/ grandfather n /'grænfo:ðə(r)/ gym n /dɪm/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /mɑːtʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒuːn/ July n /dʒuːlai/ August n /'ɔːgəst/ September n /sep'tembə(r)/ October n /ok'təubə(r)/ November n /nəo'vembə(r)/ December n /dɪ'sembə(r)/ Ordinal numbers first adj /fɜːst/ second adj /'sekənd/ third adj /fɜːd/ fourth adj /fɪfə/ sixth adj /sɪksə/ seventh adj /sevnə/ eighth adj /eɪtə/ ninth adj /naɪnə/ tenth adj /tenə/ eleventh adj /t'levənə/ twelfth adj /t'levənə/ twelfth adj /t'levənə/	
art n /o:t/ Austria n / 'pstria/ back n /bæk/ birthday n / 'ba:det/ born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /ka'nerdian/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃpp/ colourful adj /'kaləfl/ dear adj /dra(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldist/ expert n /'ekspa:t/ famous adj /'ferməs/ film n /film/ film company n /'film ,kampəni/ fingerprint n /'fingəprint/ for sale /fə'seil/ gallery n /,gæləri/ go v /gəu/ good time /,gud 'taim/ grandfather n /'grænfo:ðə(r)/ grandmother n /'grænmaðə(r)/ gym n /dʒm/ happy birt 1	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /ma:tʃ/ April n /'eiprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒu:n/ July n /dʒu'lai/ August n /'ɔ:gəst/ September n /sep'tembə(r)/ October n /ok'təubə(r)/ November n /nəo'vembə(r)/ December n /di'sembə(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fɜ:st/ second adj /ˈsekənd/ third adj /fɔ:θ/ fourth adj /fɔ:θ/ fifth adj /fifθ/ sixth adj /siksθ/ seventh adj /eitθ/ ninth adj /eitθ/ ninth adj /naɪnθ/ tenth adj /tenθ/ eleventh adj /t'levənθ/ twelfth adj /twelfθ/ thirteenth adj /,θɜ:'ti:nθ/	
art n /'o:t/ Austria n /'ostriə/ back n /bæk/ birthday n /'bs:θdet/ born v /bɔ:n/  Canadian adj /kə'neɪdiən/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃop/ colourful adj /'kʌləfl/ dear adj /dɪə(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldɪst/ expert n /'ekspɜ:t/ famous adj /'feɪməs/ film n /film/ film company n /'film ,kʌmpəni/ fingerprint n /'fingəprɪnt/ for sale /fə'seɪl/ gallery n / gæləri/ go v /gəu/ good time /,gud 'taɪm/ grandfather n /'grænfɑ:ðə(r)/ grandmother n /'grænfɑ:ðə(r)/ gym n /dʒɪm/ happy birthday /,hæpi 'bə:θdet/	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /maːtʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒuːn/ July n /dʒuˈlai/ August n /ˈɔːgəst/ September n /sepˈtembə(r)/ October n /okˈtəubə(r)/ November n /nəoˈvembə(r)/ December n /dɪˈsembə(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fɜːst/ second adj /ˈsekənd/ third adj /fɔːθ/ fourth adj /fɔːθ/ fifth adj /fsito/ sixth adj /sɪksθ/ seventh adj /cɪtθ/ ninth adj /naɪnθ/ tenth adj /tenθ/ eleventh adj /ˌθɜːˈtiːnθ/ fourteenth adj /ˌfoːˈtiːnθ/ fourteenth adj /ˌfoːˈtiːnθ/	
art n / o:t/ Austria n / 'pstria/ back n / bæk/ birthday n / 'b3:\thetael/ born v / bo:n/  Canadian adj / ka' netdian/ charity shop n / 'tserati , \sup/ colourful adj / 'kalaft/ dear adj / dra(r)/ do v / du:/ eldest adj / 'eldist/ expert n / 'ekspa:t/ famous adj / 'fermas/ film n / film/ film company n / 'film , kampani/ fingerprint n / 'fingaprint/ for sale / fa'seil/ gallery n / gælari/ go v / gau/ good time / ,gud 'tarm/ grandfather n / 'grænfa:\dos(r)/ grandmother n / 'grænma\dos(r)/ gym n / datm/ happy birthday / ,hæpi 'ba:\thetael/ horrible adj / horabl/ housework = "	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /maːtʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒuːn/ July n /dʒuˈlai/ August n /ˈɔːgəst/ September n /sepˈtembə(r)/ October n /okˈtəubə(r)/ November n /nəoˈvembə(r)/ December n /dɪˈsembə(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fɜːst/ second adj /ˈsekənd/ third adj /fɔːd/ fourth adj /fɔːθ/ fifth adj /fɪfb/ sixth adj /sɪksθ/ seventh adj /eɪtθ/ ninth adj /naɪnθ/ tenth adj /tenθ/ eleventh adj /ˌtlevənθ/ twelfth adj /twelfθ/ thirteenth adj /ˌfɔːˈtiːnθ/ fourteenth adj /ˌfɔːˈtiːnθ/ fifteenth adj /ˌfɪˈtiːnθ/	
art n /o:t/ Austria n / 'pstria/ back n /bæk/ birthday n / 'ba:det/ born v /bo:n/  Canadian adj /ka'nerdian/ charity shop n /'tʃærəti ,ʃpp/ colourful adj /'kaləfl/ dear adj /dra(r)/ do v /du:/ eldest adj /'eldist/ expert n /'ekspa:t/ famous adj /'ferməs/ film n /film/ film company n /'film ,kampəni/ fingerprint n /'fingəprint/ for sale /fə'seil/ gallery n /,gæləri/ go v /gəu/ good time /,gud 'taim/ grandfather n /'grænfo:ðə(r)/ grandmother n /'grænmaðə(r)/ gym n /dʒm/ happy birt 1	January n /dʒænjuəri/ February n /'februəri/ March n /maːtʃ/ April n /'eɪprəl/ May n /mei/ June n /dʒuːn/ July n /dʒuˈlai/ August n /ˈɔːgəst/ September n /sepˈtembə(r)/ October n /okˈtəubə(r)/ November n /nəuˈvembə(r)/ December n /dɪˈsembə(r)/  Ordinal numbers first adj /fɜːst/ second adj /ˈsekənd/ third adj /fɔːθ/ fifth adj /fɪfə/ sixth adj /sɪksə/ seventh adj /sɪksə/ eighth adj /eɪtə/ ninth adj /naɪnə/ tenth adj /tenə/ eleventh adj /tˈlevənə/ twelfth adj /twelfə/ thirteenth adj /ˌfɔːˈtiːnə/ fourteenth adj /ˌfɔːˈtiːnə/	

eighteenth adj /ˌei'ti:n8/ nineteenth adj /ˌnaɪn'ti:n8/ twentieth adj /ˈtwentie8/ thirtieth adj /ˈt83:tie8/



ago adv /a'gat/

#### UNIT 10

at prep /æt, ət/ bus tour n /bas ,tuo(r)/ camping n /kæmpin/ castle n /ka:sl/ clean v /kli:nd/ coffee bar n / kpfi ,ba:(r)/ date n /deit/ diner n /dama(r)/ enjoy v /m'dzot/ free adj /fri:/ get v /get/ horse riding n / hors , raidin/ ice-skating n /ais ,skertin/ India n / mdia/ interested n /'introstid/ lake n /leik/ last adj /la:st/ late adj / adv / leit/ leisure activity n / lezə(r) æk,tɪvəti/ listened v /'lisnd/ lots pron /lots/ lucky adj /'lʌki/ market n / ma:kit/ meal n /mi:l/ milk n /milk/ much pron /mats/ museum n /mju'zi:am/ once adv /wans/ orange juice n / orind3 ,d3u:s/ pasta n /'pæsta/ Really? /'ri:əli/ relaxing adj /n'læksm/ roast beef n /,raust 'bi:f/ rugby n / ragbi/ show ν /ʃəu/ sightseeing n /'saitsi:in/ sit v /'sit/ skiing n /ski:m/ special adj /'spest/ square n /skweə(r)/ start v /sta:t/ sun n /san/ swimming pool n /'swimin ,pu:l/ tour n /tua(r)/ tourist n /'tuerist/ tourist office n /'tuarist pfis/ villa n /'vɪlə/ walk v /'wo:k/

weekend n /,wi:k'end/ windsurfing n / windsa:ftij/ zoo n /zu:/



#### UNIT 11

a little bit /2 'lıtl ,bɪt/	
accident n /æksident/	
act v /ækt/	
afraid adj /o'freid/	
airport n /eepo:t/	
also adv /odsov/	
anywhere adv /'eniwes(r)/ architect n /'a:kitekt/	
Argentina n / a:kneku	
arm n /a:m/	
athlete n /æθli:t/	
barbecue n /ˈbɑːbɪkjuː/ beef n /biːt/	
better adj /'betə(r)/	
bill n /bil/	
blog n /blog/	
boring adj /'bo:rtŋ/	
button n /bʌtn/	
cake n /keik/	
can v /kæn/	
chat v /tʃæt/	
chess n /tʃes/	
communicate v /kəˈmju:nɪkeɪt/	(c)
computer games n pl	
/kəm'pju:tə ,gemz/	
continue v /kənˈtɪnjuː/	
dangerous adj /'deindʒərəs/	
defense n /di'fens/	
department n /di'pa:tment/	
draw v /dro:/	
endless <i>adj /</i> 'endləs/	
everything pron /'evriθm/	
farmer n /'fa:mə(r)/	
film star n / film ,sta:(r)/	
fluently adj /'flu:entli/	
fly v /flat/	
football player n / futboil ,pleia/	
geography n /dʒi'ogrəfi/	
glass n /gla:s/	
grandma n / grænma:/	
green adj /gri:n/	
help v /help/	
history n /'histri/	
horse n /hors/	
hour n /auo(r)/	
hurt v /ha:t/	
interpreter n /m'ta:prito(r)/	
jumbo jet n /,dzambou 'dzet/	
kind adj /kamd/	
lift v /hft/	
lost adi Apeti	THE RESERVE TO SERVE THE PARTY OF THE PARTY

dawn n /do:n/ describe v /di'skraib/ and a mesidy dessert n /di'za:t/ See a by Military and muljanzi diet n / dasət/ dishes n pl /disiz/ may may maustly dollars n pl /'dolaz/ and taking it /mauta reisin/ dry adj /drav/ xwirk a /netwa:k/ feel v /fi:1/ fish n /fil/ res e diuz floors n pl /flo:z/ of a later follow v /ta 'folau/ pasport n / passpost/ followed by /'folaud bai/ ald a /patlet/ forget v /fə'get/ n pl /plemz/ fruit n /fru:t/ possible adj ("possible garden n /'ga:dn/ molem n / problem/ gate n /gest/ pal v puf hair n /hea(r)/ nio n /reidiau/ well /n:əli 'wel/ immediately adv /r'mi:diətli/ must v /n'kwest/ juice n /dzu:s/ nie v /raid/ just adv /dzst/ sik adj (seif) kilometres n pl /'kıləmi:təz/ science n /'sarans/ little adj /'lɪtl/ scientist n /'sarantist/ lunch box n /'lants ,boks/ send v /send/ mains n pl /memz/ there v /Jea(r)/ marathon n /'mærəθən/ slowly adj /'slauli/ smething pron /'sam $\theta$ iŋ/ maybe adv /'meibi/ mayonnaise n / meiə'neiz/ prim v /swim/ meat n /mi:t/ ull adj /to:1/ menu n /'menju:/ the Net n /oo 'net/ mineral water n /'mmərəl ,wo:tə(r)/ ticket n /'tikit/ mixed salad n / mikst 'sælad/ ticket machine n /'tikit ma, si:n/ mobile phone n /məubail 'fəun/ tractor n /'træktə(r)/ move into /mu:v 'mtu, inta/ try v /trat/ turn off v /ta:n 'of/ nearly adv /'nıəli/ use v /ju:z/ normal adj /'nɔ:ml/ /(r)ct:cw/ n retew on the side /ˌɒn ðə 'saɪd/ What's the matter? / wots őə 'mætə(r)/ onion n /, Aniən/ worldwide adj /'ws:ldwaid/ ordering v /'ɔ:dərɪŋ/ young adj /jan/ perhaps adv /pə'hæps/ plate n /pleit/ polite adj /pə'laɪt/ UNIT 12 programs n /'praugræmz/ pull ν /pul/ anyone pron /'eniwan/ report v /ri'po:t/ Anything else? / eniθιη 'els/ apple pie n / æpl 'pai/ rice n /rais/ /bnusi'e / bnuors salmon n /'sæmən/ par u vpa:/ service n /'s3:vis/ beans n pl /bi:nz/ side orders n pl /'said ,o:doz/ bike n /baik/ siesta n /si'estə/ bookshop n /'bukspp/ silly adj /'sıli/ bottle n /'botl/ Sir n /s3:/ bread n /bred/ slices n pl /'slaisiz/ Verrers, u leader smaller adj /'smo:lə(r)/ chicken n /'tsikin/ smallest adj /'smo:list/ chocolate cake n /tipklat keik/ smile n /smail/ coffee shop n /'kpfi .fpp/ smoke v /smouk/ Conditioner n /kən'dı[ənə(r)/ snack n /snæk/ Customers n pl /'kastəməz/ soup n /su:p/ sparkling adj /'spa:klin/

stand v /stænd/ starters n /'sta:taz/ sugar n /'suga(r)/ sunset n /'san, set/ swap v /swop/ take photos v / teik 'fautauz/ thirsty adj /'θ3:sti/ till prep /til/ tomato n /tə'ma:təu/ too many /,tu: 'meni/ too much /,tu: 'mats/ vegetable n /'vedztəbl/ wait v /west/ waitress n /'weitras/ world n /'ws:ld/



# UNIT 13

actions n pl /'æksnz/ angry adj /'ængri/ apartments n pl /ə'pa:tmənts/ arrive v /ə'raɪv/ at the moment /ət öə 'məumənt/ boots n pl /bu:ts/ bored adj /bo:d/ bring v /brin/ build v /bild/ business n /'biznos/ call v /ko:l/ carry v /'kærı/ choose v /tsu:s/ close v /klauz/ cold / kould/ colours n pl /'knləz/ country house n / kantri 'haus/ do well /,du: 'wel/ dress n /dres/ end adj /end/ especially adv /1'spe[əli/ espresso n /e'spresau/ extra adj /'ekstrə/ finish n /'finis/ guess v /ges/ happening n /'hæpənɪŋ/ have a cold v /'hæv ə kəuld/ headache n /'hedeik/ helping n /'helpin/ homeless n /'haumlas/ hostel n /'hostal/ hungry adj /'hʌŋgri/ jeans n pl /dji:nz/ lose v /lu:z/ open v /'aupan/ pleased adj /pli:zd/ poor adj /po:(r)/ private plane n /,praivat 'plein/ public transport n

put on v /put 'on/ remember v /rɪˈmembə(r)/ road n /raud/ scarf n /ska:f/ secret n /'si:krət/ sell v /sel/ shirt  $n / \int 3:t/$ shorts n pl /so:ts/ skirt n /sk3:t/ sleep v /'sli:p/ socks n pl /soks/ someone pron /'samwan/ spend money v /,spend 'mani/ spend time v /,spend 'taım/ strawberry n /'stro:bəri/ successful adj /sək'sesfl/ suit n /su:t/ take off n /'terk of/ teenage adj /'ti:neɪdʒ/ tie n /tai/ trousers n pl /'trauzəz/ turn on  $\nu$  /,ts:n 'on/ turn off v / ta:n 'of/ TV programme n/,ti: 'vi: ,prəugræm/ video n /'vidiəu/ wear v /'wea/ window n /'windəu/ win v /wm/ work v /ws:k/ worried ν /'wʌrid/ worth adj /w3:θ/ Colours black adj /blæk/

blue adi /blu:/ brown adj /braun/ green adj /qri:n/ grey adj /greɪ/ red adj /red/ white adj /wait/ yellow adj /'jeləu/



# **UNIT 14**

abroad v /ə'bro:d/ across adv /ə'krps/ all year round /,o:l jiə 'raund/ along prep /ə'lon/ assistant n /ə'sıstənt/ autoroute n /'o:təuru:t/ balcony n /'bælkəni/ banana n /bə'na:nə/ begin v /bi'gin/ Belgium n /'beld39m/ biology n /bar'plədʒi/ bistro n /'bi:strau/ boat n /bout/ bridge n /brid3/

/,pablik 'trænspo:t/

	mas/		South Africa n /,sao0 'æfrikə/ souvenir n /,su:və'nıə(r)/ steak n /steik/		
	n /kæmpæ/  segul n /kansel/  segul n of /kansel/  segul n of /kansel/	The state of the s	sunshine n /'sansain/		
	while with / keafall/ while w/, tjek 'in/		tent n /tent/		1 30 3
	10 to 11 ( Uto		there adv /ðeə(r)/		<del></del>
	MAP 4.01 . 11		transport n /'trænspo:t/ trip n /trip/		
	a fell /kemistiv  aminty n /ka'nekfn/  american Aost/		tunnel n /'tʌnl/		
	Apst/		women n pl /'wimin/		
	THE STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE P		Zambia n /'zæmbiə/		
	tabilla cale!			<u>-</u>	
	my npl /doktor				
	ad A Also Alko'nomiks/				
-	ent a Line h \tips.upunks/				
١	Drope at Avents				
	retnis " /10'zrem/				
	cam n /n/zetta caplain v /k/splein/ captessions n pl /k/sprefnz/				
	afrancia.				
1	Mile of Churche(r)/				
	" / Grad of				
ı	hope v /houp/				
	hore v/houps housewife n /hauswarf/ howlong? adv /,hau 'lon/				
	how long! dar ", the				
	imagine v // interestriction (mportant n /im/po:tont/				
	. Majord		•		
	journalist n / 033.1131130				
	know v /nocv/				
	local adj rlaukl/				
	medicine n / medsn/ modern languages n pl			•	
	/medn 'længwid3tz/	1			
	motorbike n /'moutobark/	1	· -		
	more v /mu:v/		-		
	nearby adj /'n10bat/ nervous adj /'n10:v2s/		-		
	overnight adv /,ouvo'nait/		<u>.</u> *		
	painter n /'peinta(r)/		-		
	Physics n /fiziks/				
	piece of information n				
	plans n pl /plænz/	7.10			
	pleasure n /'pleas(r)/	- 49	2002		
	Psychology n /sar'koladai/				
	quickly adv /'kwikli/ quite often /,kwait 'pfn/				
	research company				
	11 53.11 KAPOPON 1/	19			
	ride n /raid/	•	2000年		
	rucksack n / rakemby	•			
	THE PARTY OF THE P				
	se you again	1100			
	/si: ju ogen 'su:n/				ed list 139
	The state of the s	The state of the s	4 (1985) (44)	Wo	ord list 139
	THE RESIDENCE THE PARTY OF THE	the state of the s			

# Pairwork pages



**W** UNIT 2 p14

# **PRACTICE**

### Cities and countries

2 Work with a partner.

Look at the photos on p14. Look at the photos on this page. Student A Student B

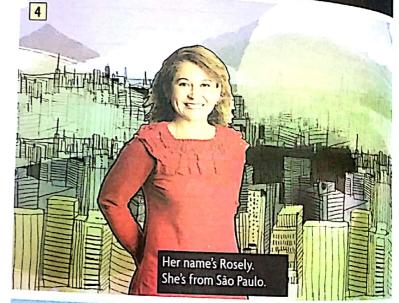
Ask questions and write the answers.

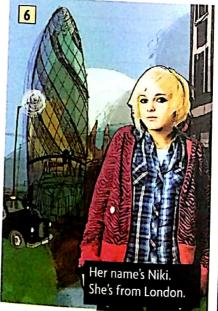
What's her name? Where's she from?

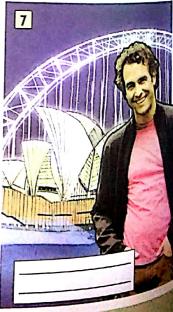
> What's his name? Where's he from?













name's Ahmed. Strom Tripoli.

# **UNIT 8** p59

# **PRACTICE**

# Two different rooms

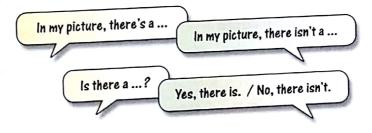
3 Work with a partner.

Student A

Look at the picture on p59. Look at the picture on this page. Student B



Your pictures are different. Talk about them to find differences.





# Irregular verbs

Base forn	n Past Simple	Base form	Past Simple
be	was/were	lose	lost
begin	began	make	made
bring	brought	mean	meant
build	built	meet	met
buy	bought	pay	paid
can	could	put	put
catch	caught	read /ri:d/	read /red/
come	came	ride	rode
cost	cost	run	ran
do	did	say	said
draw	drew	see	saw
drink	drank	sell	sold
drive	drove	send	sent
eat	ate	sit	sat
feel	felt	sleep	slept
find	found	speak	spoke
fly	flew	spell	spelt
forget	forgot	spend	spent
get	got	stand	stood
give	gave	swim	swam
go	went	take	took
have	had	teach	taught
hear	heard	think	thought
know	knew	understand	understood
learn	learnt/learned	wear	wore
leave	left	win	win

# nonetic symbols

as in pen/pen/
sin big/big/
tea/ti:/
do /du:/
at /kmt/
20 /02/1/
sin go
v as in very /'veri/
s is in son/san/
as in zoo /zu:/
V as in live /liv/
m as in my/mat/
3 b as in now/nau/
y h as in happy /'hæpi/
5 of as in red/red/
by as in yes /jes/
asin want/wont/
<sup>1</sup> θ as in thanks /θæŋks/
3 V as in the /ða/
I
y as in television /'talanger's
win child/tforld/
y as in German //-
as in English /'inglist/
g-set / njgnj/

Vow	els	-	100
25	/i:/	as in	see /si:/
26	/1/	as in	his /hɪz/
27	/i/	as in	twenty /'twenti/
28	/e/	as in	ten /ten/
29	/æ/	as in	bag/bæg/
30	/a:/	as in	father /ˈfɑ:ðə/
31	/D/	as in	hot /hpt/
32	/ɔ:/	as in	morning /'mo:nɪŋ/
33	/ʊ/	as in	football /'futbo:l/
34 35	/u:/	as in	you /ju:/
36	/ <sub>\L</sub> /	as in	sun /sʌn/
37	/3:/ /ə/	as in	learn /lɜːn/
<i>31</i>	/ə/	as in	letter /ˈletə/

Dipr	ithongs	(two vo	owels together)	
38	/eɪ/	as in	name /neim/	
39	/აʊ/	as in	no /nəu/	
40	/aɪ/	as in		
41	/aʊ/	as in	my /maɪ/	
42	/21/	as in	how/hau/	
43	/12/	as in	boy/boi/	
44	/ea/		hear /hɪə/	
45	De la Santa	as in	where /weə/	
15	/טə/	as in	tour /tʊə/	

### OXFORD NAMES OF STREET

Care Country Rule (Piller 91) 800 Chine the heart the act of mineral of the Company of which & wild in grantes Market brown & red one wante the planties of the production of antisymbol the

CARRY NEW YORK

Austriana Capa Steam Car on Salaum Speny Keepy Cornells Could be report Machiel Moderne Moure of Asset Are this Chargelia Styles Stylester

With offices II.

Commission Asserted Street Chick Check Republic Steine Green Comments Stragger Ray Japan west trap ways a south back Surfrecisco (Station) foreign circular Victoria

CONCRETED OFFICES EXCITED BY INCOMEND transfer researches of Chattered Underweastly Physics in the UK and in certain eches countries

a Chilled Children y Press 2010

The move rights of the author have been asserted Database 18th Chibrid University Pers (maked) Rist published new 2014 DOLS DOLS DOLS DOLS 10987634321

### No unauchorized photocypying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication major de regionales de la forma derecharages de spate or transmitted, in any form or by any means, and the bear became an entitle of Infliency (mercy) as a seeff growing brights the land, or under recens agreed with the appropriate ericuya arousawan edap estapagrapa MATER MIL MUSIUS, SCIETARISMEST SERVINGS SERVINGS of the allow should be sent to the SLT Rights Department, Childred University Press, at the THE STEELS

You must not circulate this book in any other Ninding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content.

ISBN: 978 0 19 471375 7

Printed in Spain

### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Miscrations by: Theu Britte pp. 41, 55t Amathan Rutton p.86 Chris Boon p.61 (Canadian flagt Gill Button 27. 15. 28. 18. 24 (James Board), 46. 47. 50, 59. 70, 75. 53, 98 (cooking, driving etc.), 102, 103, 110, 126, 141; Rowie Christopher Designs p. 81 Claire Littlejohn pp.63. 78: Joe McLaren pp.11, 93, 104; Patrick Morgan/ Debutart pp.1+15. Gavin Reece pp.38 (dinner party). 52, 56, 57, 58, 68-9, 97, 98 (Niger)), 98; Marrin Sanders p.60 (map): Kach Walker pp.32, 92, 96

Commissioned photography by Careth Rolen pp.6, 7 Public, Miki, Seni, 3 (all enveys Ni, 8, 12, 13 (b)), 14 Resely (middle), pp 15 (Resely) 20, 22, p.23 male in pink shirt & female, 24, 27 Paddy McNab & family. 34, 35, 50, 54, 55, 72, 73, 80 Oliver, Margaret, \$1, 58, 89, 140 Rosely, Stephen Ogilyy p 42

The publisher would like to thank the following for their help with providing a location: The Ricchemistry Building (Cafe): First Great Western (Oxford Railway Station). Rour Pillars Hotel (Oxford Spires), Kendall Crescent Post Office; lizziejames; The North Wall Arts Centre; OUP Private Dining Room: The Oxford English Centre: Portabello Restaurant, Rowlands Pharmack St Barnabas' Primary School: The House: The Town Garden, North Parade; The Woodsnock Road Deli (The (where there etc.) With special thanks for help with have and markets as The Chart English Centre; The Ellies Brown Greek)

has moving one age in about the tellowing for permitteen in represent the following photographic Alamy pp. 13 (Xurung Sall Sachmann) 13 (Tanang Staine Marrington IIII, 14 (Chinese neurop Nedchopaticks com LLC. 15 (Kussian man Kussell Blake). 15 (Libyan many than i bracers to charger State benefing MARKAL 12 gard with hedines Wester, 17 young boy has Short (measure drunking coster, they Segre), 17 (man plantic stell) for unified 18 (teacher Gabe Palmers 21 (There's Charles et CWell 22 (mountain) Peres Michael 23 joint high Tour Hopes, 23 (women currying Nesty-Advan Sherrattl. 25 (http://apprass/Peter Scholest 29 (compleximage Source), 29 (chiler complet lange State Part), Convertal randohn Simmons). 33 American feestall player/Terra linages), 36 (street severe ladid level 32 captheoring Picture Library), 37 (SandSug-US US V) Physography), 37 (costi<del>es</del>) Michael Smill, 57 (Permention Appetit), 39 (iphone) gremarel . W (critter Faul Bradiforth), 40 (watch/Caro), 40 (ornate rathway clock tain Masterron), 40 (clear alarm check strategarche), 40 (check/Nick David), 44 Cape Onl house, left Greenbergh ++ (bouch/David Norman Physiography), 3.5 (Cohlen Gate Bridge) Area lauges (Smbbl) 33 (Seuses)[on Arnold Images Lath 57, 58 jusen in yellow shirt Queerstock, Inc.). 60 (flabermen Panita Pelimont), 60 (trolley bus) David Well 60 (sky train Pep Rogel 60 (Neach/Chris Howes Wild Places Photographyl, 60 (skiers/Chris Cheatlel & skylmollep Roigl & (couple)Morgan Lane Phongraphy), 65 (silhouette of elderly man) Carol 63 (xills werre of purents and child/Kirsty Pagererk of sulficuerre of mother and children Yuri Masslovi, 74 pinen eating Andrew Fox), 76 (formula t capkohentacht (computer game Pavid J Green), To gurl on have been White Photos. 76 (walkers) Patrick Rien), To marry player Paul Ridsdales, 77 (Thoran Newestingerbroker), 77 (comple at airport) Aspiterimages Polka Deck 78 (driving in mountains) David Ironsl, 85 (Mike/Clowlingges), 85 (Lauren) Radius Images), 87 (rourists reading map/Richard Levinel, 87 (office workers/Tetra Images), 87 (buying parking ticket/Chris Cooper-Smith), 90 (Jade/R.A.E. Inc.), 93 (Caroline)Amana Images inc.), 93 (Arab male) Crapheast), 94 (waiter/lupiter/mages/RananaStock), 101 (teenage News Photofusion Picture Library), 101 (eitherly couple) Paul Raidesare), 103 (couple have rea/ Peter Sowater), 106 (man with map/Colin Hawkins), 111 (waving at capGoGo Images Corporation), 111 (waving at friends/Kadius Images), 140 (Chinese woman Redehopoticks.com U.Cl. 141 (Russian man/ Russell Riake), 141 (American woman/i love images), 141 (Libyan man Itani Imagesh Cadmium p.91 (fishing) Car Photo Library p. 100 (Lamborghini); Carolin Contino REL Nex Features p. 69 (Teri Horton with paintings Chris Roon p.29 (magazines), 37 (Christel Dictionary), 40 (aPhone); Corbis UK Ltd. pp. 13 (Yong Justin Guariglia). 15 (man talking/Colorblind huages Slend huages), 33 (man pulling thee Fancy) Weet, 49 (chikhren M. Dominik Tefa), 53 (Liberty Bell) Petra Images), 57 (weman on phone/Fancy/Veer), 60)61 (Clus Harker Vancouver)koe Puste Raga), 66 (Mosart The Gallery Collection), 66 (Stuce Lee/Cat's Collection), 67 (Van Glyt) The Gallery Collection). 63 (Eackson Politick/Riskslph Burckhantt/Sygma). 76 (sever player/Kam): Euris), 76 (runner/Olix Wirtingerk, 76 (biking/jamie Kripke), 76 (tennis/ Patrik Glandinol, 76 (skier) Ranch Faris), 76 (ice skater) Patrik Glandino), 78 (golf/Richard Schultz), 77 (ski lift) Jon Hicks 1, 90 (architect Strauss/Curtis), 80 (athlete) Russell Clenister/Tetal 32 (woman horse riding). 103 (beautachestack Hollingsworth), 108 (family with capitlans Neleonan Tetal, 108 (woman studying) Cultural, 111 (waving from train/Comstock Select). Getty hanges pp. 10 (house/David Ohver/Taxi), 13 (Kerin Yellow Deg Productions). 16 (comple with umbrellaComstock), 16 (New York trafficPanoramic Images), 23 (men with map/James Woodson), 26

(Sydney/Travel Ink/Gallo Images), 26 (young girly Jupiter Images/Workbook Stock), 26 (young boy) AAGAMIA), 29 (shoes/Paul Viant/Digital Vision), 29 (young woman jumping/Image Source), 36 (boys with surfboard/Hans Neleman), 36 (businessman) Matt Henry Gunther), 48 (Paris sketch/Eastnine Inc.), 48 (woman/Ryan McVay), 66 (Umm Kalthoum) Time & Life Pictures). 74 (sweeping floor/Yellow Dog Productions/Lifesize), 74 (shopping bags David Woolley/Lifesize), 74 (homework/Comstock Images/ Jupiterimages), 80 (pilot/Sascha Schuermann/AFF), 80 (interpreter/Dominique Faget/AFP), 85 (laptops/ lan McKinnell/Photographer's Choice), 87 (packing) Leukos/Photographer's Choice RF), 92 (Masumi) Antony Nagelmanh/laxi), 92 (dining table from above/Tom Schierlitz/The Image Bank), 93 (chicken salad James Baigrie/Riser), 100 (big house/Altrendo travel), 100 (man in suit/Matthias Clamer/Stone), 100 (plane/@ 2004 Katsuhiko Tokunaga/Check Six), 105 (older couple/Olivia Barr/Photonica). 111 (giving gift) Comstock Images), 111 (students/Digital Vision); iStockphoto pp.10 (home office/Dean Turner), 10 (burger/Lise Gagne), 16 (central park), 85 (Charlotte), 90 (Mike), 90 (Kelly/Sheryl Griffin); Library of Congress p.64 (Jane Austen); Linographic p.10 (bag); Liz & John Soars pp. 17 (toddler eating): Martyn F. Chillmaid pp.85 (Oliver), 85 (Alan); Nikon p.37 (camera); Oxford University Press pp.8 (Anna & Marie), 10 (camera) Judith Collins), 13 (Laszlo/Gareth Boden), 13 (Simon/ Image Source). 14 (English girl/Polka Dot Images). 19 Akik Miah, 21 (shop assistant/Chris King), 37 (oranges), 39 (handbag/Stephen Hawkins), 53 (trolley carfon Arnold Images), 65 (young woman/Photodisc), 74 (cinema audience/Image 100), 74 (playing football), 76 (windsurfer/Photodisc), 78 (sightseeing/Image Source), 85 (Lauren/Photodisc), 85 (Mike/Seth Joel/ White), 87 (couple talking/Chris King), 90 (presents/D. Hurst), 93 (kabsa), 111 (broken pot/Richard Lewisohn/ Image Source), 140 (English girl/Polka Dot Images); www.photolibrary.com pp.7 (shaking hands), 13 (Hayley), 14 (Hungarian man), 14 (Australian man), 15 (Ashlee/Image Source). 23 (coffee shop/BlueMoon lmages), 29 (two girls/Sonntag/beyond fotomedia), 29 (boy & girl/Image Source), 29 (couple at gate/Monkey Business Images Ltd/Stockbroker), 33 (brother and sister/Jaume Gual), 37 (Moroccan tea/Fabian von Poser/Imagebroker.net), 37 (Chicken fajitas/Frank Wieder Photography/Fresh Food Images), 44 (Lois/ Jupiter Images/Polka Dot Images), 44 (chess/Fancy), 49 (violin/Navier Subias/age fotostock), 78 (family meal/Monkey Business Images Ltd/Stockbroker). 78 (family meeting/Corbis), 80 (athlete/Masakazu Watanabe/Aflo Photo Agency), 87 (footballers/Steve Hix/Somos Images), 93 (bento box), 107 (train/Claver Carroll), 108 (doctors/Image 100), 140 (Hungarian Man), 140 (Australian man); Press Association Images pp.66 (Shakespeare/PA WIRE), 67 (Benazir Bhutto) LANDOV), 67 (Ayrton Senna/Sutton Motorsports); Rex Features pp.32 (girl eating ice cream/0JO Images), 66 (Princess Diana), 80 (farmer on tractor)WestEnd61); psd graphics.com p.13 (map); Robert Harding Picture Library pp. 27 (fishing village, Ireland/Bruno Barbiet). 36 (old people under tree/Cubolmages), 36 (grape pickers/Upperhall Ltd); Science Photo Library pp.18 (doctor); Shutterstock pp. 10 (television/Michael D Brown), 10 (telephone), 23 (asking directions/Factoria singular fotografia), 33 (tennis/Junial Enterprises), 39 (jeans), 76 (swimming/Schmid Christophe), 76 (fishing/Mikael Damkier), 85 (Edna/Martina Ebel); Toyota (GB) PLC p.10 (Toyota Prius); Studio 7 Designs p. 13; Zooid Pictures pp. 10 (book/Ned Coomes), 10 (photograph/Ned Coomes), 10 (bus/Taryri Cass), 10 (sandwich/Ned Coomes), 39 (sandwich/Ned Coomes), 39 (dictionary/Ned Coomes), 39 (chocolate) Although every effort has been made to contact copyright holders before publication, this has not been possible in some cuses. We applicate for any apparent infringement of copyrights and if notified, the publisher will be pleased to

rectify any errors or emissions at the earliest opportunity.

# New Headway Plus Beginner for students:

Student's Book
 Workbook without key
 978 0 19 471375 7
 978 0 19 471382 5

with Writing Support CD-ROM

 Workbook with key 978 0 19 471381 8 with Writing Support CD-ROM

Workbook audio CD 978 0 19 471380 1

# New Headway Plus Beginner for teachers:

Teacher's Book
 Class audio CDs
 978 0 19 471378 8
 978 0 19 471379 5



# New Headway Plus Beginner

# The world's most trusted English course

New Headway Plus is the course teachers and learners can rely on. Why? An authoritative integrated syllabus, motivating topics, and clearly focused tasks combine with a real understanding of what works in the classroom. It all makes for effective teaching and effective learning. Specially adapted for the Middle East and North Africa, this course combines the best of English language teaching methodologies to help students use English accurately and fluently.

# Key features

- Fresh, medern design, which makes activities easy to follow.
- A realistic, well-supported syllabus, offering English for the real beginner.
- A measured, step-by-step approach, with careful recycling.
- A solid foundation of grammar, with clear presentations, self-check exercises in the Grammar Spot, and detailed explanation in the Grammar Reference.
- Integrated skills work, where all four skills are developed in context.
- Useful vocabulary and collocations, with everyday language in everyday situations.
- Writing Support CD-ROM with the accompanying Workbook which offers basic writing practice.

New Headway online: www.oup.com/elt/headway

Liz and John Soars have many years of experience as teachers and teacher trainers. They are best known for their creation of the *Headway* series, which has won international acclaim and has redefined standards for English language coursebooks.

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

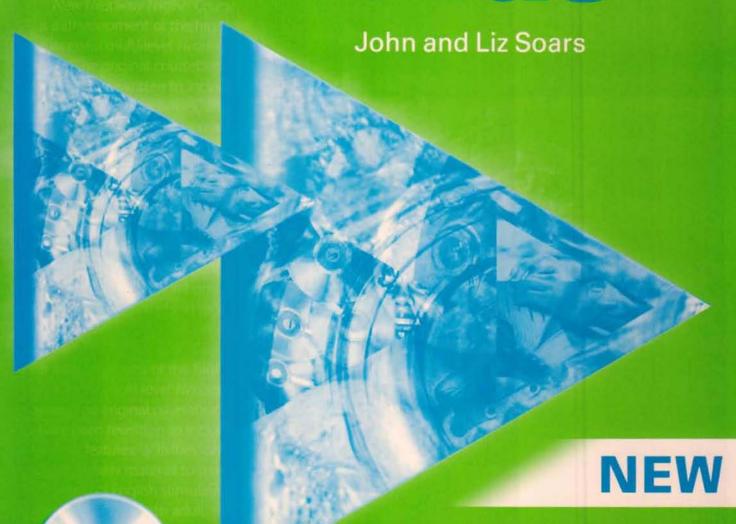
www.oup.com/elt





Beginner Workbook with key







with Writing Support CD-ROM (2)



**OXFORD** 

# Readway Plus

Beginner
Workbook with key

with Writing Support CD-ROM

John and Liz Soars

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

# Try the WRITING SUPPORT CD-ROM and improve your writing skills

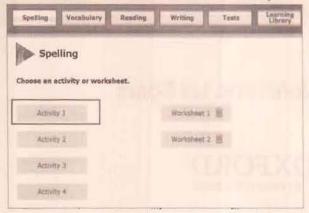


- Practise your handwriting
- Improve your spelling
- Write and punctuate sentences
- · Improve your reading
- Revise your vocabulary

# 8 modules of practice material 1 for every 2 units of the Workbook

### Choose a practice area Module 0 = Start up Each module contains: Spelling Vocabulary Reading Writing Tests Library Module 1 = Units 1 and 2 SPELLING Spelling VOCABULARY Module 2 = Units 3 and 4 READING Choose a module. Module 3 = Units 5 and 6 WRITING Module 4 = Units 7 and 8 MODULED HODULE 4 plus Module 5 = Units 9 and 10 MODULE 1 MODULE 5 TESTS Module 6 = Units 11 and 12 MODULE 2 MODULE 6 LEARNING LIBRARY Module 7 = Units 13 and 14 HODULE 3 MODULE 7

# Choose an interactive activity

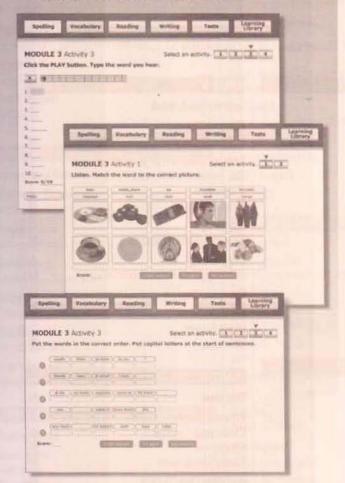


# Print a worksheet

Spelling	Reading	Writing	Tests	Literaing Library
Spelling				
Choose en activity ar wo	ksheet.			
Activity 1		Workshest 1		
Activity I		Worksheet Z	0	
Activity 3				
Activity 4				

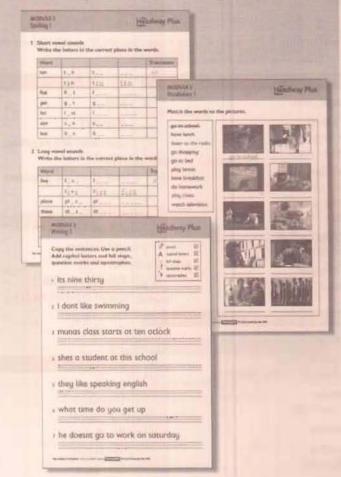
# ON-SCREEN ACTIVITIES You can...

- · listen and click on words, sounds, and sentences
- · listen and type words and sentences
- listen and read sentences and texts



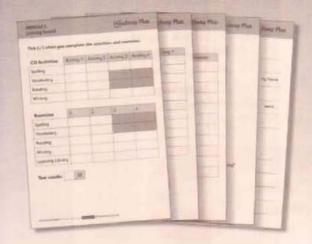
# PRINTABLE WORKSHEETS You can...

- · do word puzzles
- · copy words, sentences, and texts
- · read simple texts and answer questions



# You can ...

- · use the LEARNING LIBRARY to revise and record your progress . . .
- · do a TEST after each module to track your progress . . .







# Contents

You will need to listen to the CD for some answers. If you don't have the CD, you can read the tapescripts on pp88-91.

UNIT 1	Father.	UNIT 3		UNIT 5	44
Introductions	4	Jobs	16	Sports/food/drink	28
am/are/is		is or isn't	16	Things I like	
Nice to meet you	5	Questions and negatives		I like coffee	29
How are you?	5	is/isn't	17	Present Simple – I/you/they	
Vocabulary		Negatives and questions		The swimmer Michael Phelps	30
What's this in English? Numbers 1-10	6	I'm not/aren't	18	Questions Negatives	30
Plurais	7	Listening			30
Everyday English		An interview with Ella	19	Listening Gracie and her parents	31
Good morning!	8	Vocabulary		Vocabulary	31
Don't forget!		Revision	19	Languages and nationalities	31
Revision	9	Everyday English		Everyday English	7.0
		Social expressions (1)	20	How much is it?	32
UNIT 2		Don't forget!		Don't forget!	
Countries	10	Revision	21	Revision	33
am/are/is		TINICE			
Her name's / She's from	11	UNIT 4		UNIT 6	
Listening		Possessives	22	The time	34
At a wedding	12	Possessive 's my/our/her	22 23	Present Simple – he/she	0.500
Questions	12	Vocabulary	40	Cathy and George	35
Adjectives		The family	23	Questions	35
good/awful	12	has/have		Cathy's bedroom	36
Reading		Alfie and his family	24	do/does/am/is/are	36
Where are they?	13	Listening	-	Pronunciation	
Listening		Alfie	24	-s at the end of a word	37
She's from Berlin	14	Reading		Prepositions	
Everyday English		Who's happy?	25	in/at/on	37
Numbers 11-30	14	Vocabulary		Vocabulary	
Don't forget!		Revision	26	Words that go together	37
Revision	15	Pronunciation		Reading	
		they're or their?	26	Barack Obama	38
		Everyday English		Everyday English	
		The alphabet	26	Days of the week	39
		On the phone	26	Don't forget!	2000
		Don't forget!		Revision	39
		Revision	27		

UNIT 7		UNIT 10		like and would like	
Questions		Past Simple		like cooking/would like to cook	7.
A questionnaire	40	Regular verbs	58	Pronunciation	
Question words	41	Pronunciation /t/ /d/ /ɪd/	58	/e/ /i:/ /u:/ /ɪ/	7
Why? Because	41	Telling stories	58	Vocabulary	
Pronouns and possessives		Kevin's Week	59	Food	7
me/him	42	Questions and negatives	59	Reading	
my/his	42	Making conversation		English food	7
this/that	42	Was it a good match?	60	Don't forget!	
Vocabulary		Time expressions	60	Revision	7
Adjectives - happy/miserable	43	in/at/on		Kevision	
		Vocabulary		UNIT 13	and the last
Everyday English Can I?	44	Sport and leisure activities	61		
	44	go or play?	61	Colours and clothes	7
Don't forget!	46	Reading		Present Continuous	
Revision	45	A holiday in Disneyland	62	She's wearing/talking	7
		Everyday English		Questions	7
UNIT 8		Going sightseeing	63	Negatives	7
Rooms and furniture	46		05	Present Simple or Continuous?	
	40	Don't forget! Revision		wearlare wearing	7
There is/There are	24	Revision	63	Reading	
In the garden	47	TINISTAN	-	Today's different	7
Prepositions		UNIT 11		Vocabulary	
on/under/next to	48	can/can't		Opposite verbs	7
Vocabulary		cook I run fast	64	Everyday English	
Revision - Vancouver	48	Questions and short answers	65	What's the matter?	8
Everyday English		Negatives	65		0
Directions	49	Pronunciation		Don't forget!	
Reading		/kən/ and /ka:nt/	65	Revision	8
Berkhamsted	50	Adverbs		HINE I	
Don't forget!	7.0	very well / not at all	66	UNIT 14	
Revison	51	Requests and offers		Future plans	
Revisor	31	Can I? Can you?	66	going to study/work/travel	8
UNIT 9	-	Reading		What are you doing tomorrow?	8
		Meet ASIMO	67	Grammar revision	
Saying years	52	Vocabulary		All tenses	8
was/were		Adjective + noun	68	Irregular verbs	8
was born	53	AT THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF	00	Vocabulary revision	
Questions	53	Everyday English	60	Lists - Monday/Tuesday	8
Negatives	53	Everyday problems	68	Words that go together	8
Reading		Don't forget!	441	Form filling	
Bruce Lee and Princess Diana	54	Revision	69	Questions and answers	8
Past Simple				Everyday English	
Irregular verbs	55	UNIT 12		Social expressions (2)	8
Vocabulary		What's in the basket?	70	Don't forget!	
have/do/go	56	some/any		Revision	8
Everyday English		Adam's shop	70		
Months and dates	56	Questions	70	Tapescripts	8
Don't forget!		l'd like		Answer Key	9
Revision	57	I'd like a I I'd like to	71		
1101101111	37	18322 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19	0.00	Phonetic symbols	10



Offering things What would you like?

# Writing Support CD-ROM (inside back cover)

71

101

Spelling Writing Vocabulary Test Reading Learning Library



- Introductions am/are/is What's this in English?
- Numbers 1-10 Plurals Good morning!

Hello!

# Introductions

1 Complete the conversations.

l'm name's



1 A Hello. I'm Adam.



2 B Hello. \_\_\_\_\_ name's Bonnie.



3 C Hello. My\_\_\_\_\_ Chris.

2 T1.2 Complete the conversations.

What's My (x2) name your



1 A I'm Alex. What's your name? B Belle.



\_\_\_\_ name's Kate. \_\_\_name? What's

C Charlie.



3 H I'm Harry. What's your \_\_\_\_\_? A \_\_\_\_\_ name's Alfie.

# am/are/is

# Nice to meet you

- 3 T1.3 Complete the conversations.
  - 1 A Carl, this is Liliana Moretti.
    - C Hello, Liliana. My name's Carl Erikson.
    - L Hello, Carl. Nice \_\_\_\_\_ you.
  - 2 B Ruby, \_\_\_\_\_ Husain Malouf.
    - R Hello, Husain. \_\_\_\_\_ meet you.
    - **H** \_\_\_\_\_\_ you.



- 3 C Liliana, \_\_\_\_\_ Ruby. Ruby, \_\_\_\_\_
  - L Hello, Ruby. \_\_\_\_ Liliana Moretti.
  - R Hello. \_\_\_\_\_\_ Ruby Harrison.
  - L \_\_\_\_\_ you.
  - R And \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Are these first names or surnames?

Smith	John	Eddie	McKenna	Luke	
Robert	Bond	Ruby	Johnson	Alice	
Harry	Sophie	Mike	Blackman	Catherine	

John	
Smith	

# How are you?

5 T1.4 Put the words in order to make conversations.



- 1 are / you / How
  - E Hi, Ben. How are you ?

thanks / Fine

B \_\_\_\_\_\_, Eddie. And you?

OK / I'm / thank

E \_\_\_\_\_ you



- 2 you/How/are
  - C Hello, Michael.

well / very / you / And

M I'm \_\_\_\_\_, thanks. ?



- 3 Alice / Hi
  - R \_\_\_\_\_\_. How are you?

How / you / are

A I'm fine, thank you, Robert. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

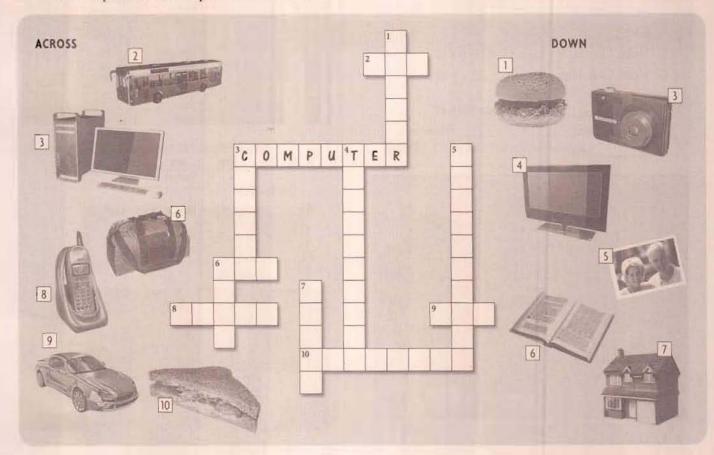
thank / well / Very

R \_\_\_\_\_\_ you.

# Vocabulary

# What's this in English?

6 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.



# Numbers 1-10

7 Write the numbers in full.

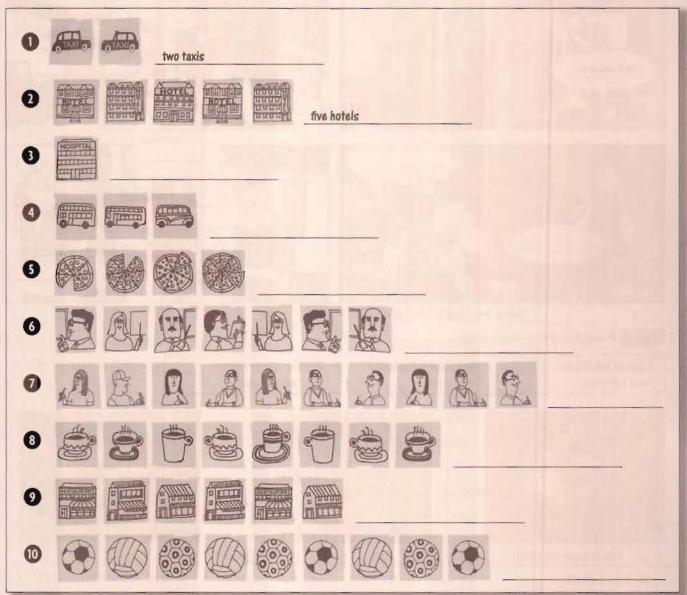


8 T1.5 Write the numbers you hear.

4 8

# Plurals

9 Write what you see in the pictures.



10 T1.6 Listen and write the words in the chart.

restaurants	hotels
buses	footballs
taxis	hospitals
sandwiches	coffees
houses	pizzas
teachers	students
photographs	

/s/	/z/	/12/
restaurants	hotels	buses
	71 10.4	
	Just William	

Listen and repeat.

# **Everyday English**

# Good morning!

11 T1.7 Write the conversations.

Goodbye! Good morning! Good night! Good afternoon!









12 T1.8 Complete the conversations.

A cup of tea, please. Have a nice day! What a lovely day today! Sleep well! Bye! See you tomorrow! Bye! See you later!



1 A What a lovely day today!

B It is, isn't it?



B Yes, After school.



B And you.



4 A \_\_\_\_\_\_ B Certainly.

5 A B Bye!

B Good night!

8 Unit 1 · Hello!

# Don't forget!

# Grammar

# 13 Complete the chart.

Verb to l	be	Short form
Ĭ	am	
You		You're
lt		de la

# 14 Complete the sentences with words in the box.

	m are 's
1	I'm James.
2	What your name?
3	How you?
4	My name Yasmina.
5	I fine, thanks.
6	you OK?
7	It a book.

# 15

W	rite the	correct answer.
		name's Anne.
		b My
2	How a	re?
	a you	b your
3	What	your name
	a 's	
4		'm very well.
	a I	ь Му
5	I'm fin	e, thank
	a you	b your
6	What's	name?
		b your

# 16 Underline the correct answer.

- 1 A Hello, Alice!
  - B I'm very well. / Hi, John!
- 2 A How are you, Alice?
  - B I'm fine, thanks. / Nice to meet you.
- 3 A Nice to meet you.
  - B I'm fine. / And you.
- 4 A Goodbye!
  - B Bye! See you tomorrow! / Thank you.
- 5 A What's this in English?
  - B Is book / It's a book.

# Punctuation

# 17 Write capital letters where they are necessary.

1	i'm peter. what's your name? I'm Peter. What's your name?	
2	my name's anne.	
3	what's this in english?	
4	it's a computer.	
5	how are you, miki?	
6	i'm fine, thank you.	



2

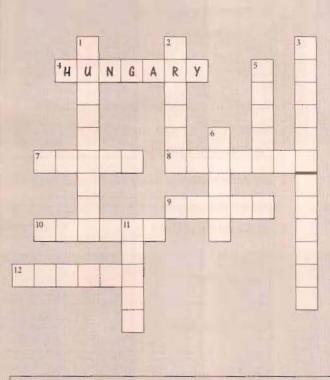
Countries • am/are/is • Her name's ... / She's from ...

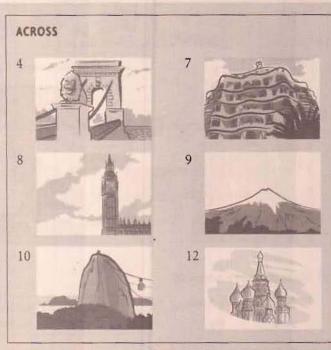
Questions • Adjectives good/awful ... • Numbers 11–30

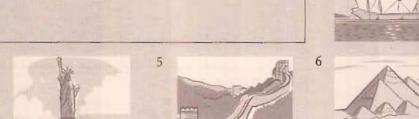
Your world

# Countries

1 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.







2 T2.1 Write the countries from the crossword in the correct column.

•	00	• •	000	.0.0	
Spain	China	Japan			

DOWN

1

Listen and repeat.

10 Unit 2 · Your world

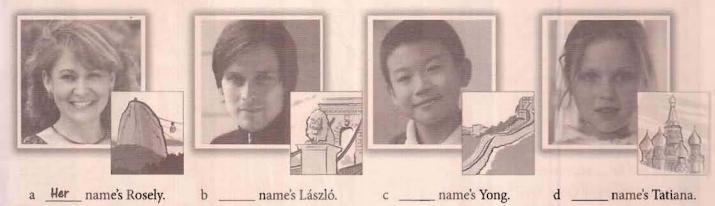
# am/are/is

# Her name's ... / She's from ...

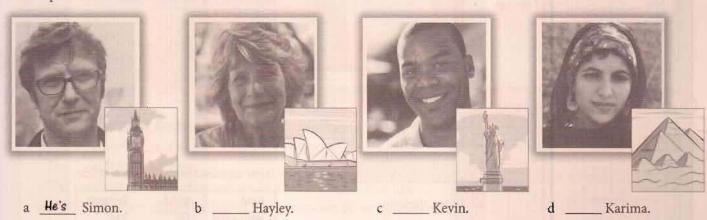
3 Write the words in the correct column.

she James Anne his Tatiana her Henry he	9	she
	d	James

4 Complete the sentences with the words His or Her.



5 Complete the sentences with the words She's or He's.



6 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

S	he's	He's Her Hi	S
1	His	_ name's Yong. He's	from China.
2		_ name's Hayley	from Australia.
3		_ name's Karima	from Egypt.
4		_ name's Kevin	from the United States.
5		_ name's Rosely	from Brazil.
6		_ name's Simon	from England.
7		_ name's Tatiana	from Russia.
8		name's Lázló.	from Hungary.

7 T2.2 Listen and match a question in A with an answer in B.

A	В
1 What's her name?	a His name's David.
2 Where's she from?	1 b Her name's Carla.
3 What's his name?	c He's from England.
4 Where's he from?	d She's from Italy.

# Listening

# At a wedding

- 8 T2.3 Listen and complete the conversation.
  - J Hello! What's your name?
  - S My name's Svana.
  - J Hi, Svana. \_\_\_\_\_ Jenny.
  - S \_\_\_\_\_, Jenny.
  - J \_\_\_\_\_ are you, Svana?
  - S I'm \_\_\_\_\_, thanks.
  - J Where \_\_\_\_\_ from, Svana?
  - S \_\_\_\_\_Oslo.
  - J Oh! Is that in Sweden?
  - S No! \_\_\_\_\_\_ in Norway, of cot
  - J Oh, yes! Er ... of course!
  - S Look at that girl! Over there!
  - J Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ name's Lucy.
  - S \_\_\_\_\_from?
  - J She \_\_\_\_\_ from London.
  - S Is she a friend?
  - J \_\_\_\_\_ my sister.



# Questions

9 T2.4 Match a question in A and an answer in B.

A	В
1 What's his name?	a I'm fine, thank you.
2 Where's she from?	1 b His name's Henry.
3 How are you?	c It's a dictionary.
4 Are you from Italy?	d It's in London.
5 What's this in English?	e She's from Japan.
6 Where's Buckingham Palace	f Yes, I am. I'm from Milan.

# Adjectives

# good/awful

10 Write an adjective on the correct line.

good	awful	fantastic
really good	OK	bad













(3)

bad



# Reading

11 Read about the people. Where are they? Write in a country - Egypt, Malaysia or England.

# Where are they?

Ann and James are on holiday. They're in Europe. The weather is bad, but the holiday is really good. The food is OK. The building in the photograph is over 150 years old. It is the home of kings and queens. It's in the centre of the city. 'It's a fantastic building,' says Ann.



They're in



Carla and Pedro are on holiday. They're in Africa. The weather is very good, and the holiday is great. The people are really nice,' says Carla, 'but the heat is awful.'

The buildings in the photograph are in a desert near a town. They are 5,000 years old. They are the homes of dead kings and queens.

They're in

Catherine and Anthony are on holiday. They're in Asia.

The weather is OK, and the holiday is really good.

The food is international.

The buildings in the photograph are in a park. They're new; just 12 years old. They are offices for petrol companies and other businesses. 'The buildings are beautiful,' says Anthony.



They're in

12 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)?

# Ann and James

- 1 / They are on holiday.
- 2 They are in the United States.
- 3 The building is old.

### Carla and Pedro

- 4 They are in England.
- 5 The holiday is really good.
- 6 The building is very old.

# Catherine and Anthony

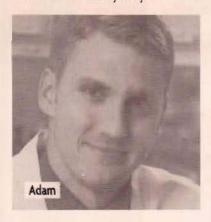
- 7 They are in Europe.
- 8 The holiday is awful.
- The buildings are new.

# Listening

She's from Berlin



- 13 T 2.5 Listen to Sofia and Adam. Underline the correct answer.
  - 1 She's from Berlin / Birmingham.
  - 2 Sofia is a doctor / a teacher.
  - 3 Her school / hospital is in the centre of town.
  - 4 Her students are from Germany / the US.
  - 5 Adam is from London / Sydney.
  - 6 He's a doctor / a teacher.
  - 7 His school / hospital is in the centre of town.
  - 8 The building is awful / fantastic.
- 14 T 2.6 Underline what you hear.
  - 1 He's / She's a teacher.
  - 2 She's / He's a doctor.
  - 3 Her/His name's Adam.
  - 4 His / Her name's Sofia.
  - 5 She's / He's married.
  - 6 He's / She's married.
  - 7 Her/His students are from the US.
  - 8 His/He's from Sydney.



14 Unit 2 . Your world

# **Everyday English**

Numbers 11-30

15 Match the numbers and the words.

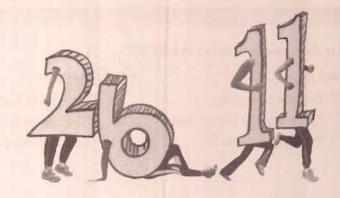
(13)	fifteen	
21 22	twelve	
21 (22	twenty	
19	sixteen	
20 12	twenty-five	
26 12	thirteen	
16	eleven	
15 30	thirty	
	twenty-two	
25	nineteen	
28 20	twenty-six	
20 20	twenty-eight	
11	twenty-one	

16 Write the numbers.

23	twenty-three	17	seventeen
11	Haribana .	29	
18	1000	24	Marin Ten
14		27	

17 T2.7 Listen. Write the numbers you hear.

15 28 \_\_\_\_\_



# Don't forget!

# Grammar

18 Complete the chart.

Verb to b	e	Short form
1		l'm
You		
He		He's
She	is	
It		
They		

19 Complete the sentences with a word in the box.

	'm	are	's	is	're	
1	How_			2000	s.	
2	Where I		1		, Suzanne	?
3	Where They				Maria on	holiday?
4	Yes, it			No.	l? fantastic.	
5	Where Maria			***************************************		from Canada.

20 Write the correct answer.

- 1 A Where's Maria from?
  - B She's from Spain.
    - a He's b She's
- 2 A Is that man from Oman?
  - B No, \_\_\_\_\_ from Saudi Arabia.
    - a his b he's
- 3 A Is he a student?
  - B Yes. \_\_\_\_\_ is Faisal. b He's name a His name
- 4 A How are you today?
  - - a Fine, thanks. And you? b Thank you. OK?
- 5 A Goodbye! Have a nice day!
  - a Very well. b Thank you. And you.

# Vocabulary

21 Write the word in English.



1 a computer	_ 5	
2	_ 6	
3	7	
4	. 8	

# Pronunciation

- 22 Your and you're are pronounced the same /jo:/. Complete the sentences with your or you're.
  - 1 What's your name?
  - 2 You're from Japan.
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_a student.
  - 4 This is \_\_\_\_\_book.
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_from Moscow.
  - 6 Is this \_\_\_\_\_ phone?

T 2.8 Listen and repeat.

he's	her
his	she's

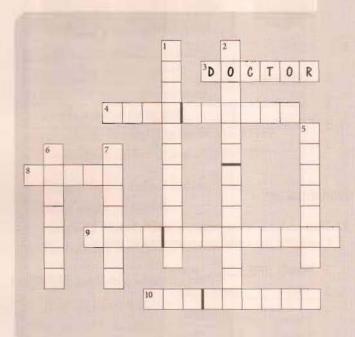


Jobs • is / isn't • Questions and negatives
Vocabulary revision • Social expressions (1)

All about you

# Jobs

1 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.







# is or isn't?

2 Complete the sentences.



1 He isn't a bus driver.

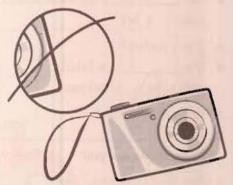
He \_\_\_\_ a taxi driver.

16 Unit 3 • All about you



2 She \_\_\_\_ a police officer.

She \_\_\_\_\_ a shop assistant.



3 It \_\_\_\_ a phone.

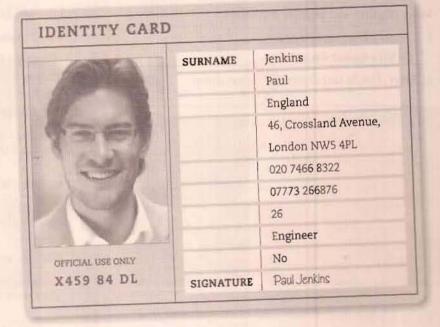
It \_\_\_\_\_ a camera.

# Questions and negatives

# is/isn't

3 Complete the identity card.

ADDRESS SURNAME PHONE NUMBER JOB FIRST NAME MOBILE NUMBER AGE MARRIED SIGNATURE COUNTRY



1	What's his surname?		1
2	Jenkins.	?	2
3	Paul.	5	3
4	England.	?	4
5	46, Crossland Avenue, London NW5 4PL.	7	
6	020 7466 8322.		5
7	07773 266876.	,	6
- 25	26.	;	a 1
8	He's an engineer.		2
9	No, he isn't.		
			2

4 T3.1 Write the questions about Paul in exercise 3.

1	His surname is Ford.
	His surname isn't Ford. It's Jenkins.
2	He's from Australia.
3	He's 23.
4	He's a student.
5	He's married.
	He's single.
	Answer the questions about Paul. Use shornswers.
	iswers.
ar 1	Is his surname Jenkins?
1 2	Is his surname Jenkins?  Yes, it is.  Is he from Canada?
ar 1 2 3	Is his surname Jenkins?  Yes, it is.  Is he from Canada?  No, he isn't.
ar 1 2 3	Is his surname Jenkins?  Yes, it is.  Is he from Canada?  No, he isn't.  Is he from London?

# Negatives and questions

# I'm not/aren't

- 7 Make negative and positive sentences.
  - I/not/a teacher. I/student
     I'm not a teacher. I'm a student.
  - 2 Peter/not/a taxi driver. He/a bus driver.
  - 3 We/not/from Algeria. We/from Libya.
  - 4 I/not married. I/single.
  - 5 You/not/a nurse. You/a student.
  - 6 Paul and Donny McNab / not / doctors. They / students at university in Ireland.
- 8 Look at the photo of the boys on the charity walk. Write the correct answer.
  - 1 Paul and Donny are brothers.
    - a is b are
  - 2 They \_\_\_\_\_ from Scotland. They're from Ireland.
    - a aren't b isn't
  - 3 A Who are the students in your group?
    - B We \_\_\_\_\_ all students!
    - a am b are
  - 4 A Are you a bus driver?
    - B \_\_\_\_\_ a bus driver! I'm a student!
    - a Ino b I'm not
  - 5 A Are you tired at the moment?
    - B We \_\_\_\_\_ tired! We're very happy!
    - a aren't b isn't
  - 6 Bo \_\_\_\_\_ Australian. Ronan is Australian
    - a is no b isn't

- 9 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.
  - 1 from / brothers / Where / the / are Where are the brothers from

They're from Ireland.

2 from / Ronan / Sweden / Is

No, he's from Australia.

3 his/job/What's

He's a student.

4 Where / they / are

They're on a mountain in Ireland.

5 journalist / boys / the / Is / with / the

No, he isn't. He's on the phone.



# Listening

An interview with Ella

10 T3.4 Listen to the conversation with Ella. Complete the information.

IDENTITY		OFFICIAL USE ONLY X28997BL
First name	Ella	
Surname	Mary Printers and Land	-
Age		_
Address	209 Park Place	
	NY 11217	
Work number	212-786-	_
Cell phone	917-438-	4
Job		-
Married		_
Signature	Ella Smith	

11 Comp	lete th	e lines	from t	he inte	erview.
---------	---------	---------	--------	---------	---------

7 And, \_\_\_\_\_ married?

1	I know your first name's Ella, but what's
	your surname ?
2	How are you, Ella?
3	And you live in Brooklyn, right? What's your
	?
4	What's your number at?
5	What's your phone number?
6	Now, you work in newspapers, but what's
	?

# Vocabulary

Revision

12 Complete the words from this unit.



- 1 It's a lovely day today. I'm very h a p p y.
- 2 My book is good. It's very i r t mg.
- 3 All five of them are s d n.
- 4 Dubai is a big 6 \_ t \_ . The t w where I live is very small.
- 5 Mike is at work. He's very t r ...
- 6 My brother Saoud is very d f nt from me. We aren't the same.
- 7 The train s \_\_\_ t \_\_\_ n is in the centre of town.
- 8 A 'Where are you?'
  - B 'I'm h r ! Where are you?'
- 9 A 'どこの駅ですか?'
  - B 'I'm sorry. I don't u st d'.
- 10 Suzie is very € € . It's her birthday tomorrow.



# **Everyday English**

# Social expressions (1)

13 [13.5] Write a line from the box in the correct place.

I'm sorry. A cup of tea, please. Excuse me! That's all right. I don't understand. I don't know.



1 A A cup of tea, please.
B That's 90p.



B Don't worry. It's OK.



3 A Thank you very much.



4 A \_\_\_\_\_! Can I have the menu, please B Certainly.



5 A どこの駅ですか? B I'm sorry.



6 A Excuse me! Where is the Regal Hotel?

B I'm sorry.

# Don't forget!

### Grammar

14 Complete the chart.

Verb to be	Positive	Negative	
1		l'm not	
You			
He		He isn't	
She	is		
lt	4		
We	are		
They			

	CT	W-60-7 671-1773	
15 \	Write the	correct	answer

- 1 A Hello, Peter.
  - B I'm not Peter. I'm Hans.
  - a I'm not b I amn't
- 2 A You and Nabil are from Tunisia, right?
  - B \_\_\_\_\_\_from Tunisia. We're from Algeria.
  - a We no b We aren't
- 3 A Tripoli is in Egypt, isn't it?
  - B \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt! It's in Libya!
  - a It no is b It isn't
- 4 A Where's your phone?
  - B \_\_\_\_\_ in my bag.
  - a is b it's
- 5 She's French. \_\_\_\_\_ name's Antoinette.
  - a She's b Her
- 6 Hans is German. \_\_\_\_\_ from Berlin.
  - a His b He's

# Prepositions

16 Write a preposition from the box.

	in (x2)	at (x2)	from	with	of (x4)	on
1	We're	at sch	ool now.			
2	Emrah	is Turkish	n. He's	Turk	ey.	
3	The Gr	reat Wall is	sC	China.		
4	Mosco	w is the ca	pital	Russia	a.	
5	Hello.	Can I have	e a cup	tea,	please?	
6	My bro	other is	holid	ay in Jord	lan at the r	noment.
7	This is	a photogr	aph	_ me and	d my husba	and.
8	My fla	t is	the centre	e1	town.	
9	Look_	the	park! It's	so beauti	ful!	
10	Read to	he intervie	ew	the stude	ents on a c	harity

# Numbers

17 Write the number.

Access to the second	
19	nineteen
-	twelve
	twenty-one
_	seventy-five
	fifty
	fifteen
-	eight
-	forty-two
	ten

18 Write the number as a word.

thirty-eight

31	thirty-one
45	
7	
68	1
100	

in at on with of



Possessive 's • my/our/her... • The family has/have • Vocabulary revision • The alphabet

# Family and friends

# Possessives

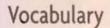
# Possessive's

- 1 T4.1 Look at the picture. Complete the sentences with the names of the people + 's.
  - a Mike's car is a Mercedes.
  - b \_\_\_\_\_ phone is on the table.
  - c \_\_\_\_\_ computer is an Apple Mac.
  - d \_\_\_\_\_ dictionary is in her bag.
- e \_\_\_\_\_\_ office is in the centre of town.
- f \_\_\_\_\_ pizza looks fantastic!
- g \_\_\_\_\_ husband is from Texas.
- h Ben is \_\_\_\_\_ cat.



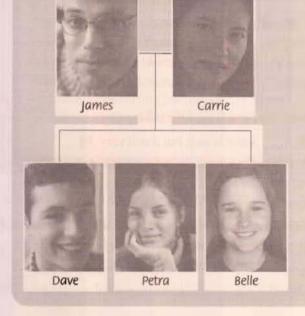
2 T4.2 Complete the sentences with an adjective in the box.

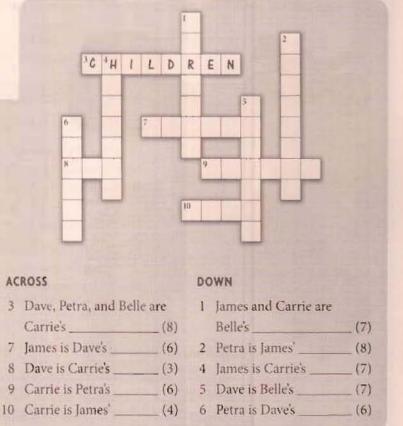




# The family

3 Look at the family tree. Complete the crossword with the name of the family relative.





# has/have

# Alfie and his family



Alfie	Kim
	010
336	

	4.3 Look at out Alfie and h	the pictures. Complete the sentences is family.
1	He has	a BMW motorbike.
2	They have	a nice house.
3	She	a Canon camera.
4	They	two children.
5		a lot of CDs.
6		a Nokia mobile phone.
7		a Mercedes sports car.
8		a Toshiba computer.
9		a bicycle.

# Listening

	acci	m.g		
1240		4.4 Listen to Alfie talking about his life and his mily. Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)?		
	1	✓ Kim is Alfie's wife.		
	2	Their house is very big.		
	3	He and Kim have a house in north London.		
	4	His sister, Alice, has a house in their street.		
	5	Alice has four children.		
	6	Alfie and Kim have two children.		
	7	Their daughter's name is Penny.		
	8	Kim's office is thirty miles from their house.		
	9	Alfie's office is in the centre.		
	10	Kim and Alfie aren't happy in their jobs.		
,	C	omplete the questions.		
	1	What's his wife's name? Kim		
	2	What's name? Alice		
		What's name? Penny		
	4	What's name? Archie		
7	C	omplete the lines from Alfie talking about his life.		
	1	Our house is nice, but it isn't very big .		
		My sister, Alice, a house in our street.		
		Our children and children are at the same		
		school.		
	4	The school is near our house.		
		My office is miles from our house.		
		both happy in our jobs		

8 Read about these people. Use your dictionary. Answer the questions.

# Who's happy?

Rich people are happy people.

True or false?

#### **Bill Gates**

Bill Gates is a businessman from the United States. He is the chairman of Microsoft. He has \$50 billion. He is one of the richest men in the world.

His wife's name is Melinda, and they have three children. They have a very big house next to a lake in Washington. The house has a gym, and a swimming pool with underwater music.

He and his wife have a charity called the Bill and Melinda Gates' Foundation. It's a charity for world health and education.

He has a lot of money. Is he happy?





#### Queen Elizabeth II

Queen Elizabeth II of England is one of the richest women in the world. She has \$600 million. She has a house in Scotland, Balmoral, and a house in Sandringham, in the east of England. She has paintings by Leonardo da Vinci, Raphael, Vermeer, Canaletto, Rubens, Rembrandt, and Monet. She also has a lot of horses.

She has four children. Her husband, Prince Phillip, is from Greece. She has a lot of problems. Is she happy?

#### Tony and Abigail Jones

Tony has a house in London. 'Our house is small, but we love it. My wife's name is Abigail. We both have good jobs. Abigail's a police officer, and I'm a teacher. We have two children, Oliver and Jess, and their school is five minutes from our house. We have an old Renault car.'

'I have some money, but not a lot. Problems? Of course we have problems! Everyone has problems! But we're very happy!'



Are the sentences true  $(\checkmark)$  or false (X)?

#### **Bill Gates**

- 1 X He is English.
- 2 He has a very big house.
- 3 The house has a gym and a swimming pool.

#### Queen Elizabeth

- 4 She has a house in America.
- 5 She has many famous paintings.
- 6 Her husband is Italian.

#### Tony and Abigail

- 7 They have a big house.
- 8 They have two children.
- 9 They're rich.

# Vocabulary

#### Revision

9 Match a line in A with a line in B.

A		В	
1	My dad is a big Chelsea	a	of England.
2	My sister's a student	ПЬ	CDs.
3	Marwa is my best	С	sport.
4	Football is my favourite		have a really good time.
5	I have a part-time		friend.
6	When I'm with my		
	friends, we	U f	at university.
7	Their house is in the north	1 g	fan.
8	I have a lot of	☐ h	job in a restaurant.

#### Pronunciation

#### they're or their?

- 10 They're and their sound the same /ðeə/. Complete the sentences with they're or their.
  - 1 My children are happy because their friends are at the same school.
  - 2 They're at school now.
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_\_teachers are very good. Really fantastic.
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_\_ very nice with the children.
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_ school is small, and a bit old.
  - 6 But \_\_\_\_\_\_ very happy in that school.
  - T 4.5 Listen and repeat.

# **Everyday English**

#### The alphabet

11 T 4.6 Listen to a definition and then write the word.

Your mother and father a	nd brothers and sisters
family	
1	a b c d e
2	fghijk
3	
4	mnop
5	2.7.2
6	qrstu
7	v W x y z
8	1 1 2

#### On the phone

12 T 4.7 Listen. Complete the phone conversation.

10000	Good morning. The B			
15	Hello. Can you (1)			
	information about ho	tels in Londo	n, (3)	
A	Of course. (4)	name is	?	
В	Alfonso Morelli.			
A	MORR			
В	No, no! M-O-R-E-do	uble L-I. Just	(5)	R.
A	Thank you. And what	's (6)	_ email	address
В	amorelli@superdada.	it		
A	I'll email you some (7	)to	day.	
B	That's (8) ki	nd. Thank yo	u very	
	(9) Goodby	7e.		
	My pleasure. Goodby			



# Don't forget!

#### Grammar

#### 13 Complete the chart.

Pronouns	Adjectives
1	ту
you	
he	his
she	
we	
they	their

#### 14 Complete the chart of the verb have.

1	have
you	
you he	
she	has
we	
they	

#### 15 Write the correct answer.

- 1 I'm a student. My school is very good.
  - a His b My
- 2 The school \_\_\_\_\_\_ fifteen classes.
  - a has b have
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_\_teacher's name is Sarah.
  - a She's b Our
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_from Canada.
  - a She's b Her
- 5 She \_\_\_\_\_23.
  - a is b has
- 6 She's French. \_\_\_\_\_ name's Antoinette.
  - a His b Her

# our his my her their

#### Vocabulary

#### 16 Write the words in the correct column.

50A	city	computer	accountant	town
bag	country	village	car	police officer
bus	sister	dictionary	waiter	apartment

Places	People	Things
city	son	computer
		a sale sale of the
	de la companya della companya della companya de la companya della	

#### Singular and plural nouns

#### 17 T 4.8 Complete the charts. Be careful about spellings.

Singular	Plural
brother	brothers
	jobs
school	
car	

Singular	Plural
country	countries
	families
city	
baby	

Singular	Plural
class	classes
address	
sandwich	
xxxx	sunglasses

Singular	Plural
man	men women
/womən/	/wimin/
child	
person	

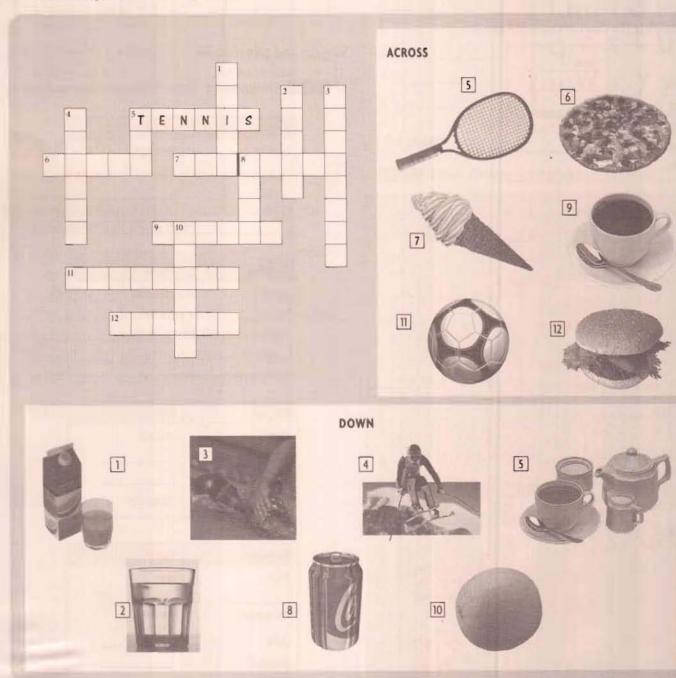


Sports/food/drink • Present Simple – I/you/they
Languages and nationalities • How much is it?

The way I live

# Sports, food, drink

1 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.



# Things I like

I like coffee

2 T5.1 Write what the people like and don't like.



3 T 5.2 Write the questions and answers.



1 A Do you like Coke?

B Yes, I do. It's great!



4 A \_\_\_\_\_\_skiing?
B \_\_\_\_\_ fantastic!



2 A Do you like football?

B \_\_\_\_\_ terrible!



5 A \_\_\_\_\_\_ James Bond films?
B \_\_\_\_\_ exciting!



3 A \_\_\_\_\_\_ pizza?

B \_\_\_\_\_\_ delicious!



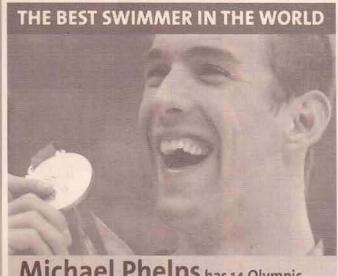
6 A \_\_\_\_\_\_ coffee?
B \_\_\_\_\_ awful!

# **Present Simple**

#### The swimmer Michael Phelps

4 Read and complete the text about Michael Phelps. Use the verbs in the box.

live	come	speak	have (x2)	eat	
swim	drink	like	want		



# Michael Phelps has 14 Olympic gold medals. He describes his life.

HOME 'I (1) come	from Baltimore, Maryland
USA. My father is a police	e officer, and my mother
is a teacher. I (2)	two sisters, both
older than me. I still (3)_	in Baltimore.
I (4) my owr	apartment, but I (5)
to my mothe	er on the phone every day.

TRAINING	I train for six hours a day, six days a					
week. I (6)_	10 miles, that's	16 kilometres				
every day. I	(7) a lot - pasta	a, omelettes,				
bread, cerea	l, sandwiches, cheese, pizza	. In one day				
I eat enough	for six people. I (8)	coffee				
and special	energy drinks.					

**INTERESTS** I (9) \_\_\_\_\_\_ football (American football, of course!), playing video games, and going for walks.

I (10) \_\_\_\_\_\_ to win 10 medals at the next Olympic games.'

#### Questions

5		at the words in the right order to make questions out Michael Phelps.
	1	come / Where / you / from / do Where do you come from
		I come from Baltimore, Maryland.
	2	father's / job / your / What's
		He's a police officer.
	3	you / live / Where / do
		In an apartment in Baltimore.
	4	eat / do / you / What
		Pasta, omelettes, cereal I eat a lot!
6	С	omplete the questions to Michael Phelps.
	1	What's your mother's job
		She's a teacher.
	2	How many sisters Two.
	3	What
		Coffee and special energy drinks.
	4	What sort of games
		Video games.
N	ega	atives
7	N	fake negative sentences.
	1	I _don't eat a lot of meat, but I eat a lot of pasta.
	2	Itea. I don't like the taste.
	3	I with my family. I live in my own apartment.
	4	My parents doctors. My father is a
		teacher and my mother is a nurse.
	5	My sisters swim. They do other sport

but not swimming.

# Listening

Gracie and her parents



			1000	- CONS		
			100	There	17/1	
8		Listen to ther and her mo				
	1	Your parents _				
	2	COLUMN TO A STATE OF THE STATE				
		They				Deviner
	4	In Spain			*	
	5	You				
		My				mmer.
		all				
	9			golf!		
	10	We	at home	. I love co	oking.	
^	-	1 4 41	SOME CHIEF OF			
9		omplete the que				
	1	they	speak	Spani	sh?	
	2	What	they	Tiph they	in Spain?	
		they play golf?				
	-				.01 12	
	3			-	still work?	
	4	Where	you	and your	husband	?
	5	And		all	out	to
		restaurants?		7711	Out	
10	C	omplete the neg	gative so	entences f	rom the inte	rview.
	1	They don't live	in En	gland any	more.	
	2	They're both q	uite old	l now, so t	hey	_31
		a lot				
	3			work at al		
	4	We		in Eng	gland. We ha	ive a

\_\_\_\_ in England. We have a

in restaurants.

house in Scotland.

5 So \_\_\_\_\_



Languages and nationalities

11 Write the words in the box in the right column.

Japanese	Italian	English	Arabic
Chinese	Spanish	Turkish	Mexican
American	German	Portuguese	Brazilian

0.0	000	000	
		Japanese	
	1000		

T5.4 Listen and repeat.

12 Complete the sentences with a nationality adjective.

- 1 Lisbon is a Portuguese city.
- 2 The \_\_\_\_\_ President lives in the White House.
- 3 A Mercedes is a \_\_\_\_\_ car.
- 4 Nintendo is a \_\_\_\_\_ company.
- 5 الله في is \_\_\_\_\_ writing.
- 6 Spaghetti is \_\_\_\_\_\_food.
- 7 A burrito is \_\_\_\_\_\_food.
- 8 Liu Xiuyan is a \_\_\_\_\_ name.
- 9 Ronaldinho is a \_\_\_\_\_\_ football player.
- 10 Real Madrid is a \_\_\_\_\_\_ football club.

# **Everyday English**

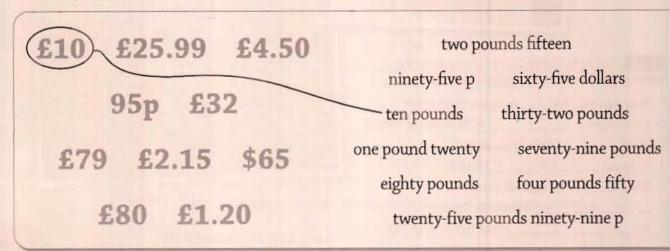
How much is it?

13 Complete the numbers.

 29 \_\_twenty-nine
 \_\_\_\_ forty-eight
 \_\_\_\_ thirty-five
 81 \_\_\_\_\_ 90 \_\_\_\_

 \_\_\_\_ fifteen
 \_\_\_\_ seventy-two
 60 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 59 \_\_\_\_
 100 \_\_\_\_\_

14 Match the prices and the words.



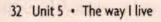
15 T 5.5 Write the prices you hear.

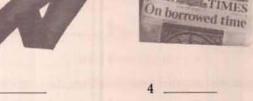
1 <u>£10.99</u> 2 <u>\$4.50</u> 3 \_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_ 7 \_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_\_

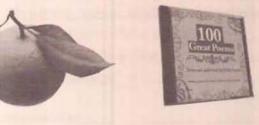
16 T5.6 Listen to the conversations. Write the prices.











8

# Don't forget!

#### Grammar

17 Complete the chart.

#### **Present simple**

	Positive	Question	Negative
1	I work	Do I work?	
You			You don't work
We			
They		Do they work?	

#### 18 Write the correct answer.

1	I	don't like	_ French food

a no	like	b	don't	H	ke

2	'Do you	like swimming?"	'Yes,	
	2 1 da	h I like		

3	How many	languages	

			2000	-	-		
a	do	you	speak		Ь	you	speak

	500	14.5	2 74	SALES OF THE SALES
a	like	b 1	don'	t like

5	In Portugal _	Portuguese.
2	In Fortugal_	Fortuguese.

#### Vocabulary

#### 19 Write the verb that goes with the words.

1 tive	ALL SHARMSHAM
	with my parents
2	two languages
2	to my mother on the phone
3	in a bank
3	for an international company
4	two sisters
	a lot of money
5	chess
	football
6	from Qatar
· -	to school by bus

in an anartment

#### Articles a / an

#### 20 Complete the sentences with a or an.

- 1 I'm in an English class.
- 2 Hans is waiter.
- 3 He wants to be \_\_\_\_ engineer.
- 4 She has \_\_\_\_ Italian car.
- 5 A Mercedes is \_\_\_ German car.

#### 21 Write a or an in the correct place in the sentence.

# 1 I have/good job.

- 2 We live in big house in London.
- 3 I'm waiter.
- 4 I work in Italian restaurant.
- 5 They have office in the centre of town.
- 6 Jamie is English teacher.

#### Word order

#### 22 Put the words in the right order.

1	like	Spanish	I	oranges
	Hike	Spanish ora	nae	S.

1.727		**	100	Sec. 1.12	
2	have	small	T	flat	2

	- 2			-8 5 6
3	people	nice	are	Turkish

4 food	don't	I lil	chinese

# do you speak...? I don't like ...





The time • Present Simple - he/she • Prepositions in/at/on Words that go together . Days of the week

#### Every day

## The time

1 T 6.1 Underline the correct time.



1 ten thirty / ten fifteen



4 six twenty-five / six forty-five 5 two forty-five / ten forty-five



2 three o'clock / five o'clock





3 eight thirty / nine thirty



6 eleven o'clock / twelve o'cloc

2 T 6.2 Listen. Write the times you hear.

1 1.15 2 3 4 5

3 T 6.3 Listen and complete the conversations.

1 A Excuse me ! What \_\_\_\_\_ is it?

B It's \_\_\_\_\_.

A Thank much.

B That's OK.

2 C \_\_\_\_\_ me! Do \_\_\_\_ the time, \_\_\_\_?

D Sure. It's exactly \_\_\_\_\_.

C \_\_\_\_a lot.

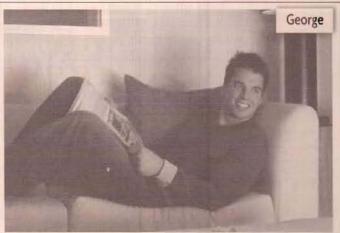
D \_\_\_\_\_ all right.



# Present Simple – he/she

#### Cathy and George





4 T 6.4	Listen	to Cath	y and	George.
---------	--------	---------	-------	---------

Complete the questions and answers.

1	What time do you get up	
	'I get up at	3.
2	'What	for breakfast?'
	'I have toast and coffee.'	
3	'How	to school?'
	'By bus.'	

\_ in the evening?'

TV.

#### 5 Complete the verbs.

4 'What \_

1	I get	-	He gets
2	You go	<b>→</b>	She goes
3	We have	->	He
4	I leave	->	She
5	We do	<b>→</b>	He
6	You watch	<b>→</b>	She
7	They live	-	He
8	I work	-	She

6 Complete the sentences about	ut Cathy and George.
--------------------------------	----------------------

1	Cathy gets up	at 7.00 and	a shower
2	She	to school by bus.	
3	She	a sandwich and a Co	ke for lunch.
4	She	school at 3,30.	
5	In the evening	she her he	omework.
6	George	in a house in nor	th London.
7	He	toast and coffee for b	reakfast.
8	In the evening	he TV.	

#### Questions

7 T 6.5 Complete the questions about Cathy and George.

Ca	atny		
1	What time	does Cathy get up	
	At 7.00.		

2 How\_ to school? By bus.

3 What\_ for lunch? A sandwich and a Coke.

4 What \_ in the evening? She does her homework.

#### George

5	Where	George	3
	In a house in north		

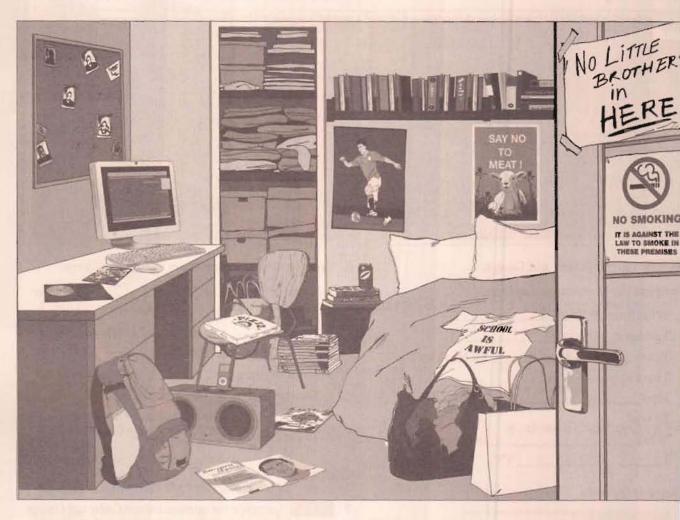
6 What\_ for breakfast? Toast and coffee.

7 Where\_\_ work? In a bank.

8 What \_\_\_ in the evening? He watches TV.

## Cathy's bedroom

8 Look at Cathy's bedroom. Complete the sentences about her.



1	Cathy has	a lot of clo	othes.
2	She	her homewo	rk in her room.
3		footb	all.
4		shopp	oing a lot.
5		coffee	
6		comp	uter games.
7		pizza	
8	M. L.	fashio	on magazines.
M	lake negative se	ntences about	Cathy.
1	She doesn't	_ tidy her room	m.
	She		
3	She	_ like school.	
4	Her little brot	her	go in her room.
5	She	_ eat meat.	

#### do/does/am/is/are

10

6	6.6 Comple	te the sentences with do/does/am/is/o
		_you Cathy's brother?
	Yes, I (2)	
A	Ah! (3)	your name Robert?
В	Yes, it (4)	, but people call me Bobby.
	(5)	_ you know my sister?
A	Yes, I (6)	My name (7) Alice.
B	(8)	_you go to the same school?
A	Yes, we (9)	We (10) in
	the same class	. I think I know your father, too.
	(11)	he work in Barclay's Bank?
B	Yes, he (12) _	You know all the family!

#### Pronunciation

#### -s at the end of a word

11 T 6.7 Listen and write the verbs in the correct column for the pronunciation of -s at the end of the word.

goes	gets	watches	lives	eats	does
cooks	has	plays	listens	works	teaches

/z/	/s/	/12/
goes	gets	watches

# Prepositions

#### in/at/on

- 12 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition – in, at, or on.
  - 1 I get up at 7.00.
  - 2 I don't work \_\_\_\_\_ Tuesday.
  - 3 I get up late \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend.
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ the evening I watch TV.
  - 5 I don't like getting up \_\_\_\_\_ Monday morning.
  - 6 I start work \_\_\_\_\_\_ 8.30.
  - 7 I usually go to the mall \_\_\_\_\_ Wednesday evening.

Do we need a preposition in these sentences?

- 8 I have a shower \_\_\_\_\_ every morning.
- 9 Come and see me \_\_\_\_\_ next weekend.
- 10 Are you at home \_\_\_\_\_ this evening?

# Vocabulary

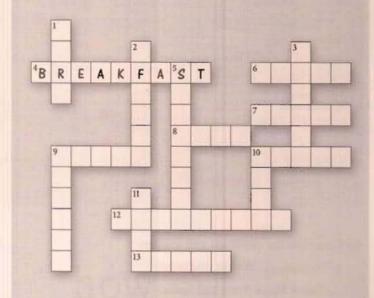
#### Words that go together

- 13 Think of a word that goes in the space.
  - · have toast for breakfast
  - . drink water

Complete the crossword.

#### Across

- 4 have toast for \_\_\_\_\_(9)
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ water (5)
- 7 \_\_\_\_TV (5)
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ football (4)
- 9 \_\_\_\_ a car (5)
- 10 have \_\_\_\_ at 1.00 (5)
- 12 speak two \_\_\_\_\_ (9)
- 13 get up \_\_\_\_\_ / get up late (5)



#### Down

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ for a Qatari company (4)
- 2 work in an \_\_\_\_\_ (6)
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio (6)
- 5 go \_\_\_\_\_ to buy things (7)
- 9 cook \_\_\_\_\_ in the evening (6)
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ in a flat (4)
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ two sisters (4)

# Reading

14 Read the newspaper article about Barack Obama. Use your dictionary.

# Barack Obama, America's first black President

BARACK OBAMA is the forty-fourth President of the United States, but the first African American President in the history of the country. He was born in Hawaii in 1961. His father was Kenyan and his mother was American, from Kansas.

His family He is married to Michelle, and they have two daughters, Malia Anne and Natasha, known as Sasha. The children go to a private school in Washington.

Michelle is an attorney (an American lawyer). She doesn't work now her husband is President. She says her most important job is as mother to their children.

His interests Barack Obama loves basketball. He has his own indoor basketball court in the White House, and he often invites professional basketball players to come and play with him.

He also goes to the gym. In the evening he sometimes plays games with his family.

He and Michelle like going to restaurants and the cinema, and visiting friends for dinner.

His home The President and his family live in the White House. It has 132 rooms. One hundred people work for him. His chefs make his favourite food – chili and pasta.

His work Mr Obama works in the Oval Office in the White House. He often works more than sixteen hours a day.



5 Complete the questions and answers.	16 Co	omplete the questions and short answers.
1 How many children does he have Two - Malia Anne and Sasha.	?	Do the children go to a private school?  Yes , they do
2 Where to so They go to a private school in Washing		Does Michelle work as a lawyer now?
3 What Michelle ? She looks after their children.	3	Does he play basketball?
4 What sportBasketball.	like? 4	Do they go to restaurants?
5 Where worl In the Oval Office.	17 M	ake negative sentences.  His children _don't go to state school
6 How many hoursAbout sixteen.	?	Mrs Obama go out to They live in Chicago.

4 The President \_

a lot of free t

# Everyday English

Days of the week

18 Write the days of the week in the correct order.

_Monday	
Wednesday	Monday
Friday	
Saturday	
Sunday	
Tuesday	-
Thursday	

# Don't forget!

Present Simple

19 Complete the chart.

	Positive	Question	Negative
1	1 work	Do I work?	
You			You don't work
He		Does he work?	
She	She works		The Late
It		Maria la Barrella B	It doesn't work

20 Add -s, -es, or - (nothing).

- 1 My brother loves football.
- 2 Tom and Julia often go \_\_ shopping.
- 3 Susan watch\_\_ videos every evening.
- 4 James cook\_\_ dinner in the evening.
- 5 We work\_\_ late on Tuesday evening.
- 6 Ellie teach\_\_ English at my school.

21 Underline the correct word.

- 1 Do/Does you like sports?
- 2 Where do / does your sister live?
- 3 What languages do / does your teacher speak?
- 4 Do / Does you have a computer at home?
- 5 I don't / doesn't get up early at the weekend.
- 6 My parents don't / doesn't like my friends.

#### Questions

22 Match a question with a question word.

What How many	When Where	How Who	How much
1 What	_ do you d	lo in the eve	ening? - I watch TV.
2	_ do you c	ome to sch	ool? – By bus.
3	_ is a cup	of coffee? -	90p.
4	are you	from? - I'm	from Kuwait.
5	is your	teacher? - S	ally.
6	_ do you	go on holid	ay? - In summer.
7	languag	es do you s	peak? - Two.

#### Articles: the or - (nothing)?

C	omplete the sente	nces with th	he or – (nothing).
1	The Palm is in _	- Duba	i.
2	Dubai is in	_ United A	rab Emirates.
3	Paris is	capita	l of France.
4	Excuse me! Wha	ıt's ti	ime?
5	I havelur	nch at 1.00 e	every day.
6	I go to wo	ork by	_bus.
7	I go to be	ed at 11.30.	
8	What's na	ame of your	r school?
9	Inevenin	g I watch _	TV.
10	At weeke	nd I play _	football.
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	1 The Palm is in 2 Dubai is in 3 Paris is 4 Excuse me! What lur 5 I have lur 6 I go to we 7 I go to be 8 What's na 9 In evening	Complete the sentences with the

how when what who where



Questions • Pronouns me / him Possessive adjectives my/his this / that . Adjectives happy / miserable . Can I ...?

#### My favourites

#### Questions

#### A questionnaire

1 Read and complete the interview with Johnny Depp. Use the questions in the box.

# Johnny Depp answers your questions...

What are your favourite films?

Why do you live in France?

How many languages do you speak?

Who do you live with?

How old are your children?

Where do you live?

What does Vanessa do?

What car do you drive?

How much money do you have?

# What are your favourite films?

- JD Cartoons. I like watching them with my kids. I don't watch new films, but I love old films,
- I live with my wife Vanessa and my two children.
- JD She's a singer and an actress.
- Lily-Rose Melody is 10. Jack is 7.
- In France.
- JD Because Vanessa is French. And because I feel at home in France. I go to the café with my daughter and have a coffee, and no one looks at us.
- Two. English and French.
- JD I drive a green Porsche convertible, I also have a Triumph motorbike.
- JD That's private. I have a lot. I make money doing what I like. I'm very lucky.

## Question words

2 Match a question word in A with an answer in B.

A		B
1	What?	a In summer.
2	Where?	1 b A sandwich.
3	Who?	c By bus.
4	When?	d Because my wife is French.
5	How?	e In a village near the sea.
6	Why?	f Jane.
7	How old? .	g Three.
8	How many?	h Twenty-one (years).
9	What time?	i 6.30 in the morning.
10	How much?	☐ j £5.30.

3 Complete the questions with a question word

-	t do you have for lunch
A sar	ndwich.
	is your next holiday?
	do you come to school?
	do you live?
-	's your teacher?
	do you live in France?
	are you? wenty-one.
-	brothers do you have?
	do you start work?
	is a coffee and a sandwich:

1	What's your email address
	jharman@btinternet.com
2	spellsurname?
	H - A - R - M - A - N.
3	
	07933 678234.
4	
	I'm 23.
5	favourite?
	Pizza. I love it.
	in a house or a flat?
	A flat.
W	om the box.  Because she works at home.
M	Vrite questions with Why? and then choose a reason om the box.
W fr	Vrite questions with Why? and then choose a reason om the box.  Because she works at home.  Because he has a job there.  Because he doesn't have any money.
Mfr	Vrite questions with Why? and then choose a reason om the box.  Because she works at home.  Because he has a job there.  Because he doesn't have any money.  Because she's a writer.
M	Vrite questions with Why? and then choose a reason om the box.  Because she works at home. Because he has a job there. Because he doesn't have any money. Because she's a writer.  Mike lives in Mumbai.
W fr	Vrite questions with Why? and then choose a reason om the box.  Because she works at home. Because he has a job there. Because he doesn't have any money. Because she's a writer.  Mike lives in Mumbai.  Why does he live in Mumbai  Because he has a job there.
W fr	Vrite questions with Why? and then choose a reason om the box.  Because she works at home. Because he has a job there. Because she's a writer.  Mike lives in Mumbai.  Why does he live in Mumbai  Because he has a job there.  He drives an old car.
W fr	Vrite questions with Why? and then choose a reason om the box.  Because she works at home. Because he has a job there. Because he doesn't have any money. Because she's a writer.  Mike lives in Mumbai.  Why does he live in Mumbai  Because he has a job there.
W fr	Vrite questions with Why? and then choose a reason om the box.  Because she works at home. Because he has a job there. Because she's a writer.  Mike lives in Mumbai.  Why does he live in Mumbai  Because he has a job there.  He drives an old car.
W fr 1 2	Vrite questions with Why? and then choose a reason om the box.  Because she works at home. Because he has a job there. Because she's a writer.  Mike lives in Mumbai.  Why does he live in Mumbai  Because he has a job there.  He drives an old car.  Why
W fr	Vrite questions with Why? and then choose a reason om the box.  Because she works at home. Because he has a job there. Because she's a writer.  Mike lives in Mumbai.  Why does he live in Mumbai  Because he has a job there.  He drives an old car.  Why

4 She sits at her computer for ten hours a day.

## Pronouns and possessives

me / him; my / his

6 Complete the chart.

Subject	Object	Possessive
	me	my
You	you	your
He		
She	her	
lt «		its
We		
They		their

- 7 Complete the sentences with me, you, him, her, it, us, them.
  - 1 'John, do you like me ?'
    'Of course I like you!'
  - 2 Maria's English isn't very good. I don't understand \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 Daddy! Look at \_\_\_\_! I'm on the table!
  - 4 A 'My coffee's cold!'
    - B 'Don't drink \_\_\_\_!'
  - 5 I don't like Mike. Please don't invite \_\_\_\_\_ to your house.
  - 6 A 'Is this a photo of \_\_\_\_?'
    - B 'Yes. I was on holiday in Oman.'
  - 7 A 'Peter, I want to speak to \_\_\_\_.
    - B 'Phone\_\_\_later.'
  - 8 Our teacher gives \_\_\_\_\_ too much homework!
  - 9 My neighbours are so loud! Listen to \_\_\_\_!
  - 10 You're so horrible sometimes! Stop \_\_\_\_!
- 8 Complete the sentences with my, your, his, hers, its, our, their.
  - 1 Alice, this is my wife. Kay, this is Alice.
  - 2 A 'Peter, what's \_\_\_\_ email address?'
    - B 'petersmith@hotmail.com'
  - 3 James is a waiter. \_\_\_\_\_ son's a waiter, too.
  - 4 Sue's a doctor. \_\_\_\_\_ daughter's a doctor, too.
  - 5 The cat eats \_\_\_\_\_ food, then it eats the rabbit's food.
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_ teacher gives us too much homework!
  - 7 My children don't like \_\_\_\_\_ teachers.
- 42 Unit 7 · My favourites

#### this / that

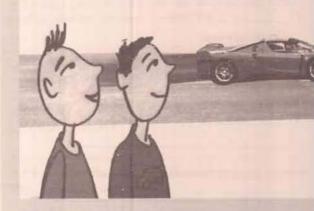
9 173 Complete the conversations with this or that



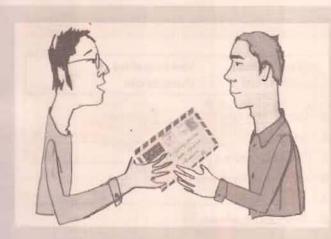
- 1 A Who's that ?
  - B Her name's Lola.



- 2 A What's this ?
  - B It's tomato soup.



- 3 A I love \_\_\_\_ car!
  - B It's great, isn't it!

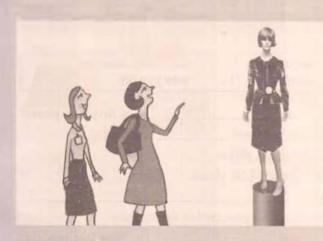


4 A \_\_\_\_\_ letter's for you.

B Oh! Thank you.



5 J Hi, Larry. \_\_\_\_\_ is James. How are you?



6 A How much is \_\_\_\_\_ coat? The black one.

# Vocabulary

Adjectives - happy/miserable

10 Underline the correct word.



Annie is very (1) old / <u>happy</u>. It's Saturday, she doesn't work today, and the weather is (2) lovely / awful. It's summer, and it's (3) cold / hot.

She's in the park. The park is very (4) right / big. A lot of people have (5) hot / delicious picnics. The flowers are (6) beautiful / terrible.

Annie wants an ice-cream. 'How much is an ice-cream?' '20p.' 'Wow! That's (7) cheap / expensive!'

Annie and her friends love the park. 'It's (8) horrible / wonderful here!' says Annie.



Mike is very miserable. It's Monday morning, and it's time for work. The weather is (1) big / awful. It's winter, and it's (2) nice / wet outside.

It's 6.30 in the morning, and Mike feels (3) great / awful. He's tired. His flat is very (4) old / new, and the heating isn't very good, so it's (5) hot / cold in winter.

The flat is £1,000 a week, so it is very (6) cheap / expensive. And there is only one bedroom, so the flat is very (7) small / big. too.

This is why Mike isn't (8) happy / great.

# **Everyday English**

Can 1 ...?

11 T7.4 Write a line from the box in the correct place.

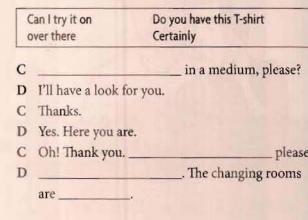
1 In a café



	low much is that? Anything to eat?		late cake
A B	Can I have a cup of	of tea	, please?
A	Yes. Can I have a	piece of	
B	Of course. Here y	ou are.	
В	That's £4.60, plea	se.	

2 In a clothes shop





3 In a train station



1	ave a ticket single	Can I pay by credit card enter your PIN
С	Can I	to Brighton, plea
D	Do you want	or a return?
C	A single, please.	
D	That's £25.50, please	
C		
D	Sure. Put your card	in the machine.
	And	Now take your o

# Don't forget!

#### Vocabulary

12 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword. All the words are in Unit 7 of the Student's Book.



#### Grammar

13 Write the correct answer.

1	How much money do you have?
	a How much b How many
2	do you live in London?
	Because I like it.
	a When b Why
3	is your favourite actor?
	Johnny Depp. a Who b How
4	Pete is great. I like very much. a him b his
5	My sister has a flat. I live with
	a she b her
6	They aren't your books! They're my books!
	Give!
	a they me b them to me

#### Prepositions

14 Complete the sentences with a preposition from the box.

Ľ	of to with	for	at	in
1	Jane's married	to Pete.		
2	What do you do	you	ir free	time?
3	I have a present _	you		
4	Look that	photo! Is	that yo	ou?
5.	In the evening I l	isten	_CD	S.
6	Can I speak	_you, ple	ase?	
7	This is a photo	me w	ith my	brother.
8	Thank you	my prese	nt.	
9	We go a re	estaurant_		a pizza.
10	I live my r	nother and	d sister	rs.

# its them me their my



Rooms and furniture • There is/There are
Prepositions on/under/next to ...
Vocabulary revision • Directions

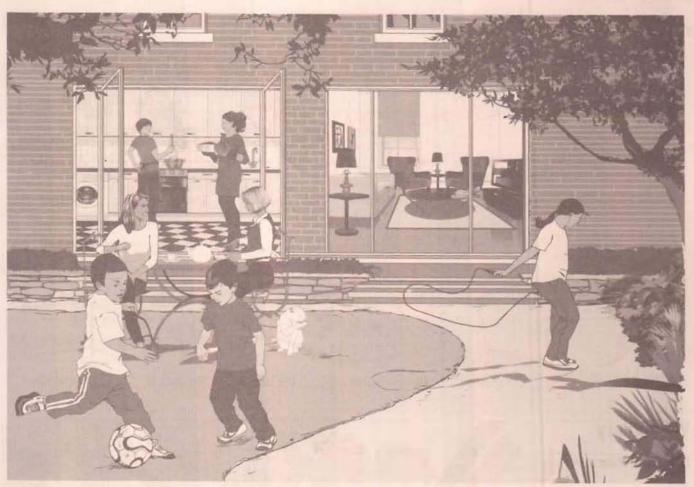
# Where I live

# Rooms and furniture

1	1	We eat in the dining room.  We relax and watch TV in the	3 Write a word from the  a picture posters a balcony magazi	The state of the s
	3		a baccorry magazi	ies a tonet
		I have a shower in the		
		I sleep in my	DES TO	Sailing
2		ick (✔) the correct word.	6	movies
	1	We keep milk in the fridge. shower.		The or have
	2	I sleep in my desk. bed.	1 a picture	2
	3	We cook lunch on the cooker. fridge.		
	4	I sit on the laptop when I watch TV.		
	5	I do my homework at my desk. lamp.	3	4
	6	We sit at the desk when we have lunch.	Sydne Sydne	y to one
	7	I play games on my DVD player.   laptop.	Tediti 1	
	8	My sister always sits in my father's armchair. bag.	5	6

# There is/There are

# In the garden



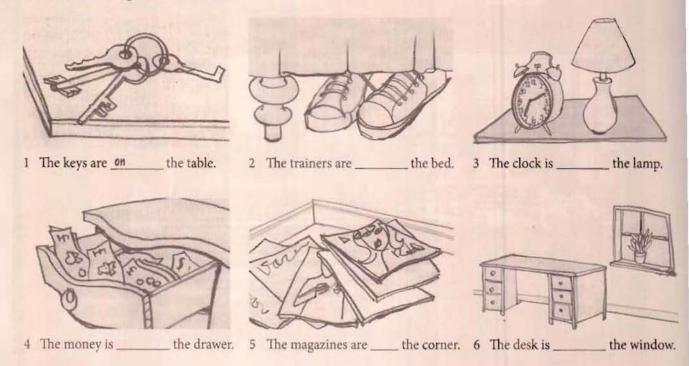
4	Look a false (		cture. Are the sentences true (🗸) or
	1 🗸	There ar	re two boys playing football.
	2 X	There's a	PlayStation* in the living room.
	3	There's a	table in the kitchen.
	4	There ar	e three lamps in the living room.
	5	There's a	desk in the living room.
	6	There's a	cooker in the kitchen.
5	T 8.2 There		plete the sentences with There's or
	1 The	re's	a table in the garden.
	2		_ two women sitting at the table.
	3		a pot of tea on the table.
	4		_ a cat in the garden.
	5		_ two people cooking in the kitchen.
	6		_ a sofa in the living room.

6	T 8.3 Make or There aren't.	negative sentences with There isn't
	1 There aren't	any posters on the walls.
	2	a bird in the garden, just a cat.
	3	any flowers in the garden.
	4	a PlayStation* in the living room.
	5	any people in the living room.
	6	a DVD player.
7	1 Is there a ba	
	2	a girl in the garden?
	3	any armchairs in the living room?
	4	any children in the house?
		any similar in the trouber

# Prepositions

on/under/next to ...

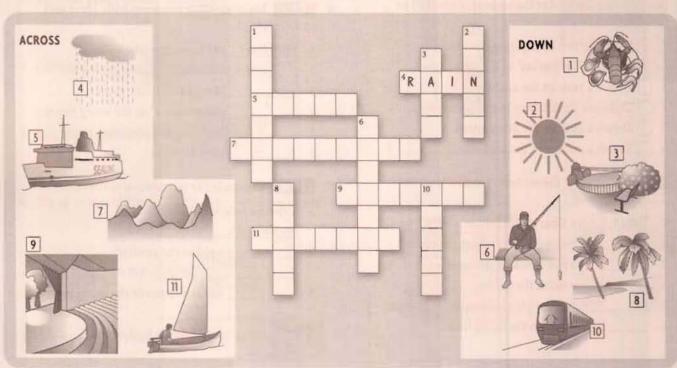
8 Where are the things? Write sentences.



# Vocabulary

Revision - Vancouver

9 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword. All the words are in the reading text on p60-61 of the Student's Book.



48 Unit 8 . Where I live

# **Everyday English**

#### Directions

10 Look at the map of Appleby. Write the places in the box on the map.

park	fish and chip shop	railway station
castle	sports centre	car park
supermarket	chemist's	

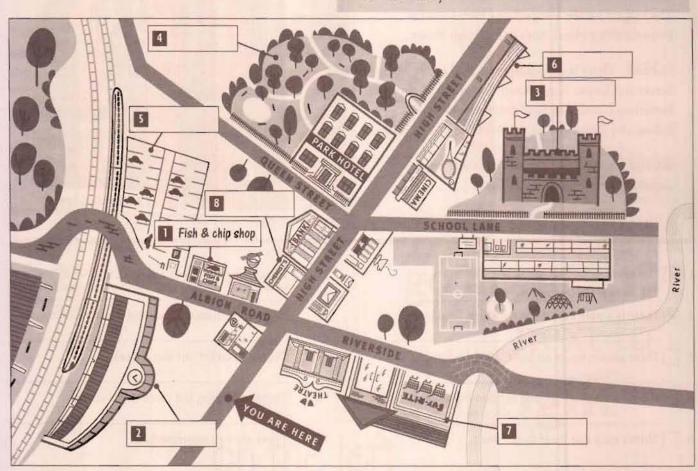
11 T 8.5 Listen to the directions. Start from YOU ARE HERE. Follow the directions. Where are you?

Go down the High Street. Turn left into Albion Road. It's on the right, next to the Chinese restaurant. Where are you?

	The fish and chip shop
1	
2	The seed Belling to
3	and the first of
4	I Harman Laborator
5	

12	T 8.6	Listen and	complete t	he conversations.
-	Man Shadadard St.	THOPPET MINE	comprese :	TIC COLLICION COLOR

1	В	Excuse me! Is there a bank near here?  Yes straight on. It's on the,  next to the  Thanks a lot.
2		Excuse me! How do I get to the railway station?  Go down the High Street. Turn Go down Road. It's near the bridge, on the
	C	That's very kind. Thank you.
3	F	Excuse me! How the sports centre?  Go Street. Go past the post office, past School Lane. It's right, the cinema.  Thank you very much.
4	H	Excuse me! a supermarket ?  Yes. Turn into Riverside. It's on near the river.  Thanks. Bye!



13 Read about the town of Berkhamsted. Are these sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false sentences.

# Berkhamsted OFFICIAL GUIDE

**DESCRIPTION** Berkhamsted is a historic market town 20 miles north of London. It has a population of 19,000, and is in the middle of beautiful English countryside.

PLACES OF INTEREST The Castle is more than 1,000 years old. It is open every day, and it is free.

The Ashridge Estate is a huge park with woods, views, and walks. There is a shop and a cafe.

TRAVEL There are four trains an hour into London. The journey takes 30–40 minutes.

The biggest are the King's Arms Hotel and the Pennyfarthing Hotel, both in the High Street.

SHOPS There is everything you need in the High Street and Lower Kings Road. You will find chemists, bookshops, specialist food shops, clothes shops, bakers, dry cleaners – all the usual high street shops.

SUPERMARKETS The town has two big supermarkets, Waitrose and Tesco.

MARKET There is a street market every Saturday.

RESTAURANTS AND CAFES You will find French, Italian, Thai, and Indian restaurants.

There are also coffee bars and tea rooms on the High Street.

CINEMA The Rex Cinema is in a luxurious 1930s building.



1	The castle is 2,000 years old.  The castle is 1,000 years old.	6 You can buy things to eat, read, and wear.
2	There is a park called the Ashridge Estate.	7 There are Mediterranean and Asian restaurants.
3	There are six trains an hour into London.	8 There's a market one day a week.
4	It takes an hour to get into London from Berkhamsted.	9 There's a theatre, but there isn't a cinema.
5	There's only one hotel in the town.	10 There are two supermarkets.

# Don't forget!

#### Vocabulary and grammar

14 Write the correct answer.	16 Look at the sentences with so and because.
1 You can get a train at a railway station.	I like my job because it's interesting.
a bus b train	He has a lot of problems, so he isn't very happy.
2 My brother's a	Complete the sentences with so or because.
a cook b cooker	1 I start work at 5 in the morning, \$0 I go to
3 You can buy books in a	bed early.
a library b bookshop	2 I like my job I have a lot of friends the
4 A laptop is a small	3 I want to move I need a bigger house.
a computer b DVD player.	That's why.
5 fifteen students in my class.	4 I want to be a professional tennis player,
a There are b Are	1 practise every day.
6 a chemist's near here?	
a Is b Is there	Numbers
7 Paul! Come on! Your lunch is the table.	
a next to b on	17 Write the numbers.
8 Where are my car keys? Are they the	15 fifteen thirteen
drawer?	eight twelve
a in b under	thirty fifty-eight
	twenty-five nine
And and but	sixty forty-two
15 Look at the sentences with and and but.	18 Write the numbers as words.
I like coffee and I like tea. (**)	36 thirty-six
I like Ahmed, but I don't like his son.	4
	72
Complete the sentences with and or but.	88
1 I have a house in the country and I have a flat in Istanbul.	10
2 I love the house, my neighbours are horrible.	
3 I have two jobs. I work in a café I'm a taxi	
driver.	
4 I want to go shopping, I don't have any	go down
money.	90 001111
	next to
	HEXT TO

So and because

turn right

on the left

Now you can go to

Writing Support CD-ROM Module 4



Saying years • was/were • Past Simple – irregular verbs have/do/go • Months and dates

Times past

# Saying years

1 19.1 Listen and match the years.

1 2006	two thousand and twenty (twenty twenty)
2 2000	two thousand and six
3 2010	two thousand and ten (twenty ten)
4 2015	two thousand
5 2020	two thousand and fifteen (twenty fifteen)
6 1995	nineteen eighty-two
7 1990	nineteen sixteen
8 1982	nineteen ninety
9 1960	nineteen ninety-five
10 1916	nineteen sixty

- 2 T 9.2 Listen and write the years.
  - 1 <u>2009</u> 4 \_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_
- 3 Write the years in words.

1 1985	nineteen eighty-five
2 1940	
3 1999	
4 1973	TO THE REAL PROPERTY.
5 2001	
6 2005	
7 2008	The second
8 2012	

4 T 9.3 Do the Dates Quiz. Choose a year from the box.

1969 1989 1948 2008 1945

# **Dates Quiz**



When were the Olympic Games in China?



When was the assassination of Gandhi?

When was the end of the Second World War?





When was the first man on the moon?

was/were	Tom
was born	
5 T 9.4 Listen to Tom. Complete the sentences.	
1 My mother was born in Chicago in 1960.	AND AND AND ASSESSED.
2 My father in New York in 1958.	
3 I in 1985.	
4 My grandparentsin the United States.	
5 My mother's parents in Sweden.	
6 My father's parents in Ireland.	
6 T 9.5 Listen to Tom saying more about his relatives. Complete the sentences.	A A PARTIES
I My mothera pharmacist.	
2 My father a professor.	
3 They at university together.	
4 My father's parents very poor.	
5 My mother's parents married in	
Sweden. They met in the States.	
6 Grandpa Fredrik an engineer.	
7 Grandma Smilla a teacher.	
8 Pat and Paddy happy at first. Life	
very hard for them.	
Questions	
Questions	COMPANY OF VIEW OF THE PARTY OF
7 Complete the questions.	
1 Where was Tom's mother born ?	
In Chicago.	
2 When?	24 24
In 1960.  3 Where his mother's parents?	
In Sweden.	The second secon
4 What Fredrik's job?	N. CERRONNE
He an engineer.	
	TO UTODA
Negatives	
8 Complete the negative sentences.	THE PARTY OF THE P
1 Tom's mother wasn't born in Sweden.	8
2 His father in Ireland.	A Comment of the Comm
3 His grandparents in the United State:	11816
Pat and Paddy happy at first?'	
'No, they'	ACCRECATE THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF THE

# Reading

9 Read about Bruce Lee and Princess Diana. Use your dictionary.



# Bruce Lee 1940–1973

Bruce Lee was a Chinese American. He was famous as an actor in martial arts films of the twentieth century.

He was born in San Francisco, California, but he lived in Hong Kong until he was eighteen. His father was an opera and film actor. His mother came from one of the richest families in Hong Kong. Bruce Lee's family was very wealthy.

Bruce Lee started studying the Chinese martial art of Win Chun when he was 13, but he was often in street fights. So his parents sent him to live in the United States with his sister, Agnes.

He was a student at the University of Washington. Here he met his wife Linda. They married in 1964.

He was a teacher of Kung Fu. He was extremely fit and very strong.

Bruce Lee's film career started with roles on TV. His most famous film was Enter the Dragon.

Bruce Lee died just after he finished this film. He was only 33 years old.

# Princess Diana 1961–1997



Princess Diana was the first wife of Charles, Prince of Wales.

She was born in Sandringham, England. Her father was
John, Earl Spencer, and her mother was Frances, Viscountess
Althorp. They were both friends of the Royal family. Her
parents argued a lot. She wasn't a happy child.

Diana was at a lot of schools, but she wasn't a good student. In London she was a teacher in a children's school. She met Prince Charles in 1980 at a dinner party.

She was 20 years old when she married Prince Charles. She had two sons, William and Harry, but her marriage wasn't happy. Later on, Diana was very busy with charity work, visiting hospitals and poor countries in Africa.

She died in a car accident in Paris in August 1997. She was only 36 years old.

Answer the questions about Bruce Lee.

- 1 What nationality was he?
- 2 Where was he famous for?
- 3 Where was he born?
- 4 What was his father's job?
- 5 How old was he when he started studying martial arts?
- 6 What was his job before he started acting?
- 7 What was his most famous film?
- 8 How old was he when he died?

Answer the questions about Princess Diana.

- 1 Where was she born?
- 2 Who were her parents?
- 3 Who were her parents' friends?
- 4 Was she a happy child?
- 5 What was her job in London?
- 6 How old was she when she married Charles?
- 7 Where was she when she died?
- 8 How did she die?

# Past Simple

#### Irregular verbs

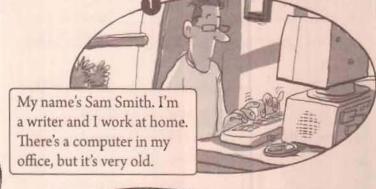
- 10 Complete the irregular forms. Use a, e, i, o, and u.
  - 1 am/is was
- 5 say
- 2 are w\_r\_
- 6 see s\_w
- b\_\_ght 3 buy
- 7 take

- 4 go
- w\_nt
- 11 Complete the text. Use the irregular verbs in the box

bought said saw took saw was went went were



So, yesterday morning I (1) went to London to buy a new computer.



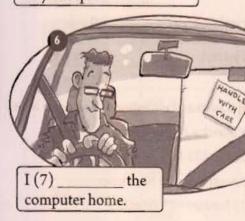


I(2) a lot of computers in shops in Oxford Street, but they

(3) very expensive.

Then I (4) small shop near Hyde Park. The computers there were very cheap.

I(5) computer for £499. The shop assistant : 'It's very good and it's very cheap.'



television. It (9)

But yesterday evening I(8) the same computer on

£299! I was very upset!

# Vocabulary

#### have/do/go

12 Complete the sentences with a word that goes with have/do/go. They are on page 70 of the Student's Book. Do the crossword.

#### ACROSS

- 2 We went on \_\_\_\_\_ to Egypt. (7)
- 3 It's late and I'm tired. I want to go \_\_\_\_\_ now. (4)
- 4 It was a lovely day so I went for a \_\_\_\_ with my friend.
  (4)
- 9 I went \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday and I bought a new jumper. (8)
- 10 I have a \_\_\_\_\_ every morning, not a bath. (6)
- 11 I go to the gym every day. I like to do some \_\_\_\_\_. (8)



#### DOWN

- 1 The picnic was great! Everyone had a good \_\_\_\_\_: (4)
- 3 I did some \_\_\_\_\_ because my flat was so messy. (9)
- 5 I have \_\_\_\_\_ at my desk at 1.00. I have a sandwich. (5)
- 6 This morning I had \_\_\_\_\_ at 7.00. I had toast and cereal.
  (9)
- 7 I went to \_\_\_\_\_ early yesterday. The office was quiet. (4)
- 8 I do my \_\_\_\_\_ with my dictionary and this Workbook. (8)

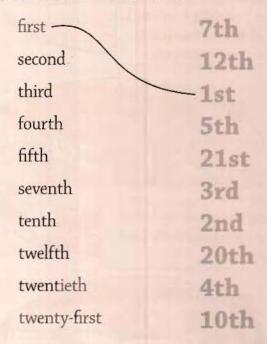
# **Everyday English**

#### Months and dates

13 Write in the missing months in the calendar from the box.

June August	February April	December October
January	February	March
	May	
July		September
	November	

14 Match the words and numbers.



15 T 9.6 Listen and underline the date you hear.

- 1 8 March / 18 April
- 2 2 June / 22 July
- 3 September / 3 November
- 4 15 January / 15 February
- 5 10 May / 20 June
- 6 25 December / 16 August

# Don't forget!

#### Grammar

16 Complete the chart.

#### Verb to be in the Past Simple

	Positive	Negative
1	was	
You		weren't
He/She		
We	were	
They		weren't

#### 17 Write the correct answer.

1	Ayrton	Senna	was	a racing	driver.
---	--------	-------	-----	----------	---------

a be b was

born in Damascus in 1978.

a was b am

3 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you yesterday?

a was b were

4 You \_\_\_\_\_ at school. Were you ill?

a no were b weren't

5 My sister and I \_\_\_\_\_ happy as children.

a were b was

5 My parents \_\_\_\_\_ Irish. They were English.

a wasn't b weren't

#### Vocabulary

#### 18 Complete the chart.

Present	Past
80	went
tare	
	did
386	
boy	
	said
find	
	came
make	

19 Complete the sentences with did or	c made.
---------------------------------------	---------

1	Exercise 1	was easy, so I did	exercises 2 and 3
	TUTTO T	Tras cast, so I	CACICIOCO L MIIM L

2 Bruce Lee made a lot of films.

3 I \_\_\_\_\_ dinner last night. It was delicious.

4 You \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of mistakes in your homework.

Do it again!

5 I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of work yesterday. I'm very tired today.

6 Do you like this cake? I \_\_\_\_\_ it.

#### Word order

20	Write the word	on the right in	the correct	place i	n the
	sentence.				

I born in Scotland.	1
I was born in Scotland.	
I went to cinema last night.	2
I my homework before I go to bed.	3
I like school because is interesting.	4
I have shower, then I have breakfast.	5
'What you do?' 'I'm businessman.'	6
	I went to cinema last night.  I my homework before I go to bed.  I like school because is interesting.  I have shower, then I have breakfast.

# was wasn't weren't weren't

7 I have tea for breakfast.

usually



Past Simple – regular verbs • Questions and negatives
Making conversation • Sport and leisure activities
Going sightseeing

We had a great time!

#### rast simple

#### Regular verbs

1 Write the Past Simple of these regular verbs.

play	->	played	like	<b>→</b>	liked
watch	-		live		
want	->		phone	-	
listen	-		visit	<b>→</b>	
start	-		love	-	
work	-		stay	-	

#### Pronunciation

2 T10.1 Write the Past Simple of the verbs in exercise 1 in the correct column for the pronunciation of -ed.

/t/	/d/	/id/
watched	played	wanted

Listen and repeat.

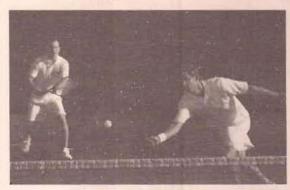
#### Irregular verbs

3 Write the Past Simple of these irregular verbs.

get	-+	got	do	4	
buy	-		go	->	
have	-		see	<b>→</b>	

#### **Telling stories**

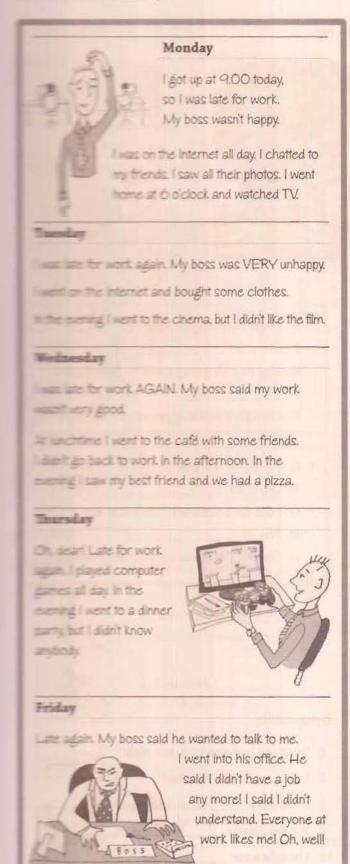
4 T 10.2 Complete the sentences with Past Simple verbs from this page.



Yesterday I (1) played tennis with Tom. Then
I (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ shopping in town. In a clothes shop
I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a lovely jumper. It wasn't expensive,
so I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ it. Then it (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to rain,
so I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ home.



When Annie was young, she (7) lived \_\_\_\_\_\_ in a house near her aunt. Every Sunday she (8) \_\_\_\_\_\_ her aunt and (9) \_\_\_\_\_\_ tea with her. They (10) \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the radio or (11) \_\_\_\_\_ TV. Annie loved visiting her aunt because they always (12) \_\_\_\_\_\_ a good time together.



#### Questions and negatives

6		10.3 Complete the que	estions about Kevin's week.
	1		on Monday morning?
		He got up at 9 o'clock.	
	2	What	
		He stayed at home and	
	3	What	
		He bought some clothe	
	4	Where He went to the cinema.	
	-		
	5	Who o	on wednesday:
7			questions about Kevin.
	1	work hard last week?  Did he work hard last week	3
		No, he didn't.	;
	2	like the film?	?
	2	h 2	
	3	have a pizza?	e le due moner p
			JULIE TENER STORY
	4	enjoy the dinner party	Mattal-Tipach 7-
	-	enjoy the unifier party:	?
o	-		
8		omplete the negative ser	
		He didn't get up	
		Не	
		Не	
	4	He Wednesday afternoon.	
	5	- 1	anybody at the dinner party.
	-		, coa, at the diffici party.

# Making conversation

Was it a good match?

9 T10.4 Complete the conversations with a question from the box.

#### Was it a good match?

Was it good?

What was the score?

What did you do?

Did you buy anything?

What did she cook?

Where did you go?

Is it clean now?



	B A B	I watched the football on TV last night.  Oh, did you? Was it a good match?  Yes, it was great. Arsenal played really well. ?  Arsenal won 2-1.
2	С	I went to Amy's house for a meal on Sunday.
	D	Oh, really??
	C	An Italian dish – lasagne.
	D	Mmm!?
	C	It was delicious!

3	E	I went shopping on Saturday.
	F	Did you??
	E	That new shopping centre in Manchester.
	F	?
	E	I bought a wedding present for my sister.

4	G	I stayed at home all weekend!
	H	Oh, dear!?
	G	I did the housework. The house was so dirty!
	H	Was it??
	G	Oh, ves! But it was such a boring weekend!

# Time expressions

in/at/on

10 Complete the sentences with a preposition (in, at, or on) or [-] no preposition.

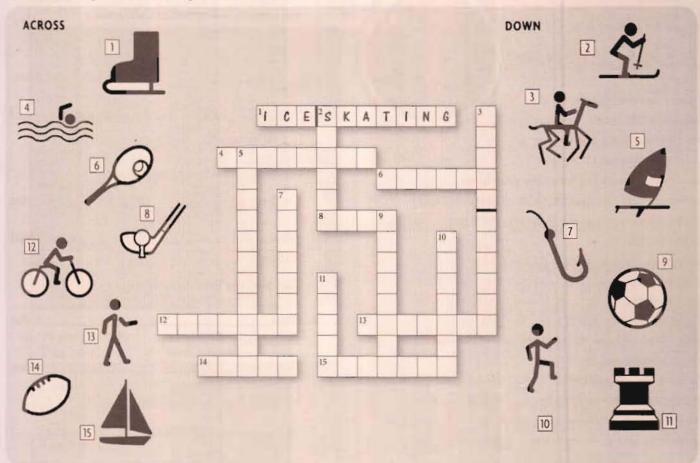
- I went to a wedding on Saturday.
   I got up late \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
- 3 We went to Turkey \_\_\_\_\_ 2005.
- 4 1 start work \_\_\_\_\_ 9.00.
- 5 I phoned you \_\_\_\_\_ five minutes ago.

- 6 What did you do \_\_\_\_ last night?
- 7 I relax \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend.
- 8 I met Alice \_\_\_\_\_ six months ago.
- 9 We saw Hassan \_\_\_\_\_ Wednesday.
- 10 I bought a car \_\_\_\_ last year.

## Vocabulary

#### Sport and leisure activities

11 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.



go or play?

12 T10.5 Complete the sentences with go or play in the Past Simple and an activity.



Yesterday I played golf
 with my friends.



5 In 2008 I \_\_\_\_\_ in the Alps.



2 Last week I \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the country.



6 I \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday.

It was a terrible match. 8–0!



3 Ten days ago I \_\_\_\_\_ in the sea.



7 Last summer I \_\_\_\_\_\_ for the first time. I loved it!



4 At the weekend I for my team.



8 We \_\_\_\_\_ in the mountains. It was great!

## Reading

13 Read about Daisy's holiday. Use your dictionary.

## A holiday in Disneyland

Last year I went on holiday to
Disneyland in California. I went with my
parents and my sister and brother, and for
all of us it was the best holiday!

We stayed in a very big hotel. We were in an apartment. It had four bedrooms and bathrooms, and we had a living room, where there was the biggest TV in the world!

Every day we did something different. One day we went to Universal Studios and saw how they make films.

Another day we went to the Magic Mountain Theme Park and we went on lots of rides. The best was Goliath. Then we went to SeaWorld, where we saw whales and dolphins.

My father was happy becase he played golf in the mornings. My mother was happy because she went to the sports club. My sister and brother and I loved it because there was so much to do. Our hotel had three swimming pools! In the evening we went to different restaurants. One night we went to Pizza Express, where we made our own pizzas! It was great!

And the weather was beautiful all the time we were there.

We had a fabulous time, and we all want to go back!



62 Unit 10 - We had a great time!

14 Complete the questions or answers.

1 Where did Daisy go on holiday

She went to Disneyland in California.

2 Who did she go with?

3 Where \_\_\_\_\_

and brother and sister

In a very big hotel.

4 Did they do the same thing every day?

No, they \_\_\_\_\_\_ every day.

5 What \_\_\_\_\_\_ at Universal Studios?

They saw how they make films.

6 What \_\_\_\_\_\_at the Theme Park?

They went \_\_\_\_\_ rides.

7 What did they see at SeaWorld?

8 What did her parents do all day?

Her father \_\_\_\_\_\_

Her mother

9 Why \_\_\_\_\_ the children \_\_\_\_\_ the holiday?

Because \_\_\_\_\_\_ so much to do

10 What did they do in Pizza Express?

their own \_\_\_\_\_

## **Everyday English**

#### Going sightseeing

15 T10.6 Write a line from the box to complete the dialogue.



do you want to	go
show me	

a map of the town some information

- 1 A Hello. Can I have a map of the town please? B Of course. Here you are. A Can you \_\_\_\_ where we are
  - on the map? B We're here in the city centre.
  - Where \_\_\_\_\_?
  - A The museum. Can you give me \_\_\_about it?

does it open	Is it far	is it to get in	does it clos

- 2 B Certainly. What do you want to know?
  - A \_\_\_\_\_\_from here?
  - B Not at all. Just five minutes.
  - A What time \_ and what time
  - B It opens at 9.00 and closes at 6.00.
  - A And how much \_\_\_\_\_?
  - B It's free.

## Don't forget!

#### Grammar

16 Complete the chart.

#### Past simple

	Positive	Negative	Question
1	played	didn't play	Did I play?
You			Did you play?
He/She	played		
We		didn't play	
They			Did they play?

- 17 Complete the sentences with did, was, or were.
  - I Where were you yesterday at 2.00?
  - 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ with Henry.
  - 3 What \_\_\_\_\_ you do yesterday afternoon?
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ you have a good time at the match?
  - 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ very happy as a child.
- 18 Write the correct answer.
  - to Oman for my last holiday. 1 I went
    - b went a goed
  - 2 We \_\_\_\_ with my aunt and uncle.
    - a stayed b staid
  - 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ a pair of jeans at the shops
    - a buyed b bought
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ them in the mall?
    - a Did you buy b Did you buyed
  - 5 What \_\_\_\_\_last night?
    - a did you b did you do
  - 6 When \_\_\_ to Australia?
    - a did you go b you go

liked started listened



can/can't • Adverbs – very well/not at all ...

Requests and offers • Adjective + noun

Everyday problems

I can do that!

#### can/can't

#### cook/run fast

1 T11.1 Write what the people can do. Choose from the box.

ride a motorbike cook walk run fast draw play chess ride a horse ski speak Russian

- 1 Laura can cook.
- 2 Ben
- 3 Sam\_\_\_\_
- 4 Anna \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Kirsty\_\_\_\_
- 6 Andy
- 7 Zoë
- 8 Tony
- 9 Dmitri



















2 Match a line in A with a line in B and a line in C.

A	В	C	
A farmer —	can fly	a tractor.	4
An interpreter	can drive	buildings.	
A pilot	can cook	several languages.	
An architect	can speak	software,	
A chef	can write	delicious food.	
A computer programmer	can draw	a plane.	

64 Unit 11 . I can do that!

#### Questions and short answers

3 T11.2 Ask Mike questions and answer them.



5 X	F

1	A	Can you draw well, Mike	e ?
	M	Yes, I can.	
2	A	Can you	, Mike?
	M	No,	
3	A		
	M		
4	A		
	M		
5	A	Statistics of Statistics of	play chess, Mike
	M	Partie III	

#### Negatives

- 4 T 11.3 Write negative sentences.
  - Mike / Japanese
     Mike can't speak Japanese.

- 2 Zara / run
- 3 You / cook
- 4 I / write English
- 5 We / draw
- 6 They / play chess

### Pronunciation

/kən/and/ka:nt/

5 T 11.4 Notice the difference in stress when the sentence is positive or negative.

Positive	I can write.	can /kən/
Negative	I can't draw.	can't /ka:nt/

- T11.5 Listen and <u>underline</u> what you hear, can or can't.
- 1 I can / can't play chess a little bit.
- 2 My sister can/can't cook at all.
- 3 We can / can't speak English quite well.
- 4 I can / can't understand a word she says.
- 5 I can/can't see you on Thursday. Sorry. I'm busy.
- 6 Peter can / can't swim really well.
- 7 We can/can't go shopping. We don't have any money.
- 8 You can / can't all come to my house.

#### Adverbs

very well/not at all

6 T 11.6 Listen to Helen. Complete her sentences with words from the box.

ery well re	ally well	quite well	a little bit	(not) at all	fluently
I can speak F	rench quit	e well .	4	I can't use an	Apple Mac
My parents ca	an speak I	Russian	5	My sister and	I can play tenni
I can use a Po			6	But we can si	ki

## Requests and offers

Can I ...? Can you ...?

7 Complete A's questions with Can I / you ...? with a line from the box.

open the door for me have a coffee give me the salt and pepper turn your radio down

- 8 T11.7 Complete the dialogues with B's answer from the box.
  - 1 A Can I have a coffee, please?
    - B Sure! To have here or take away?

Sure! To have here or take away?
I'm sorry. I didn't know it was so loud.
Of course! Here you are!
With pleasure! Do you want me to carry something for you?



A Can I have a coffee , please?



A Can you \_\_\_\_\_, please?
B \_\_\_\_\_



A Can you \_\_\_\_\_, please?
B \_\_\_\_\_



A Can you \_\_\_\_\_\_, please?
B \_\_\_\_\_\_

## Reading

9 Read the newspaper article.

## Meet ASIMO, the humanoid robot

Say hello to **ASIMO**, the robot from Honda. He can walk and play football. He can go up and down stairs, and give people drinks.

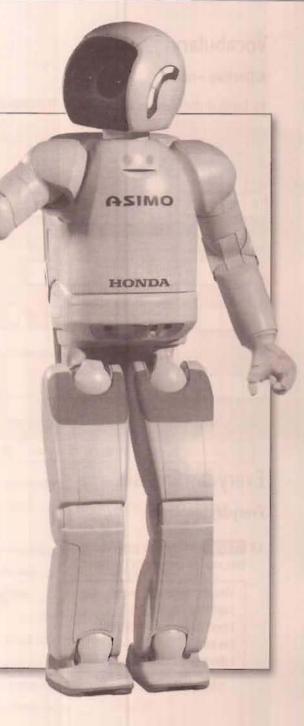
He can also stand on one foot, and run.

ASIMO stands for 'Advanced Step in Innovative Mobility'.

**ASIMO** is a people-friendly robot. Honda hopes that one day it can live with people and help them at work and at home.

ASIMO can recognize people's faces, say hello, and shake hands. He can understand when people talk to him, and answer questions.

In May 2008 ASIMO conducted the Detroit Symphony
Orchestra. He walked onto the stage and said 'Hello, everyone.
This is a beautiful concert hall.' The orchestra then played, and
ASIMO conducted. At the end of the performance, he gave a
bow. Fortunately, the music was short. ASIMO's batteries only
last for 20 minutes.



#### 10 Answer the questions.

T	Put a V	or a A.	Can	ASIMO.	
	✓ walk		play	football	

walk play football drink
eat shake hands run
see ask questions speak

2 Who makes ASIMO? \_\_\_\_\_

3 What does Honda want ASIMO to do?

4 Can ASIMO understand when people speak to him?

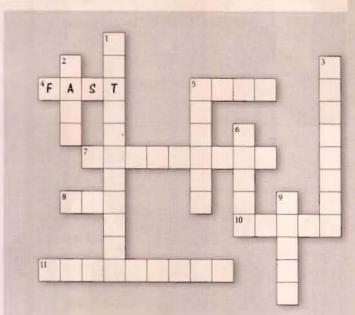
5 What did ASIMO do in May 2008?

6 What did ASIMO say?

## Vocabulary

#### Adjective + noun

11 Look at the pictures and clues. Do the crossword.

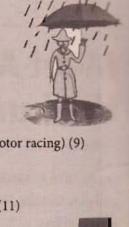


#### ACROSS

- 4 a f \_\_t car (4)
- 5 a b \_ \_ y street (not quiet) (4)
- 7 a d\_l\_ c\_\_\_s meal (9)
- 8 w\_\_ weather (3)
- 10 a y \_ \_ g man (not old) (5)
- 11 a d\_\_g\_r\_\_s sport (like motor racing) (9)

#### DOWN

- 1 an i\_t\_\_\_\_t\_\_g book (11)
- 2 a t\_\_ l building (4)
- 3 an exc\_\_\_\_ g film (8)
- 5 a b\_r\_ g lesson (6)
- 6 a f\_n\_y story (5)
- 9 a s\_n\_y morning (5)



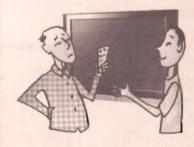
## Everyday English

#### Everyday problems

12 T11.8 Write the problem in the box under the correct picture.

This printer doesn't work!
I can't turn on the TV!
I can't find my plane tickets!
I'm lost.

I don't understand what it says.



- 1 A I can't turn on the TV!
  - B Push this button.



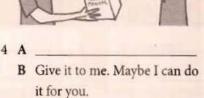
2 A Excuse me! \_

Where's the town centre?

B Go straight down here.



- 3 A
  - B I know. It broke down yesterday.





- 5 A Oh, no! \_\_
  - B Calm down! They're in your pocket!

68 Unit II . I can do that!

## Don't forget!

can

13 Complete the chart.

Can	Positive	Question	Negative
1	I can swim.	Can I swim?	
You			You can't swim.
She			
They	*	Can they swim?	

#### Adverbs

14 Complete the sentences with an adverb from the box.

always	never	sometimes	often	
1 I always	che	eck my ema	ils in the ev	ening.
(1111	1)			
2 I	get	up early at	the weeken	d. (XXXXX)
3 I	go	out with m	y friend on	Saturday
afterno	on. (////	(J)		
4 We		go jogging i	n the park.	(XX/X/)
		usually		THEFT
Hachely	Sionty	usuany	carcially	
5 Our tea	cher speal	ks English <u>f</u>	luently	
6 I	ge	t up at 7.00.		
7 I can't	understand	l you. Pleas	e speak	
8 Do you	r homewo	ork	You n	nake a lot of
mistak	96			

#### Vocabulary

15 Match the opposite adjectives.

A		В
1	old	a small
2	good	b b young
3	cheap	c cold
4	hot	d Dad
5	big	e expensive
6	old	f boring
7	fast	g new
8	dangerous	h quiet
9	interesting	i slow
10	busy	j 🔲 safe

#### Prepositions

16 Complete the sentences with a preposition from the box.

	with at to	for	about	on	of	in
1	I use a computer	at	work	and_a	t	home.
2	It's very kind	you	to invit	e me_		_your
	house.					
3	I like listening _	th	ne radio	).		
4	I buy clothes	the	Intern	et.		
5	I play chess	_ a pa	rtner _	N	los	cow.
6	I chat my	friend	s	the Ir	ter	net.
7	I need some info	rmatio	n	_ train	tin	nes.
8	This is a present		you.			
9	There's somethin	ng wron	ng	_ my c	om	puter.
0	Do you want to	go	a wa	lk?		

can't cook at all

can draw well

speak English fluently



some/any • I'd like a ... /I'd like to ...

Offering things • like and would like • Food

Please and thank you

### What's in the basket?

1 Tick (✓) what	you can see in	the shopping basket
-----------------	----------------	---------------------

-	
1	fruit
	11 (111

water

milk milk

juice

bread meat

cheese cake

## some/any

### Adam's shop

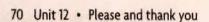
#### 2 Look at Adam's shop.

What does/doesn't he have? What is there/isn't there? He has some chicken. He doesn't have any cheese. There's some chicken. There isn't any cheese.

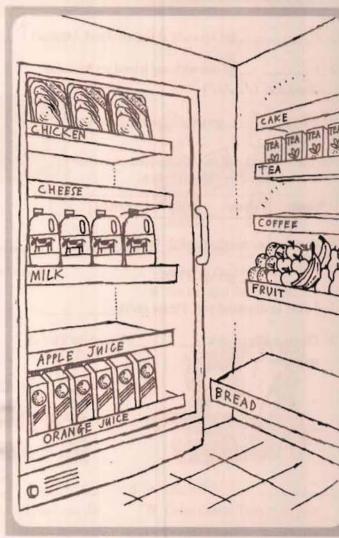
- 1 He has some orange juice.
- 2 There isn't any apple juice.
- 3 There \_\_\_\_\_\_tea.
- 4 He \_\_\_\_\_\_ coffee.
- 5 He \_\_\_\_\_ milk.
- 6 There \_\_\_\_\_\_ bread.
- 7 He \_\_\_\_\_fruit.
- 8 There \_\_\_\_\_ cake.

#### Questions

- 3 Complete the questions and answers.
  - 1 Does Adam have any chicken?
    Yes, he does.
  - 2 Is there any cheese?
    No, there isn't.
  - 3 Does \_\_\_\_\_\_ coffee?
  - 4 Is \_\_\_\_\_\_ fruit?







## I'd like

#### I'd like a ... /I'd like to ...

4 T12.2 Complete the sentences with I'd like ...



1 I'd like three oranges please.



2 I'd like to try on this jumper please.



3 I'd like \_\_\_\_\_\_, please.



4 I'd like please.



5 \_\_\_\_\_please.

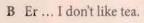


please.

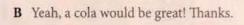
## Offering things

What would you like?

- 5 T12.3 Complete the questions with would like ...?
  - 1 A What would you like to drink
    - B I don't know.
    - A Would you like a cup of tea



- A Would \_\_\_\_\_?
- B Ugh, no! I don't drink coffee!



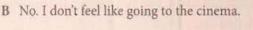




- 2 A What would you like to do tonight ?
  - B I don't know.

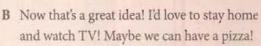
B No. I'm not hungry!

A Would you like to \_\_\_\_\_?



A Would \_\_\_\_?

The second second second







## like and would like

#### like cooking/would like to cook

6 Underline the correct sentence.



I I love ice-cream.
I'd love an ice-cream.



2 Do you like playing chess? Would you like to play chess?



3 Do you like tea? Would you like some tea?



4 I love shopping! I'd love to go shopping.



5 I like drinking water.
I'd like a drink of water.



6 Do you like cooking? Would you like to cook?

#### 7 T12.4 Read the conversation. Underline the correct forms.

- A It's your birthday next week, isn't it? How old are you?
- B Don't ask! Too old!
- A What (1) would you like / do you like for your birthday?
  (2) I like / I'd like to buy you a present! Something nice!
- B Well, that's very kind.
- A What sort of things are you interested in? What (3) do you like I would you like doing?
- B Well, one of my big passions is reading. (4) I love / I'd love reading.
- A And you (5) like / would like cooking, don't you?
- B Yes, it's true. I (6) love / 'd love cooking.
- A Right! That's easy! I'll buy you a cook book! Then you can read and cook!
- B That would be lovely! Thank you!



#### 72 Unit 12 • Please and thank you

## Pronunciation

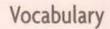
/e/ /i:/ /u:/ /1/

8 T12.5 Write the words about food and drink in the box in the correct column.

bread	chips	cheese	juice	
biscuit	breakfast	food	fr <u>ui</u> t	
b <u>eans</u>	meal	chicken	meat	

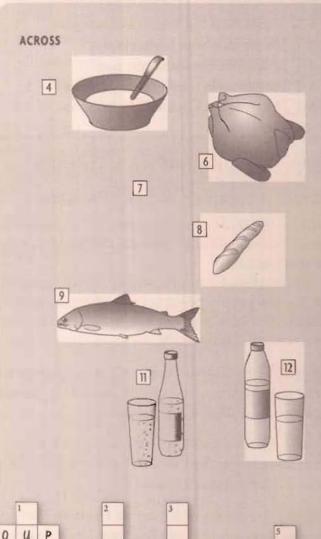
Listen and repeat.

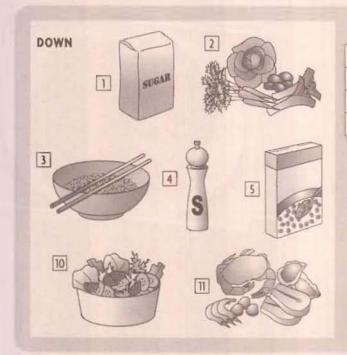
- 9 T 12.6 Match the words that rhyme.
  - 1 chip-
  - 2 cheap
  - 3 steak
  - 4 soup
  - 5 food
  - 6 cheese
  - 7 good
  - 8 pie

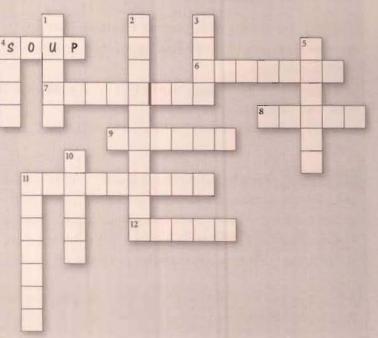


Food

10 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.







## Reading

#### English food

- 11 Read the article about English food. Put a tick (✓) if the sentence is true. Put a (✗) if the sentence is false.
  - 1 People think that English food isn't good.
  - 2 People know what English food is.
  - 3 English food is much better now.
  - 4 English cooks travel to other countries.
  - 5 Most English people eat a big breakfast.

- 6 Lunch is the main meal of the day.
- 7 English people eat dinner late.
- 8 Sunday lunch is a family meal.
- 9 Every town in Britain has international restaurants.
- 10 There is good food and bad food in Britain.

## What do English people eat?

A REPORT BY JAMES BRADFORD

ENGLISH FOOD has a bad reputation. Everybody knows what French food is, and Indian food, and Chinese food. But what is English food?

It is true that, for many years, food in Britain wasn't good. But it is now possible to eat in England and enjoy it! English cooks know a lot more about how to cook, and they borrow ideas from all over the world.

Breakfast For breakfast, most people have just cereal and maybe toast and jam. A Full English breakfast is big – sausages, mushrooms, baked beans, eggs, tomatoes.

Lunch For many people, lunch is a quick meal at about 1.00 pm. It isn't a time to relax, because we're too busy at work or at school. So lunch is just a sandwich or a snack.

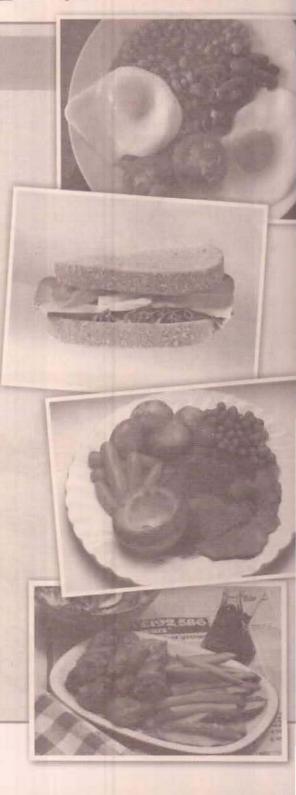
Dinner The evening meal is our main meal. We don't eat late – we eat at about 8. People have maybe meat or pasta, with vegetables or salad.

Sunday lunch is traditionally the one time in the week when the family eats together.

There is roast meat, such as beef or chicken, with lots of vegetables.

Eating out Every high street in Britain has an Indian restaurant and a Chinese restaurant. In London there are restaurants from all over the world – Greek, Italian, Moroccan, Mexican, Lebanese, Iranian ... everywhere. Our traditional fast food is fish and chips, and of course there are places to buy burgers and pizza.

It is possible to eat really bad food in England. But it is also possible to eat very well!



## Don't forget!

#### Grammar

12 Complete the chart.

1	'd like
You	
He/She	
We	'd like
They	

#### like/would like/some

13 Write the correct answer.

- 1 A Good morning! Can I help you?
  - B Yes. I'd like some chicken, please.
    - a I'd like b I like
- 2 A Is your teacher nice?
  - B Yes. \_\_\_\_ her very much.
    - a I like b I'd like
- 3 A \_\_\_\_\_ learning English?
  - B Yes, I do. It's interesting.
    - a Would you like b Do you like
- 4 A I'm thirsty!
  - B What \_\_\_\_\_ to drink?
    - a do you like b w
- b would you like
- 5 A What can I get you?
  - B I'd like \_\_\_\_\_, please.
    - a a cola b cola
- 6 A Who's next? Yes, Madam!
  - B I'd like \_\_\_\_\_, please.
    - a some apples b apples

#### Vocabulary

14 Match a place in A with things to buy in B.

A	В
1 a chemist's	a a cheese sandwich
2 a newsagent's	b 1 some shampoo
3 a post office	c a kilo of tomatoes
4 a café	d a pair of jeans
5 a market	e a cookery book
6 a railway station	f some stamps
7 a clothes shop	g a magazine
8 a bookshop	h a return to Manchester

#### Word order

- 15 Write the word on the right in the correct place in the sentence.
  - 1 I'd like/glass of water, please.
  - 2 Would you like cake?
  - 3 We don't have cheese.

any

some

- 4 What would you like drink?

to

5 Can I have stamps, please?

some

- 6 'James, you like cooking?' 'No, I don't.'
- do
- 7 Here are your apples. Do you want else?

anything

## Would you like ...?

I'd like some ...

Do you like ...?

Now you can go to

Writing Support CD-ROM Module 6



Colours and clothes • Present Continuous

Present Simple or Continuous?

Opposite verbs – leave/arrive • What's the matter?

Here and now

## Colours and clothes

- 1 What colour are these things?
  - 1 a London bus

red

- 2 a New York taxi yellow
- 3 milk
- 4 the sea
- 5 grass
- 6 the night
- 7 chocolate
- 8 clouds

red brown
green
yellow
grey white

2 Look at the pictures and complete the crossword.



### **Present Continuous**

#### She's wearing/talking

3 Complete the sentences. What are the people wearing? What are they doing?



1 Anna's wearing a jacket and top
She's talking on the phone



2 Paul's wearing \_\_\_\_\_\_ sitting in a café,



3 The children are \_\_\_\_\_ and T-shirts. \_\_\_\_\_ for a bus.



4 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ my pyjamas.
I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a book.



5 We \_\_\_\_\_ school uniform.
We \_\_\_\_ studying in class.



6 Fay \_\_\_\_\_a jumper.

## Questions

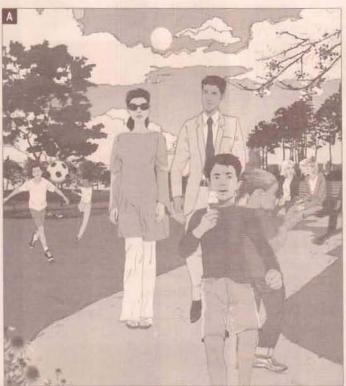
4 TI3.1 Complete the questions and answers about the people in exercise 3.

- 1 Who's Anna talking to? She's talking to her friend.
- 2 What's \_\_\_\_\_ a coffee.
- 3 Where \_\_\_\_\_ going? \_\_\_\_ to school.

- 4 What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ ?

  I \_\_\_\_\_ A History of the World.
- 5 What \_\_\_\_\_ studying? We \_\_\_\_ maths
- 6 Who \_\_\_\_\_\_to?
  She \_\_\_\_\_cousins on the Internet.

5 T13.2 Look at the two pictures. Write what isn't happening in picture B.





	BEAT S. T.	
In picture B		
I the man isn't wearing a jacket.	5 the sun	
2 the children	6 the ducks	
3 the woman	7 the girls	
4 the boys		

## Present Simple or Continuous?

wear/are wearing

6 T13.3 Write the verb in **bold** in the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.

We	ar		
1 2		and firemen wear rfume you're wearing?	
liv	e		
	-	in the palace. with an English family	
ha	ve		
	You can't spea	k to Pete. He three sisters.	a shower.

sp	eak
	Our teacher English fluently.  That's Olga over there! She to Hans
(ne	ot) work
	My father any more. He's retired. I'm on holiday this week, so I
(n	ot) rain
	It much in the Sahara. It We can go out now.

78 Unit 13 . Here and now

## Reading

#### Today's different

7 Read about Isabel and Mark. Answer the questions.

## Today's different!

#### Isabel



On Saturday morning I usually get up late and do the housework. Then I meet some friends in town for lunch, and go shopping in the afternoon. In the evening I go to the cinema, or visit friends.

#### But this Saturday is different!

Today Isabel is graduating from university. She got up early and had a shower. Now she's in the university conference hall with all her family. She's wearing a black hat and a white shirt, and she's waiting to get her certificate.

- 1 What does Isabel usually do on Saturday?
- 2 What is special about today?
- 3 Where is she?
- 4 What did she do this morning?
- 5 What is she wearing?

#### Mark

On Monday morning I usually go to work. I get up at 6.30 and catch the 7.15 train to London. I don't like Mondays because I don't like my job.

#### But this Monday is different!

Mark and his wife, Donna, and their children are on holiday. It's winter, and they're having a skiing holiday in the French Alps. This morning they had a big

French breakfast and now they're skiing on a mountain. It's cold, and they're wearing ski suits, boots, hats and gloves.



- 6 What does Mark usually do on Monday?
- 7 Where is he today? Why?
- 8 What did they do this morning?
- 9 What are they doing now?
- 10 What are they wearing?

## Vocabulary

#### Opposite verbs

- 8 T13.4 Complete the sentences with the opposite verb in the correct form.
  - 1 A Hi, Dave! Are you leaving the restaurant already?
    - B Actually, I'm just arriving!
  - 2 A Why are you selling your house in London?
    - B Because we're \_\_\_\_\_\_ a house in the country.
  - 3 A I love Italians.
    - B I love them, too. But I \_\_\_\_\_ pasta!
  - 4 A Can we go now? I'm bored.
    - B No! I want \_\_\_\_\_! It's really interesting!
  - 5 A Can I ask a question?
    - B Sure. But I'm not sure if I can

\_\_\_\_\_ it.

- 6 A Hi, Ben! Do you want to play golf today?
  - B Sorry! I'm \_\_\_\_\_\_, Another day.
- 7 A What time do you start work?
  - B 9 o' clock.
  - A And what time \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?
  - B 5.30 in the afternoon.
- 8 A What's the score?
  - B 3-1.
  - A Are we winning?
  - B No, we're \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 A Excuse me! Can you open the door for me?
  - B With pleasure!
  - A 'That's very kind. And can you \_\_\_\_\_ it after me?
  - B Of course!
- 10 A My computer isn't working.
  - B Well, turn it off, wait a minute, then \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_ again. That usually works.

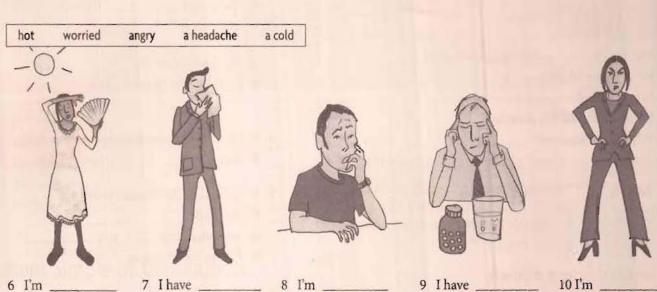
Unit 13 · Here and now

## **Everyday English**

#### What's the matter?

9 Complete the sentences with words from the boxes.





### 10 T 13.5 Match a line in A with a line in B.

A	В	A	В
T I'm thirsty.	a Why don't you take some aspirin?	6 I'm hot.	f Why don't you go for a swim?
2 I'm hungry.	b Why don't you have an early night?	7 I'm bored.	g With me? Oh, dear! What did I do?
3 I'm cold.	c   Here! Have some water!	8 I'm angry.	h Read this book. It's brilliant!
4 I have a headache.	d Well, why don't we go out and have something to eat?	9 I'm worried.	i Well, take some aspirin and go to bed!
5 I'm tired.	e Put on my jumper! It's lovely and warm!	10 I have a cold.	j What's new? You're always worried!

## Don't forget!

#### **Present Continuous**

#### 11 Complete the chart.

#### **Present Continuous**

	Positive	Question	Negative
1	I'm working	Am I working	I'm not working
You			You aren't working
He/She	She's working		
It	120.1	Is it working?	
We	1 1 1 1		We aren't working
They		Are they working?	

#### 12 Write the -ing form of the verbs.

wear wearing	live	living
read	make	
work	have	
play	sit	sitting
enjoy	swim	
do	run	

#### 13 Complete the sentences with 'm, is, or are.

l Where are	you sitting?	Can I sit	next to	you?
-------------	--------------	-----------	---------	------

2 I studying English
----------------------

3	everyone	having a	good	holiday?
		0	0	

4	My parents	working in	Riyadh at	the
	moment			

5 1	not eati	ing becau	ise I	not	hungry.
	The state of the s	0			

#### 14 Complete the sentences with am, is, are, do, does, or did.

1 Where do v	ou like go	ing on	holiday
--------------	------------	--------	---------

2 you go away last year?				
	2		The second second	1
	1	VOII	on away	last veare

- 3 What's that book you \_\_\_\_ reading? Is it good?
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ reading a very good book at the moment.
- 5 What \_\_\_\_ this word mean 'tired'?
- 6 Oh, dear! It \_\_\_\_\_ raining, and I don't have an umbrella.

#### Vocabulary

#### 15 Match a word in A with a word in B.

A	В
1 wear	a hard
2 play	b a cake
3 make	c your holiday
4 enjoy	d 1 a suit
5 work	e D by train
6 travel	f tennis

A	В
7 miss	g 🔲 road
8 swimming	h pool
9 married	i jumper
10 mobile	j couple
11 busy	k phone
12 warm	l your family

#### a/an and the

#### 16 Complete the sentences with alan or the.

	Tourseason				1
1	wear	d	SUII	to wor	'K

2	I get to	work at 8	.00. I like to be	first person
	Tank 1	office		

2 1	Would	******	lika	ice-cream?

4	Y11	AC ESCENA	1 6	145.5
4	I'm always	stired at	end of	day

100	Territal Tri	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE
75	Time	husinessman

REST DWG	Carrier Sec.	0.9811 @
6 A	What's	matter?

## I'm working

# What are you doing? I'm not running

81

<sup>7</sup> I'm reading \_\_\_\_\_lot.



Future plans Form filling . Social expressions (2)

- Grammar revision
   Vocabulary revision

It's time to go!

## Future plans

going to study/work/travel ...

1 Read about three young people.

## SCHOOL'S FINISHED!

It's the end of school for these 17-year-old students. So what are they planning to do with their lives?



#### **Alice Roberts**

Alice is going to study medicine at university.

"I'm really looking forward to it," says Alice. 'I'm going to live with other students on the campus. I really want to be a doctor and work with children.'



#### **Terry Bradshaw**

Terry is going to work with his father, who has a company that imports Italian clothes.

"I'm going to spend three months in Italy, ' says Terry. 'I'm going to visit our designers, and I also want to learn Italian."



#### Melanie Black

Melanie is going to travel abroad for a year. She has relatives in Africa, so first she's going to visit them.

'In the new year, I'm going to teach English in Japan,' she says. 'After that, I don't really know what I'm going to do.'

1 Terry	is going to work in business.
2	is going to be a doctor.
3	is going to teach a language.
4	is going to learn a language.
5	is going to live with other students.
6	doesn't know what she's going to do late

3 T14.1 Complete the questions and answers.

2 Complete the sentences with a name.

1	What is Alice going to study ?			
	She 's going to study	medicine.		
2	Where			
	She	at university.		
3	Where	to live?		
	She	on the campus		

#### Terry

4 Who is terry going to work with?		
	Не	with his father.
5	How long	in Italy?
	Не	three months there.
6	Who	in Italy?
	He	their designers.

	CIMILE	
7	What 's Melanie	going to do ?
	She	travel abroad for a year
8	Who	visit in Africa?
	She	some relatives.
9	What	do in Japan?
	She	teach English.

4 T14.2 Complete the questions and answers. Use the words in brackets (...).

A Right, Sally. We need to get together. When can we meet? 1 What are you doing (do) tomorrow?
B Tomorrow 2   (work) all day.
And then in the evening 3 1(go) to the
A Oh, interesting! What 4 you (go/see)?
B It's a new Japanese film called Home.
A What about Tuesday?
B On Tuesday 5 1 (have) lunch with some friends,
and in the afternoon 6 we (go)
A All right. Wednesday. How are you for Wednesday?
B On Wednesday morning 7   (go) to the
and in the afternoon 8 1 (play) tennis.
A Thursday?
B On Thursday 9 I (see) Hilary for coffee,
and in the evening some friends 10 (come) for dinner.
So on Thursday afternoon II I (cook).
A Oh, very nice. What 12 you (go/cook)?
B Tomato soup and roast chicken.
A OK! Stop! It's too difficult to find a time when you're free.

### Grammar revision

All tenses

5 T14.3 Write the verb in brackets in the correct tense.

## **Our School**

Our school (1) has (have) one hundred students, and twenty teachers (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (work) here.

The school (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (open) ten years ago, and I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (think) it is one of the best in our town.





Our teacher is lovely. She (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (come) from a town not far from here. She (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (start) working here last year, and all the students (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (love) her. She (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (help) us all the time, but she (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (give) us too much homework!

Now we (10) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in class doing this exercise. It's a lovely day

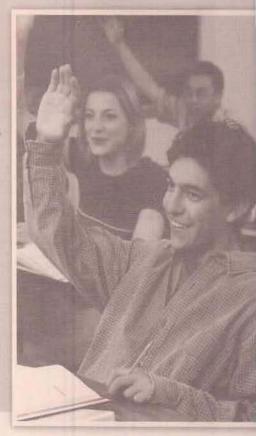
- it (11) \_\_\_\_\_\_ (not rain). After the lesson I (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (have)
a coffee with my best friend, Simone.

The course (13) \_\_\_\_\_\_ (begin) nine months ago. At first English

(14) \_\_\_\_\_\_ (be) very difficult, but now it's OK. We speak a lot better

now! We (15) \_\_\_\_\_ all \_\_\_\_\_ (continue) learning English

next year! We enjoy it so much!



#### Irregular verbs

6 Complete the irregular verbs.

	Present	Past
1	come	→ came
2	buy	<b>→</b>
3	go	<b>→</b>
4		← saw
5	have	<b>→</b>

	rresent		Past
6		+	took
7	say	->	
8		4-	found
9	do	->	
10	make	->	

## Vocabulary revision

Lists - Monday/Tuesday ...

7 Complete the lists.

1	2	3 4	5	6		
Monday Tuesday	morning - night	spring breakfast autumn	always sometimes	get up get dressed		
Friday				go to bed		
7	8	Words that go together – ti	ired/work hard			
January	ten twenty	8 T14.4 Match a line in A				
March		A 1 I'm tired		n my friends.		
May	fifty	2 Last night I went out 3 This morning I had a showe 4 I love swimming	er c Do	c Do you have some aspirin?		
July	eighty	5 I have a headache. e and washed my hair.				
Control		A	В			
September	a hundred	1 I buy a lot of clothes 2 We live in a flat	b on	going on holiday. the Internet.		
November		3 We all went out 4 I'm looking forward 5 I love playing golf. Sometin	d 🔲 for	usually I lose. a meal on my birthday. the second floor.		
		3				
		1 I have a fridge and a cooke 2 Big cities are usually busy 3 The weather's lovely today 4 You don't need a car in this 5 My sister can speak	b lt's c in r	ere are buses, trains, and ferries. warm and sunny. ny kitchen. ee languages fluently. I noisy.		

## Form filling

#### Questions and answers

9 T14.5 Read the application form. Complete the questions and answers.

## **OLYMPIC EMPLOYMENT AGENCY**



FORM	UN S					
Mr/Mrs/Miss/	/Ms (please circle)					
First name	Jennifer					
Surname	Kelly					
Address	35 West End Lane London					
Post code	NW5 7GH					
Contact infor	mation					
Phone	07988 677432					
email	jkelly@hotmail.com					
Personal info	rmation					
Age	23					
Nationality Irish						
Marital status	(please tick)					
	single married					
Education						
School	Hampstead High School					
University	Bristol					
Subject	History and Education					
Interests						
Languages	English and French					
Sports	Tennis and running					
DO NOT WRI Card HOX 4627	TE HERE Data Input NNHG/VCSD/8900					
Signature	Jennifer Kelly					

1	What's your first name	P
	Jennifer.	
2		
4	Kelly.	
3	Where	
	London.	
4		address?
	35 West End Lane, London.	
5	NW5 7GH.	
	NW37GH.	
6	What's your phone number?	
		-
7		9
,	jkelly@hotmail.com	
8		?
	I'm 23.	
9	Where	2
	Ireland.	
10	Are you married?	
11	Where	school?
	I went to Hampstead High School.	
10	varies t	
12	Which Bristol.	to?
	Dilstoi.	
13		study?
	I studied history and education.	
1.4		?
14	Two. English and French.	
	1 no. English and Hench.	
15		you do?
	I play tennis and I go running.	

## Everyday English

#### Social expressions (2)

10 T 14.6 Match a line in A with a line in B.

	200	A	1
	3	1	
N. H.		1	
		4	
	100	T	A A

A	В		
1 How do I get to the station?	a ticket to Oxford, please?		
2 Excuse mel	b Can you tell me the time, please?		
3 I hope you have a good time	c to drink?		
4 Thanks for all your help.	d 1 Turn right at the museum, and go straight on.		
5 Can I have a return	e at the wedding.		
6 What would you like	f Thanks. Same to you.		
7 I'm sorry I'm late.	g It was very kind of you.		
8 Byel Have a good weekendl	h Don't worry It doesn't matter		

## Don't forget!

#### Question words

11 Match a question word in A with an answer in B.

A	В
1 What?	a 🔲 Jamie.
2 Where?	b 1 A pair of jeans.
3 When?	c Because I was tired.
4 Who?	d By bus.
5 Why?	e 🔲 In Paris.
6 How?	f in 2006.

A	В
7 How many?	g 🔲 £4.60.
8 How much?	h Six.
9 How old?	i Twenty-two.
10 How long?	j Football, tennis, golf.
11 What sort?	k Medium.
12 What size?	I An hour.

#### Prepositions

12 Write in the correct preposition.

1 Mike's on holiday at the moment.

2 I'm living \_\_\_\_\_ my brother \_\_\_\_\_ a few weeks.

3 What would you like \_\_\_\_\_ your birthday?

4 Dubai is the best city \_\_\_\_\_ the world.

5 I come \_\_\_\_\_ school \_\_\_\_ bus.

6 I like listening \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.

7 Are you interested \_\_\_\_\_ the cinema?

8 Can I pay \_\_\_\_ this shirt \_\_\_\_ credit card?

9 We're going \_\_\_\_ Greece \_\_\_\_ Saturday.

10 Annie's married \_\_\_\_\_ Lee. He works \_\_\_\_\_ Barclays Bank.

on	i	n
by	to	for
M	rith	101



## **Tapescripts**

#### UNIT 1

#### 

- 1 Hello. I'm Adam.
- 2 Hello. My name's Bonnie.
- 3 Hello. My name's Chris.

#### T1.3

- 1 A Carl, this is Liliana Moretti.
  - C Hello, Liliana. My name's Carl Erikson.
  - L. Hello, Carl. Nice to meet you.
- 2 B Ruby, this is Husain Malouf.
  - R Hello, Husain. Nice to meet you.
  - H And you.
- 3 C Liliana, this is Ruby. Ruby, this is
  - L Hello, Ruby. I'm Liliana Moretti.
  - R Hello. I'm Ruby Harrison.
  - L Nice to meet you.
  - R And you.

#### UNIT 2

#### T2.3

- J Hello! What's your name?
- S My name's Svana.
- J Hi, Svana. I'm Jenny.
- S Hello, Jenny.
- J How are you, Svana?
- S I'm fine, thanks.
- J Where are you from, Svana?
- S I'm from Oslo.
- J Oh! Is that in Sweden?
- S No! It's in Norway, of course!
- J Oh, yes! Er ... of course!
- S Look at that girl! Over there!
- J Yes, her name's Lucy.
- S Where's she from?
- J She's from London.
- S Is she a friend?
- J She's my sister.

#### T 2.5

Hi! My name's Sofia. I'm from Berlin, in Germany. I'm married. I'm a teacher. My school is in the centre of town. My students are from the United States. They're all American! All fifteen of them!

Hello! My name's Adam. I'm from Sydney, in Australia. I'm married. I'm a doctor. My hospital is in the centre of town. It's a fantastic building! The doctors are really good!

#### T 2.6

- 1 She's a teacher.
- 2 He's a doctor.
- 3 His name's Adam.
- 4 Her name's Sofia.
- 5 He's married.
- 6 She's married.
- 7 Her students are from the US.
- 8 He's from Sydney.

#### T 2.7

fifteen twenty-eight nineteen twelve twenty-one twenty-five thirteen twenty twenty-two twenty-six

#### UNIT 3

#### T 3.4

Interviewer Hi!

Ella Hello!

- I You're Ella, right?
- E That's right.
- I So ... I know your first name's Ella, but what's your surname?
- E My surname is Smith.
- I Ah! Smith! OK. How old are you, Ella?
- E I'm 23
- I 23. And you live in Brooklyn, right? What's your address?
- E My address is 209, Park Place, New York, NY 11217.
- I ... Park Place, New York. And your phone number at work? What's your telephone number at work?
- E It's 212-786-5893.
- I ... 786-5893. And your cell phone? What's your cell phone number?
- E It's 917-438-6721.
- I ... -438-6721. Now, you work in newspapers, but what's your job?
- E I'm a journalist.
- I Oh, wow! How interesting! And ... are you married?
- E No, I'm not.
- I Thank you, Ella. Thank you very much.
- E My pleasure.

#### UNIT 4

#### T 4.4

My wife's name is Kim. Our house is nice, but it isn't very big. It's small. It's in north London. Yeah, it's a small house. My sister, Alice, has a house in our street – it's just two minutes from our house. Our children and her children are at the same school, and that's really nice. Alice has three children and we have two – two children. My daughter's name is Penny, and my son's name is Archie. The children's school is near our house, so that's good, but my wife's office is miles from our house – about twenty miles. My job is in the centre of town, that's no problem. We're both happy in our jobs, so that's ok. We aren't rich, but we're happy.

#### T 4.7

- A Good morning. The British Tourist Authority.
- B Hello. Can you give me some information about hotels in London, please?
- A Of course. Your name is?
- B Alfonso Morelli.
- A MORR ..
- B No, no! M-O-R-E-double L-I. Just one R.
- A Thank you. And what's your email address?
- B amorelli@superdada.it.
- A I'll email you some information today.
- B That's very kind. Thank you very much. Goodbye.
- A My pleasure. Goodbye.

#### UNIT 5

#### T 5.2

- 1 Do you like Coke? Yes, I do. It's great!
- 2 Do you like football? No I don't. It's terrible!
- 3 Do you like pizza? Yes I do. It's delicious!
- 4 Do you like skiing? Yes I do. It's fantastic!
- 5 Do you like James Bond films? Yes I do. They're exciting!
- 6 Do you like coffee? No I don't. It's awful!

#### T 5.3

Int Hi, Gracie. Can I ask you a few questions about your parents?

Gracie Of course. No problem.

- I Now, your parents live in Spain, don't they?
- G That's right. They have a house in Seville. They don't live in England any more.
- I Oh! Very nice! Mmm ... do they speak Spanish?
- G They speak a little Spanish, yes.
- I Oh, interesting! And what do they do in Spain? Do they play golf? Do they go swimming?
- G They're both quite old now, so they don't do a lot. They're in a tennis club, so in Spain they play tennis.
- I Do they work? Do your parents still work?
- G No, they don't. They don't work at all now.
- I And you live in England, don't you? Where do you and your husband live?
- G We don't live in England. We have a house in Scotland.
- I And do your mother and father come to visit?
- G Oh, yes! My parents come to our house in
- I And ... do they play tennis in Scotland?
- G No. We all play golf together. We love golf!
- I Oh, lovely! And do you all go out to restaurants?
- G No, not really. We eat at home. I love cooking. So we don't eat in restaurants.
- I Well, thank you very much. That's very interesting.

#### T 5.6

- 1 A Excuse me! How much is this French-English dictionary?
  - B It's £15.75.
  - A Thank you.
- 2 A Hi. A cup of coffee, please.
  - B To have here or take away?
  - A To have here.
  - B Small or large?
  - A Small. How much is that?
  - B £1.55.
  - A Thanks.
- 3 A How much are those jeans?
  - B The blue ones?
  - A Yeah.
  - B They're \$45.
  - A Er ... OK.
- 4 A The Times, please.
  - B 90 p.
  - A Thanks.
- 5 A Can I help you?
  - B Yes. A burger, please.
  - A Anything to drink?
  - B No, just a burger.
  - A £2.50.
  - B Thanks.

- 6 A A strawberry ice-cream, please.
  - B There you are, little girl.
  - A How much is that?
  - B 80p.
- 7 A How much is this orange?
  - B Just the one?
  - A Yeah, just this orange.
  - B Er ... 50p.
- 8 A Can I have this CD, please?
  - B Sure. That's £13.99, please.
  - A Thank you very much.

#### UNIT 6

#### T 6.3

- A Excuse me! What time is it?
- B It's three-thirty.
- A Thank you very much.
- B That's OK.
- C Excuse me! Do you have the time, please?
- D Sure. It's exactly ten o'clock.
- C Thanks a lot.
- D That's all right.

#### UNIT 7

#### T 7.4

- I In a café
  - A Can I have a cup of tea, please?
  - B Sure. Anything to eat?
  - A Yes. Can I have a piece of chocolate cake?
  - B Of course. Here you are.
  - A How much is that?
  - B That's £4.60, please.

#### 2 In a clothes shop

- C Do you have this T-shirt in a medium, please?
- D I'll have a look for you.
- C Thanks.
- D Yes. Here you are.
- C Oh! Thank you. Can I try it on, please?
- D Certainly. The changing rooms are over there

#### 3 In a train station

- C Can I have a ticket to Brighton, please?
- D Do you want a single or a return?
- C A single, please.
- D That's £25.50, please.
- C Can I pay by credit card?
- D Sure. Put your card in the machine. And enter your PIN. Now take your card.

#### UNIT 8

#### T 8.5

 Go down the High Street. Turn right into Riverside. It's on the right, next to the supermarket.

- 2 Go down the High Street. It's on the right, next to the post office, on the corner of School Lane.
- 3 Go straight on down the High Street. It's on the left, next to the Park Hotel.
- 4 Go down the High Street. Turn left into Albion Road. It's on the left, near the bridge.
- 5 Go straight on down the High Street. Turn right into School Lane. It's on the right.

#### T 8.6

- 1 A Excuse me! Is there a bank near here?
  - B Yes. Go straight on. It's on the left, next to the chemist's.
  - A Thanks a lot.
- 2 C Excuse me! How do I get to the railway station?
  - D Go down the High Street. Turn left. Go down Albion Road. It's near the bridge, on the left.
  - C That's very kind. Thank you.
- 3 E Excuse me! How do I get to the sports centre?
  - F Go down the High Street. Go past the post office, past School Lane. It's on the right, next to the cinema.
  - E Thank you very much.
- 4 G Excuse me! Is there a supermarket near
  - H Yes. Turn right into Riverside. It's on the right next to the theatre, near the river.
  - G Thanks. Bye!

#### UNIT 9

#### T 9.1

- 1 two thousand and six
- 2 two thousand
- 3 two thousand and ten (twenty ten)
- 4 two thousand and fifteen (twenty fifteen)
- 5 two thousand and twenty (twenty twenty)
- 6 nineteen ninety-five
- 7 nineteen ninety
- 8 nineteen eighty-two
- 9 nineteen sixty
- 10 nineteen sixteen

#### T 9.2

- 1 2009
- 2 2002
- 3 2012
- 4 1999
- 5 1987 6 1960

#### T 9.4

- 1 My mother was born in Chicago in 1960.
- 2 My father was born in New York in 1958.
- 3 I was born in 1985.

- 4 My grandparents weren't born in the United States.
- 5 My mother's parents were born in Sweden.
- 6 My father's parents were born in Ireland.

#### T 9.5

- 1 My mother is a pharmacist.
- 2 My father is a professor.
- 3 They were at university together.
- 4 My father's parents were very poor.
- 5 My mother's parents weren't married in Sweden. They met in the States.
- 6 Grandpa Fredrik was an engineer.
- 7 Grandma Smilla was a teacher.
- 8 Pat and Paddy weren't happy at first. Life was very hard for them.

#### T 9.7

- 1 18th April
- 2 2nd June
- 3 3rd September
- 4 15th January
- 5 10th May
- 6 25th December

#### UNIT 10

#### T 10.4

- 1 A I watched the football on TV last night.
  - B Oh, did you? Was it a good match?
  - A Yes, it was great. Arsenal played really well.
  - B What was the score?
  - A Arsenal won 2-1.
- C I went to Amy's house for a meal on Sunday.
  - D Oh, really? What did she cook?
  - C An Italian dish lasagne.
  - D Mmm! Was it good?
  - C It was delicious!
- 3 E I went shopping on Saturday.
  - F Did you? Where did you go?
  - E That new shopping centre in Manchester.
  - F Did you buy anything?
  - E I bought a wedding present for my sister.
- 4 G I stayed at home all weekend!
  - H Oh, dear! What did you do?
  - G I did the housework. The house was so dirty!
  - H Was it? Is it clean now?
  - G Oh, yes! But it was such a boring weekend!

#### T 10.6

- 1 A Hello. Can I have a map of the town, please?
  - B Of course. Here you are.
  - A Can you show me where we are on the map?

- B We're here in the city centre. Where do you want to go?
- A The museum. Can you give me some information about it?
- 2 B Certainly. What do you want to know? A Is it far from here?
  - B Not at all. Just five minutes.
  - A What time does it open and what time does it close?
  - B It opens at 9.00 and closes at 6.00.
  - A And how much is it to get in?
  - B It's free.

#### UNIT 11

#### T 11.2

- 1 Can you draw well, Mike? Yes, I can.
- 2 Can you ride a horse? No, I can't.
- 3 Can you speak French? Yes, I can.
- 4 Can you run fast? Yes, I can.
- 5 Can you play chess? No, I can't.

#### T 11.5

- 1 I can play chess a little bit.
- 2 My sister can't cook at all.
- 3 We can speak English quite well.
- 4 I can't understand a word she says.
- 5 I can't see you on Thursday. Sorry. I'm busy.
- 6 Peter can swim really well.
- 7 We can't go shopping. We don't have any money.
- 8 You can all come to my house.

#### T 11.7

- 1 A Can I have a coffee, please?
  - B Sure! To have here or take away?
- 2 A Can you open the door for me, please?
  - B With pleasure! Do you want me to carry something for you?
- 3 A Can you turn your radio down, please?
  - B I'm sorry. I didn't know it was so loud.
- 4 A Can you give me the salt and pepper, please?
  - B Of course! Here you are!

#### T 11.8

- 1 A I can't turn on the TV!
  - B Push this button.
- 2 A Excuse me! I'm lost. Where's the town centre?
  - B Go straight down here.
- 3 A This printer doesn't work!
  - B I know. It broke down yesterday.
- 4 A I don't understand what it says.
  - B Give it to me. maybe I can do it for you.

5 A Oh, no! I can't find my plane ticken
B Calm down! They're in your pocket

#### UNIT 12

#### T 12.3

- 1 A What would you like to drink?
  - B I don't know.
- A Would you like a cup of tea?
  - B Er ... I don't like tea.
  - A Would you like a cup of coffee?
- B Ugh, no! I don't drink coffee!
- A Would you like a cola?
- B Yeah, a cola would be great! Thanks.
- 2 A What would you like to do tonight?
  - B I don't know.
  - A Would you like to go out for dinner?
  - B No. I'm not hungry!
  - A Would you like to stay home and watch TV?
  - B Now that's a great idea! I'd love to stay home and watch TV! Maybe we can have a pizza!

#### T 12.4

- A It's your birthday next week, isn't it? How old are you?
- B Don't ask! Too old!
- A What would you like for your birthday? I'd like to buy you a present! Something nice!
- B Well, that's very kind.
- A What sort of things are you interested in? What do you like doing?
- 3 Well, one of my big passions is reading. I love reading.
- A And you like cooking, don't you?
- B Yes, it's true. I love cooking.
- A Right! That's easy! I'll buy you a cook book! Then you can read and cook!
- B That would be lovely! Thank you!

#### T 12.6

- 1 chip ship
- 2 cheap sleep
- 3 steak make
- 4 soup group
- 5 food rude
- 6 cheese please
- 7 good would 8 pie my

#### UNIT 13

#### T 13.5

- 1 A I'm thirsty.
  - B Here! Have some water!
- 2 A I'm hungry.
  - B Well, why don't we go out and have something to eat?

- 3 A I'm cold.
  - B Put on my jumper! It's lovely and warm!
- 4 A I have a headache.
  - B Why don't you take some aspirin?
- 5 A I'm tired.
  - B Why don't you have an early night?
- 6 A I'm hot.
  - B Why don't you go for a swim?
- 7 A I'm bored.
  - B Read this book. It's brilliant!
- 8 A I'm angry.
  - B With me? Oh, dear! What did I do?
- 9 A I'm worried.
  - B What's new? You're always worried!
- 10 A I have a cold.
  - B Well, take some aspirin and go to bed!

#### UNIT 14

#### T 14.6

- 1 A How do I get to the station?
  - B Turn right at the museum, and go straight on.
- 2 Excuse me! Can you tell me the time, please?
- 3 I hope you have a good time at the wedding.
- 4 Thanks for all your help. It was very kind of you.
- 5 Can I have a return ticket to Oxford, please?
- 6 What would you like to drink?
- 7 A I'm sorry I'm late.
  - B Don't worry. It doesn't matter.
- 8 A Bye! Have a good weekend!
  - B Thanks. Same to you.

## Answer key

#### Unit 1

- 1 See T 1.1
- 2 2 My, your 3 name, My
- 3 See T1.3

First names	Eddie, Luke, Robert, Ruby, Alice, Harry, Sophie, Mike, Catherine
Surnames	McKenna, Bond, Johnson, Blackman

- 5 1 B Fine thanks
  - A I'm OK, thank you
  - 2 C How are you?
    - M very well And you?
  - 3 R Hi Alice
    - A How are you?
    - R Very well, thank
  - Across 2 bus
- Down
- 1 burger 3 computer 3 camera
- 6 bag
- 4 television
- 8 phone
- 5 photograph
- 9 car
- 6 book
- 10 sandwich
- 7 house
- 7 ten nine four six three one eight five
- 8 1 9 3 5 10 2 7 6
- 9 3 one hospital
- 7 ten students
- 4 three buses
- 8 eight coffees
- 5 four pizzas
- 9 six restaurants
- 6 seven teachers

- 10 nine footballs
- 10

/8/	/z/	/iz/
restaurants students photographs	hotels taxis footballs hospitals pizzas coffees teachers	buses sandwiches houses

- 11 2 A Goodbye!
  - B Goodbye!
  - 3 A Good night!
  - B Good night!
  - 4 A Good afternoon!
  - B Good afternoon!

- 12 2 Bye! See you later!
  - 3 Have a nice day!
  - 4 A cup of tea, please.
  - 5 Bye! See you tomorrow!
  - 6 Sleep well!
- 13

		Short form		
1		l'm		
You	are			
It	is	lt's		

- 14 2's 3 are 4's 5'm 6 Are 7's
- 15 2a 3a 4a 5a 6b
- 16 2 I'm fine, thanks.
  - 3 And you.
  - 4 Bye! See you tomorrow!
  - 5 It's a book.
- 17 2 My name's Anne.
  - 3 What's this in English?
  - 4 It's a computer.
  - 5 How are you, Mika?
  - 6 I'm fine, thank you.

#### Unit 2

- 1 Across Down 7 Spain 1 Australia 8 England 2 France 3 United States 9 Japan 5 China
- 10 Brazil
- 6 Egypt
- 12 Russia
- 11 Italy

	90		800	.0.0	
724	China Egypt England Russia	Japan Brazil	Hungary	United States	Australia

9	Anna	Tatiana	her	
đ	his	Henry	he	

- 4 b His c His d Her
- 5 b She's c He's d She's

- 6 2 Her, She's
  - 3 Her, She's
  - 4 His, He's
  - 5 Her, She's
  - 6 His, He's
  - 7 Her. She's
  - 8 His, He's
- 72d 3a 4c
- 8 See T 2.3
- 9 2e 3a 4f 5c 6d
- 10 good, really good, fantastic, OK, bad, awful
- 12 1 England, Egypt, Malaysia.
  - 2× 3 / 4× 5 / 6 / 7×

Carla and Pedro are in Egypt. Catherine and Anthony are in Malaysia. Ann and James are in England.

- 13 See T 2.5
- 14 2 He's 3 His 4 Her 5 He's 6 She's 7 Her 8 He's
- 15 13 thirteen
- 15 fifteen
- 21 twenty-one
- 30 thirty 25 twenty-five
- 22 twenty-two 16 sixteen
- 28 twenty-eight
- 19 nineteen 26 twenty-six
- 20 twenty 11 eleven
- 12 twelve

- 16 eleven twenty-nine eighteen twenty-four
- fourteen twenty-seven 17 19 12 21 25 13 20 22 26

II va		Short form
1	am	
You	are	You're
He	İs	
She		She's
It	is	lt's
They	are	They're

- 19 1 'm 2 are, 'm 3 are, 're 4 Is, is, 's 5 are, 's, 's
- 20 2b 3a 4a 5b

- 21 2 photograph 3 cup of tea 4 house 5 camera 6 sandwich 7 book
  - 8 bag
- 22 3 You're 4 your 5 You're 6 your

#### Unit 3

- 1 Across Down
  3 doctor 1 businessman
  4 taxi driver 2 police officer
  8 nurse 5 student
  9 shop assistant 6 builder
  10 bus driver 7 teacher
- 2 1 's 2 isn't, 's 3 isn't, 's
- 3 First name, Country, Address, Phone number, Mobile number, Age, Job, Married
- 4 2 What's his first name?
  - 3 Where is he from?
  - 4 What's his address?
  - 5 What's his phone number?
  - 6 What's his mobile number?
  - 7 How old is he?
  - 8 What's his job?
  - 9 Is he married?
- 5 2 He isn't from Australia. He's from England.
  - 3 His isn't 23. He's 26.
  - 4 He isn't a student. He's an engineer.
  - 5 He isn't married.
- 6 3 Yes, he is. 4 No, he isn't. 5 No, he isn't. 6 Yes, he is.
- 5 No, ne isn't. 6 Yes, he is.
- 7 2 Peter isn't a taxi driver. He's a bus driver.
   3 We aren't from Algeria. We're from Libya.
  - 4 I'm not married. I'm single.
  - 5 You aren't a nurse. You're a student.
  - 6 Paul and Donny McNab aren't doctors. They're students at university in Ireland.
- 8 2a 3b 4b 5a 6b
- 9 2 Is Ronan from Sweden?
  - 3 What's his job?
  - 4 Where are they?
  - 5 Is the journalist with the boys?
- 10 See T3.4
- 11 See T3.4
- 12 2 interesting 3 students
  - 4 city, town 5 tired 6 different 7 station 8 here 9 understand
  - 10 excited
- B 2 I'm sorry
  - 3 Thank you very much.
  - 4 Excuse me!
  - 5 I don't understand.
  - 6 I don't know.

#### 14

	Positive	Negative
1.	am	
You	are	You aren't
He	İS	
She		She isn't
21	is	It isn't
We		We aren't
They	are	They aren't

- 15 2b 3b 4b 5b 6b
- 16 2 from 3 in 4 of 5 of 6 on 7 of 8 in, of 9 at 10 with
- 17 12 21 75 50 15 8 42 10 38
- 18 forty-five seven sixty-eight one hundred

#### Unit 4

- 1 b Bonnie's, c Nick's, d Alice's e Suzie's f Harry's g Kate's h Sarah's
- 2 2 Her 3 Our 4 your 5 His 6 Their
- 7 father 1 parents
  8 son 2 daughter
  9 mother 4 husband
  10 wife 5 brother
  6 sister
- 4 3 She has 4 They have 5 She has
  - 6 He has 7 They have 8 He has
- 9 She has
- 5 3 √ 4 √ 5 X 6 X 7 √ 8 X 9 √ 10 X
- 6 2 his sister's
  - 3 his daughter's
  - 4 his son's
- 7 2 has 3 her 4 children's 5 wife's 6 We're
- 83 / 4x 5 / 6x 7x 8 / 9x
- 92f 3e 4c 5h 6d 7a 8b
- 10 3 Their
  - 4 They're
  - 5 Their
  - 6 they're
- 11 1 school 5 daughter 2 husband 6 hospital 3 wife 7 nurse 4 son 8 friends
- 12 See T4.7
- 13 your her our
- 14 have has have have
- 15 2a 3b 4a 5a 6b

#### 16

Places	People	Things
town	accountant	bag
country	police officer	car
village	sister	dictionary
apartment	waiter	bus

#### 17

Singular	Plural	
job family	schools cars cities babies	
woman	addresses sandwiches children people	

1	Across		Down
4	tennis	1	juice
6	pizza	2	swimming
7	ice cream	3	skiing
9	coffee	4	tea
11	football	5	water
12	burger	8	coke
		10	orange

- 2 3 I like juice.
- 4 I don't like swimming.
- 5 We like skiing.
- 6 They like water.
- 7 We don't like football.
- 8 You like ice cream.
- 9 They don't like Chinese food.
- 3 See T 5.2
- 4 2 have 3 live 4 have 5 speak 6 swim 7 eat 8 drink 9 like 10 want
- 5 2 What's your father's job?
  - 3 Where do you live?
  - 4 What do you eat?
- 6 2 do you have
  - 3 do you drink
  - 4 do you like
- 7 2 don't drink
- 3 don't live
- 4 don't live
- 5 don't
- 8 See T 5.3
- 9 2 do, do, Do
  - 3 Do they both
  - 4 do, live
  - 5 do you, go

- 10 2 don't do
  - 3 They don't
  - 4 don't live
  - 5 we don't eat
- 11

0.	+0	900	000	0000
English Spanish Turkish	Chinese	Arabic Mexican	Japanese Portuguese	Italian American Brazilian

- 12 2 American 3 German 4 Japanese 5 Arabic 6 Italian 7 Mexican
  - 8 Chinese 9 Brazilian 10 Spanish
- 13 48, 35, eighty-one, ninety 15, 72, sixty, fifty-nine one hundred
- 14 £25.99 twenty-five pounds ninety-nine p
  - £4.50 four pounds fifty
  - 95p ninety-five p
  - £32 thirty-two pounds
  - £79 seventy-nine pounds
  - £2.15 two pounds fifteen
  - \$65 sixty-five dollars
  - eighty pounds €80
  - £1.20 one pound twenty
- 15 3 forty p 40p
  - 4 eighty-eight pounds £88
  - 5 twelve pounds sixty £12.60
  - 6 seventy-five dollars \$75
  - 7 one pound twenty £1.20
  - 8 thirty dollars \$30
- 16 SeeT5.6

#### 17

	Positive	Question	Negative
1			I don't work
You	You work	Do you work?	
We	We work	Do we work?	We don't work
They	They work		They don't work

- 18 2a 3a 4b 5b
- 19 2 speak 3 work 4 have 5 play 6 come
- 20 2 a 3 an 4 an 5 a
- 21 2 We live in a big house in London.
  - 3 I'm a waiter.
  - 4 I work in an Italian restaurant.
  - 5 They have an office in the centre of town.
  - 6 Jamie is an English teacher.
- 22 2 I have a small flat.
  - 3 Turkish people are nice.
  - 4 I don't like Chinese food.
  - 5 My father has an important job.

#### Unit 6

- 1 2 three o'clock 3 8.30 4 6.45 5 2.45 6 twelve o'clock
- 2 2 7.30 3 three o'clock 4 10.45 5 2.30
- 3 See T6.3
- 4 1 7.00 o'clock.
  - 2 do you have
  - 3 do you go
- 4 do you watch, do watch
- 5 3 He has 4 She leaves 5 He does
  - 6 She watches 7 He lives 8 She works
- 6 1 has 2 goes 3 has 4 leaves
- 5 does 6 lives 7 has 8 watches
- 7 2 does she go
- 3 does she have
- 4 does she do
- 5 does George live
- 6 does he have
- 7 does he
- 8 does he do
- 8 2 does 3 She loves 4 She likes
- 5 She likes 6 She plays 7 She loves
- 8 She reads
- 9 2 doesn't 3 doesn't 4 don't 5 doesn't
- 10 2 am 3 Is 4 is 5 Do 6 do 7 is 8 Do 9 do 10 are 11 Does 12 does

#### 11

/z/	/s/	/iz/
lives		
plays	eats	a Marchael
does	cooks	teaches
has	works	
listens		

- 12 2 on 3 at 4 In 5 on 6 at 7 on 8 No 9 No 10 No
- Across
  - Down 6 drink 1 work
  - 7 watch
- 8 play
- 2 office
- 3 listen
- 9 drive
- 5 shopping
- 10 lunch 12 languages
- 9 dinner
- 11 have
- 13 early
- 15 2 do they go
  - 3 does Michelle do
  - 4 does he
  - 5 does he
  - 6 does he work
- 16 2 No. she doesn't.
  - 3 Yes, he does.
  - 4 Yes, they do.

- 17 2 doesn't 3 don't 4 doesn't have
- 18 Tuesday Wednesday Thursday France Saturday Sunday
- 19

Positive	Question	Negative
		I don't work
You work	Do you work?	
He works		He doesn't wa
	Does she work?	She doesn't wo
It works	Does it work?	

- 20 3 watches 4 cooks 5 work 6 teaches
- 21 2 does 3 does 4 Do 5 don't 6 don't
- 22 2 How 3 How much 4 Where 5 Who 6 When 7 How many
- 23 2 the
  - 3 -, the, -
    - 4 the
    - 5 -
    - 6 -, -
    - 7 -8 the
    - 9 the, -
  - 10 the, -

- 1 Who do you live with? What does Vanessa do? How old are your children? Where do you live? Why do you live in France? How many languages do you speak? What car do you drive? How much money do you have?
- 22e 3f 4a 5c 6d 7h 8g 9i 10j
- 3 2 When, In the summer.
  - 3 How By bus.
  - 4 Where In a village near the sea.
  - 5 Who
- 6 Why Because my wife is French.
- 7 How old
- 8 How many Three.
- 9 What time 6.30 in the morning.
- 10 How much £5.30.
- 4 2 How do you spell your surname?
- 3 What's your mobile number?
- 4 How old are you?
- 5 What's your favourite food?
- 6 Do you live in a house or a flat?

- 5 2 Why does he drive an old car? Because he doesn't have any money.
  - 3 Why does she stay at home all day? Because she works at home.
  - 4 Why does she sit at her computer all day? Because she's a writer.

6

Object	Possessive
him	his
	her
it	
us	our
them	their

- 7 1 you 2 her 3 me 4 it 5 him 6 you 7 you, me 8 us 9 them 10 it
- 8 2 your 3 His 4 Her 5 its 6 Our 7 their
- 9 3 that 4 This 5 This 6 that
- 10 2 lovely 3 hot 4 big 5 delicious 6 beautiful 7 cheap 8 wonderful
  - 1 awful 2 wet 3 awful 4 old 5 cold 6 expensive 7 small
  - 8 happy
- 11 See T 7.4

11 buildings

- 12
   Across
   Down

   1 shampoo
   2 present

   3 clothes
   3 credit card

   4 shoes
   6 chips

   5 coat
   7 bridge

   10 postcards
   8 letter
- 13 2b 3a 4a 5b 6b
- 14 2 in 3 for 4 at 5 to 6 to 7 of 8 for 9 to, for 10 with

9 stamps

#### Unit 8

- 1 2 living room 3 kitchen 4 bathroom 5 bedroom
- 2 2 bed 3 cooker 4 sofa 5 desk 6 table 7 laptop 8 armchair
- 3 2 magazines
  - 3 a toilet
  - 4 a Playstation\*
  - 5 posters
  - 6 a balcony
- 43x 4x 5x 61

- 5 2 There are
  - 3 There's
  - 4 There's
  - m
  - 5 There are
  - 6 There's
- 6 2 There isn't
  - 3 There aren't
  - 4 There isn't
  - F TI
  - 5 There aren't
  - 6 There isn't
- 7 2 Is there, Yes, there is.
- 3 Are there, Yes, there are.
- 4 Are there, No, there aren't.
- 8 2 under
- 3 next to
- 4 in
- 5 in
- 6 next to
- 9 Across
   Down

   4 rain
   1 seafood

   5 ferry
   2 sunny

   7 mountains
   3 park

   9 theatre
   6 fishing

   11 sailing
   8 beach

   10 train
- 10 2 railway station
  - 3 castle
  - 4 park
  - 5 car park
  - 5 car park
  - 6 sports centre 7 supermarket
  - 8 chemist's
- 11 2 theatre
  - 3 café
  - 4 the park
  - 5 railway station
  - 6 the school
- 12 See T8.6
- 13 3 X 4 X 5 X 6 √ 7 √ 8 √ 9 X 10 X
- 14 2a 3b 4a 5a 6b 7b 8a
- 15 2 but 3 and 4 but
- 16 2 because 3 because 4 so
- 17 13 8 12
  - 30 58
  - 25 9
  - 60 42
- 18 four seventy-two eighty-eight ten

- 1 See T 9.1
- 2 See T 9.2
- 3 2 nineteen forty
  - 3 nineteen ninety-nine
  - 4 nineteen seventy-three
  - 5 two thousand and one
  - 6 two thousand and five
  - 7 two thousand and eight
  - 8 Two thousand and twelve twenty twelve
- 4 1 1989 2 2008 3 1948 4 1945
- 5 1969
- 5 See T 9.4
- 6 See T 9.5
- 7 2 was he born
  - 3 were, born
- 4 was, was
- 8 2 wasn't born
  - 3 weren't born
  - 4 Were, weren't
- 9 1 He was a Chinese American.
  - 2 He was famous as an actor in martial arts films of the twentieth century.
  - 3 He was born in San Francisco.
  - 4 His father was an opera and film actor.
  - 5 He was 13.
  - 6 He was a teacher of Kung Fu.
  - 7 His most famous film was Enter the Dragon.
  - 8 He was only 33 years old.
  - 1 In Sandringham, England.
  - 2 John, Earl Spencer and Frances, Viscountess Althorp.
  - 3 The Royal family.
  - 4 No, she wasn't.
  - 5 She was a teacher in a children's school.
  - 6 20.
  - 7 In Paris.
  - 8 In a car accident.
- 10 2 were 3 bought 4 went 5 said 6 saw 7 took
- 11 2 saw 3 were 4 went 5 bought 6 said 7 took 8 saw 9 was
- 12 Across Down 3 home 1 time
- 4 walk 3 housework 9 shopping 5 lunch 10 shower 6 breakfast
- 11 exercise 7 work 8 homework
- 13 April, June, August, October, December
- 14 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 7th 10th 12th 20th 21st

16

Positive	Negative
	wasn't
were	
was	wasn't
	weren't
were	

#### 17 2a 3b 4b 5a 6b

18

Present	Past
	had
do	
T.u.	saw
	bought
say	
	found
come	
	made

- 19 3 made 4 made 5 did 6 made
- 20 2 ... to the cinema...
  - 3 I do my...
  - 4 ...because it is ...
  - 5 ...have a shower,...
  - 6 What do you do? I'm a businessman.
  - 7 I usually have...

#### Unit 10

1 watched lived wanted phoned listened visited started loved worked stayed

2

/1/	/d/	/rd/
watched worked liked	played listened lived phoned loved stayed	wanted started visited

- 3 bought had did went saw
- 4 2 went 3 saw 4 bought 5 started 6 went 8 visited 9 had 10 listened 11 watched 12 had
- 6 2 did he do 3 did he buy 4 did he go 5 did he see
- 7 2 Did he like the film? No, he didn't.
  3 Did he have a pizza? Yes, he did.
  4 Did he enjoy the dinner party? No, he didn't.

- 8 2 didn't do
  - 3 didn't enjoy
  - 4 didn't go
  - 5 didn't know
- 9 See T 10.4
- 10 3 in 4 at 5 6 7 at 8 9 on 10 -
- 11 Across Down
  1 ice skating 2 skiing
  - 4 swimming 6 tennis
- 3 horse riding 5 windsurfing 7 fishing
- 8 golf 12 cycling
- 9 football
- 13 walking
- 10 jogging
- 14 rugby
- 11 chess
- 15 sailing
- 12 2 went cycling
  - 3 went swimming
  - 4 played rugby
  - 5 went skiing
  - 6 played football
  - 7 went windsurfing
  - 8 went horse riding
- 14 2 She went with her parents
  - 3 did they stay?
  - 4 didn't do the same thing
  - 5 did they see
  - 6 did they do, on lots of
  - 7 They saw whales and dolphins.
  - 8 played golf, went to the sports club.
  - 9 did the children love, there was
- 10 They made their own pizzas.
- 15 See T 10.6

16

Positive	Negative	Question
played	didn't play	
	didn't play	Did he/she play?
played		Did we play?
played	didn't play	

- 17 2 was 3 did 4 Did 5 was
- 18 2a 3b 4a 5b 6a

#### Unit 11

- 1 2 can speak Russian.
  - 3 can walk.
  - 4 can ride (a horse).
  - 5 can ski.
  - 6 can play chess.
  - 7 can run fast.
- 8 can draw well.
- 9 can ride a motorbike.

- 2 An interpreter can speak several languages.
  - A pilot can fly a plane.
  - An architect can draw buildings.
  - A chef can cook delicious food.
  - A computer programmer can write software.
- 3 See T 11.2
- 4 2 Zara can't run.
  - 3 You can't cook.
  - 4 I can't write English.
  - 5 We can't draw.
  - 6 They can't play chess.
- 5 See T 11.5
- 6 2 fluently 3 really well. 4 at all.
  - 5 quite well. 6 really well.
- 7 & 8 See T 11.7
- 10 ✓ X play football drink

shake hands eat run ask questions

see

speak

- 11 2 Honda.
  - 3 Honda wants ASIMO to live with people and help them at work and at home.
  - 4 Yes, he can.
  - 5 He conducted the Detroit Symphony Orchestra.
  - 6 He said: 'Hello, everyone. This is a beautiful concert hall.'
- 11 Across
- Down
- 4 fast 5 busy
- 1 interesting 2 tall
- 7 delicious
- 3 exciting
- 8 wet 10 young
- 5 boring 6 funny
- 11 dangerous
- 9 sunny
- 12 See T 11.8

13

	1.5		
1	Positive	Question	Negative
1			I can't swim
ı	You can swim	Can you swim?	
ı	She can swim	Can she swim?	She can't swim
ı	They can swim		They can't swin

- 14 2 never 3 often 4 sometimes 6 usually 7 slowly 8 carefully
- 15 2d 3e 4c 5a 6g 7i 8j 9f 10h
- 16 2 of, to 3 to 4 on 5 with, in 6 with, on 7 about 8 for 9 with 10 for

#### Unit 12

- 1 ✓ milk, bread, water, cheese.
- 2 3 is some
  - 4 doesn't have any
- 5 has some
- 6 isn't any
- 7 has some
- 8 isn't any
- 3 3 he have any, No, he doesn't.
- 4 there any, Yes, there is.
- 4 3 a cup of tea
  - 4 some shampoo for dry hair
  - 5 I'd like to send this parcel,
  - 6 I'd like to buy this magazine
- 5 See T 12.3
- 6 2 Would you like to play chess?
  - 3 Would you like some tea?
  - 4 I love shopping
  - 5 I'd like a drink of water.
  - 6 Do you like cooking?
- 7 See T 12.4

8

/e/	/i:/	/u:/	/1/
egg bread breakfast	cream cheese beans meal meat	soup juice food fruit	fish chips biscuit chicken

#### 9 See T 12 6

¥ 500 1 12.0	
10 Across	Down
4 soup	1 sugar
6 chicken	2 vegetables
7 apple pie	3 rice
8 bread	4 salt
9 salmon	5 cereal
11 sparkling	10 salad

11 3 / 4 / 5 x 6 x 7 x 8 / 9/ 10/

11 seafood

12

12 still

'd like
'd like
'd like

- 13 2a 3b 4b 5a 6a
- 14 2g 3f 4a 5c 6h 7d 8e
- 15 2 ... like some cake ...
  - 3 ... have any cheese ...
  - 4 ... like to drink ...
  - 5 ... have some stamps ...
  - 6 'James, do you like ... ?'
  - 7 Do you want anything else?

#### Unit 13

1 3 white 4 blue 5 green 6 black 7 brown 8 grey

2 Across	Down
1 suit	1 shoes
3 tie	2 socks
5 boots	3 T-shirt
8 shorts	4 jacket
9 trainers	6 shirt
12 jumper	7 trousers
13 scarf	10 skirt
	11 dress

- 3 2 a suit, He's
  - 3 wearing trousers, They're waiting
  - 4 wearing, reading
  - 5 're wearing, 're
  - 6 's wearing, She's writing
- 4 2 Paul drinking, drinking
  - 3 are they, They're going
  - 4 are you reading? 'm reading
  - 5 are you, 're studying
  - 6 is she writing emails, 's writing to
- 5 In picture B:
  - I the man isn't wearing a jacket.
  - 2 the children aren't eating ice cream.
  - 3 the woman isn't wearing sunglasses.
  - 4 the boys aren't playing football.
  - 5 the sun isn't shining.
  - 6 the ducks aren't swimming on the
  - 7 the girls aren't talking.
- 6 3 lives 4 'm living 5 's having,
  - 6 have 7 speaks 8 's speaking
- 9 doesn't work 10 'm not working.
- 11 doesn't rain 12 isn't raining
- 7 1 She usually gets up late and does the housework.
- 2 She is graduating from University.
- 3 She's in the university conference hall.
- 4 This morning she got up early and had
- 5 She's wearing a black hat and a white shirt.
- 6 He usually goes to work.
- 7 Today he is in the French Alps because they're having a skiing holiday.
- 8 This morning they had a big French breakfast.
- 9 They're skiing on a mountain.
- 10 They're wearing ski suits, boots, hats and gloves.
- 8 2 buying 3 hate 4 to stay 5 answer
  - 6 working 7 do you finish 8 losing
  - 9 close 10 turn it on

- 9 2 cold 3 bored 4 tired 5 hungry
  - 6 hot 7 a cold 8 worried
  - 9 a headache 10 angry
- 10 See T 13.5

#### 11

Positive	Question	Negative
You're working	Are you working?	
	Is he/she working?	He/She isn't working
It's working		It isn't working
We're working	Are we working?	
They're working		They aren't working

- 12 reading making working having playing enjoying swimming doing running
- 13 2 m 3 Is 4 are 5 m, m
- 14 2 Did 3 are 4 am 5 does 6 is
- 15 2f 3b 4c 5a 6e 71 8h 9j 10k 11g 12i
- 16 2 the, the 3 an 4 the, the 5 a 6 the, a 7 a

- 2 2 Alice 3 Melanie 4 Terry 5 Alice 6 Melanie
- 3 2 is she going to study? ...'s going to study
  - 3 is she going
    - ...'s going to live
  - 4 's going to work
  - 5 is he going to spend
  - ...'s going to spend 6 is he going to visit
    - ...'s going to visit
  - 7 's going to
  - 8 is she going to
  - ...'s going to visit
  - 9 is she going to
  - ...'s going to
- 4 2 'm working
- 3 'm going to the cinema
- 4 are you going to see?
- 5 'm having
- 6 're going shopping.
- 7 'm going to the dentist
- 8 'm playing tennis
- 9 'm seeing
- 10 are coming
- 11 'm cooking
- 12 are you going to cook?

- 5 2 work 3 opened 4 think 5 comes 6 started 7 love 8 helps 9 gives 10 are sitting 11 isn't raining 12 'm going to have 13 began 14 was 15 are all going to continue
- 6 2 bought 3 went 4 see 5 had 6 take 7 said 8 find 9 did 10 made
- 7 1 Wednesday, Thursday, Saturday, Sunday
  - 2 afternoon, evening
  - 3 summer, winter
  - 4 lunch, dinner
  - 5 often, never
  - 6 have breakfast, go to work/school, come home, have dinner
  - 7 February, April, June, August, October, December
  - 8 thirty, forty, sixty, seventy, ninety
- 8 1 2a 3e 4d 5c
  - 21b 2e 3d 4a 5c
  - 31c 2e 3b 4a 5d
- 9 2 What's your surname?
- 3 do you live?
- 4 What's your
- 5 What's your postcode?
- 6 07988677432
- 7 What's your email address?
- 8 How old are you?
- 9 were you born?
- 10 No, I'm single.
- 11 did you go to
- 12 university did you go
- 13 What did you
- 14 How many languages can you speak?
- 15 What sports do
- 10 See T 14.6
- 11 2e 3f 4a 5c 6d 7i 8g 9h 101 11j 12k
- 12 2 with, for 3 for 4 in 5 to, by 6 to 7 in 8 for, by 9 to, on 12 to, for

## Notes

## Notes

## Phonetic symbols

Cons	onants		
1	/p/	as in	pen /pen/
2	/b/	as in	big/big/
3	/t/	as in	tea /ti:/
4	/d/	as in	do /du:/
5	/k/	as in	cat /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	go /gəʊ/
7	/f/	as in	four /fo:/
8	/v/	as in	very /'veri/
9	/s/	as in	son /san/
10	/z/	as in	zoo /zu:/
11	/1/	as in	live /liv/
12	/m/	as in	my /mai/
13	/n/	as in	now /nau/
14	/h/	as in	happy / hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	red /red/
16	/j/	as in	yes /jes/
17	/w/	as in	want /wont/
18	/0/	as in	thanks /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	the /ðə/
20	151	as in	she /ʃi:/
21	/3/	as in	television /'telrvr3n/
22	/tʃ/	as in	child /tʃaɪld/
23	/d3/	as in	German /'dʒɜ:mən/
24	/ŋ/	as in	English /'inglis/

Vow	els		
25	/i;/	as in	see /si:/
26	/1/	as in	his /hɪz/
27	/i/	as in	twenty /'twenti/
28	/e/	as in	ten /ten/
29	/æ/	as in	bag/bæg/
30	/a:/	as in	father /'fa:ðə/
31	/D/	as in	hot /hpt/
32	/5:/	as in	morning /'mɔ:nɪŋ/
33	/0/	as in	football /'fotbo:l/
34	/u:/	as in	you /ju:/
35	11	as in	sun /sʌn/
36	/3:/	as in	learn /ls:n/
37	/ə/	as in	letter /'letə/

Diph	thongs	(two ve	owels together)
38	/e1/	as in	name /neim/
39	/ou/	as in	no /nəʊ/
10	/aɪ/	as in	my/mai/
41	/au/	as in	how /hau/
42	/21/	as in	boy /boɪ/
43	/15/	as in	hear /hɪə/
44	/ea/	as in	where /weə/
45	/ʊə/	as in	tour /tuə/

#### OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford 0x2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2010

The moral rights of the author have been asserted Database right Oxford University Press (maker)
First published 2010
2014 2013 2012 2011 2010
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

#### No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 471376 4 Workbook with key
ISBN: 978 0 19 471381 8 Writing Support CD-ROM
Workbook with key and
Writing Support CD-ROM Pack

Printed in Spain

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources.

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The publisher would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs: Alamy pp.4 (Chris/Jupiter Images/Brand X), 4 (shaking hands outside/PhotoAlto), 4 (shaking hands in office/Jupiterimages/Creatas), 5 (shaking hands/PhotoAlto), 8 (elderly couple/The Photolibrary Wales), 11 (Karima/Bill Bachmann), 11 (Tatiana/Blaine Harrington III), 13 (Petronas Towers/Beaconstox), 19 (woman/Form Advertising), 25 (Bill Gates/Ria Novosti), (couple/NewStock), 34 (checking time/Blend Images), 44 (coffee shop/Chris Howes/Wild Places Photography), 50 (Berkhamsted Town Hall/ Robert Stainforth), 52 (Beijing Olympic Stadium/Sergiu Turcanu), 52 (Gandhi/ Dinodia Images), 62 (Disneyland/Arco Images GmbH), 64 (girl on horse/Leo Mason), (man on motorbike/Chris Pancewicz), 71 (couple watch TV/ blickwinkel), 72 (two women chatting/Catchlight Visual Services), 74 (cheese sandwich/Barbara Ayrapetyan), 74 (roast beef dinner/Steve Cavalier), 77 (little boys/Jupiterimages/Comstock Images)), 77 (group of girls in class/Bubbles Photolibrary); Corbis UK Ltd. pp.4 (men shaking hands/John Henley), 8 (waitress taking order/Radius Images), 8 (mother kissing daughter goodnight/ Somos Images), 11 (Yong/Justin Guariglia), 13 (Sphynx/Hugh Sitton), 30 (Michael Phelps/Kay Nietfeld/Epa); dkimages.com pp.44 (ticket counter/Chris Stowers), pp 54 (Bruce Lee/Bettman), 63 (looking at tourist brochures/Tony Souter), 79 (woman graduating/Jim Craigmyle); Getty Images pp.4 (woman with name tag/George Doyle/Stockbyte), 4 (businessman/Ciaran Griffin/ Stockbyte), 8 (businesswoman waving/Stockbyte), 11 (Kevin/Yellow Dog Productions) 31 (older couple/James Darell/Digital Vision), 53 (washing dishes/Bert Hardy/Picture Post/Hulton Archive), 53 (walking on beach/H. Armstrong Roberts/Retrofile), 58 (mother and child baking (/hotographers Choice); Honda (UK) p.67 (ASIMO); iStockphoto pp.6 (road sign/Mustafa Deliormanli), 6 (number 6/Lok Sum Fung), 32 (coffee/Murat Giray Kaya), 43 (miserable Mike/Rosemarie Gearhart), 43 (happy Annie), 64 (cooking), 82 (blonde man): Linographic p.64 (running); NASA Public Affairs Division p.52 (Man on moon/Kennedy Space Center); Oxford University Press pp.6 (number 3) 6 (number 2/Photodisc), 11 (Laszlo/Gareth Boden), 11 (Simon/Image Source), 14 (man/Photodisc), 14 (woman/Photodisc), 23 (Belle/Fancy), 23 (James/Photodisc), 23 (young boy/Photodisc), 23 (girl/Blend Images) 23 (Carrief Photodisc), 24 (family/Stockbyte), 24 (camera/CreativeAct - Technology series), 24 (Nokia/Chris Boon), 26 (man/Blend Images), 28 (juice/carton/Mark Mason), 31 (woman/David Jordan), 32 (orange/Photodisc), 34 (newspaper/ Chris Boon), 35 (girl doing homework/Corbis/Digital Stock), 35 (man on couch/Image Source), 44 (boys shopping), 53 (Tom/Photodisc), 58(two men playing tennis/Moodboard), 64 (baby walking/Photodisc), 64 (skier/Photodisc), 71 (post office/Gareth Boden), 71 (news agent/E. Dygas/Digital Vision), 71 (clothes shopping/ColorBlind Images/Blend Images), 71 (buying fruit/Simon Potter/Image Source), 71 (man at counter/Digital Vision/Mel Yates), 71 (cup of tea/Ingram), 74 (scampi & chips/Photodisc), 77 (man at cafe/Photodisc), 77 (woman with laptop/Photodisc); 82 (blonde girl/PhotoAlto), 82 (girl with glasses/Photodisc), 84 (raising hand in class/Corbis/Digital Stock), 84 (school/ Photodisc), 84 (woman/Gareth Boden), 86 (woman/Image Source), 87 (looking at map/Chris King); Photolibrary Group pp.6 (terminal 1/Raimund Linke/ Mauritius), p6 (senior couple smiling/Dennis Welsh/Uppercut Images RF), 8 (waving/Jupiterimages/Pixiand), 8 (female shopper/Simon Winnall/Britain on View), 11 (Hayley); Press Association Images, 13 (couple at Buckingham Palace/Image Source), 15 (senior couple smiling/Dennis Welsh/Uppercut Images RF), 28 (water glass/Riou Riou/Photocuisine), pp.38 (Barack Obama/ Deniz Arslan/AA/ABACA), 52 (tanks), 52 (Berlin Wall/Thomas Kienzle/ Associated Press), 53 (couple reading mail/Khalid Hawe/Uppercut Images RF), 54 (Princess Diana/Mark Lennihan/Associated Press, 60 (group of 4 males/ Design Pics Inc), 64 (man and chess set/Imagesource), 64 (woman jogger/ Stefan Eisend LOOK-foto), 64 (man drawing picture/Moodboard), 74 (breakfast/OST OST imagebroker.net), 74 (girl in snow/Juice Images); Punchstock p 6 (£5 note/Westend61); Rex Features pp.25 (Queen Elizabeth II), 40 (Johnny Depp/Sipa Press ); Shutterstock pp.6 (number 6), 6 (number 5/Matt Trommer), 6 (number 10/Emin Ozkan), 6 (number9/Drilea Cristian), 17 (businessman/Yuri Arcurs), 24 (CD cases/Mariano N. Ruiz), 24 (motorbike/ adsheyn), 24 (laptop/Terekhov Igor), 24 (bicycle/Aleks Key), 32 (ice cream cone/Fotocrisis), 32 (burger/ukrphoto), 32 (jeans), 64 (man in tie/BelleMedia), 71 (shopping for cosmetics/Diego Cervo ), 77 (reading/Phase4Photography), 77 (talking on phone/Brendan Howard); Zooid Pictures p.32 (dictionary/Ned

Commissioned photography by: Gareth Boden p.11 Rosely, p.18

Illustrations by: Gill Button pp.14, 19, 29 (ex 2), 42, 43, 48 (ex 8), 59, 65, 68, 71, 80; Mark Duffin pp.6 (crossword), 15, 16 (crossword), 28, 29 (ex 3), 71 (ex 5), 76; Paul Daviz p.55; Ned Jolliffe pp.10, 11, 16, 49; Joe McLaren pp.7, 70; Annabel Milne pp.34, 45, 46, 48 (ex 9), 61, 73; Gavin Reece pp.5, 8, 12, 20, 22, 23, 36, 47, 66, 72, 78, 83

## New Headway Plus Beginner The world's most trusted English course

Specially adapted for the Middle East and North Africa, this course combines the best of English language teaching methodologies to help students use English accurately and fluently.

## Key features of the Workbook

- Complete step-by-step practice of Headway Plus Beginner grammar.
- Reading texts and listening passages showing language in use.
- · Features of pronunciation highlighted and practised.
- Revision and extension of vocabulary.

## **NEW** Writing Support CD-ROM

Eight modules of material for use in-class, as homework, or for self-study. Builds confidence with spelling patterns, vocabulary development, reading simple texts, writing simple sentences and texts, and handwriting practice.

- 96 onscreen interactive activities with instant feedback.
- Over 100 downloadable worksheets for written practice.
- A test after each module to assess progress.
- A Learning Library for revision and to track learning.

#### Student's Workbook Audio CD

is available as a separate item to provide listening and pronunciation practice.

New Headway Online: www.oup.com/elt/headway

John and Liz Soars have many years of experience as teachers and teacher trainers. They are best known for their creation of the *Headway* series, which has won international acclaim and has redefined standards for English language coursebooks.

#### Components for students:

- Student's Book
   978 0 19 471375 7
- Workbook without key with Writing Support CD-ROM 978 0 19 471382 5
- Workbook with key with Writing Support CD-ROM 978 0 19 471381 8
- Workbook audio CD 978 0 19 471380 1

#### Components for teachers:

- Teacher's Book
   978 0 19 471378 8
- Class audio CDs 978 0 19 471379 5

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

CEFR B1 A2

9 478019447

OXFORD ENGLISH ISBN 978-0-19-471376-4